



This is a digital copy of a book that was preserved for generations on library shelves before it was carefully scanned by Google as part of a project to make the world's books discoverable online.

It has survived long enough for the copyright to expire and the book to enter the public domain. A public domain book is one that was never subject to copyright or whose legal copyright term has expired. Whether a book is in the public domain may vary country to country. Public domain books are our gateways to the past, representing a wealth of history, culture and knowledge that's often difficult to discover.

Marks, notations and other marginalia present in the original volume will appear in this file - a reminder of this book's long journey from the publisher to a library and finally to you.

### Usage guidelines

Google is proud to partner with libraries to digitize public domain materials and make them widely accessible. Public domain books belong to the public and we are merely their custodians. Nevertheless, this work is expensive, so in order to keep providing this resource, we have taken steps to prevent abuse by commercial parties, including placing technical restrictions on automated querying.

We also ask that you:

- + *Make non-commercial use of the files* We designed Google Book Search for use by individuals, and we request that you use these files for personal, non-commercial purposes.
- + *Refrain from automated querying* Do not send automated queries of any sort to Google's system: If you are conducting research on machine translation, optical character recognition or other areas where access to a large amount of text is helpful, please contact us. We encourage the use of public domain materials for these purposes and may be able to help.
- + *Maintain attribution* The Google "watermark" you see on each file is essential for informing people about this project and helping them find additional materials through Google Book Search. Please do not remove it.
- + *Keep it legal* Whatever your use, remember that you are responsible for ensuring that what you are doing is legal. Do not assume that just because we believe a book is in the public domain for users in the United States, that the work is also in the public domain for users in other countries. Whether a book is still in copyright varies from country to country, and we can't offer guidance on whether any specific use of any specific book is allowed. Please do not assume that a book's appearance in Google Book Search means it can be used in any manner anywhere in the world. Copyright infringement liability can be quite severe.

### About Google Book Search

Google's mission is to organize the world's information and to make it universally accessible and useful. Google Book Search helps readers discover the world's books while helping authors and publishers reach new audiences. You can search through the full text of this book on the web at <http://books.google.com/>



3 2044 097 062 863

Edue 1 918.64.160



**Harvard College Library**

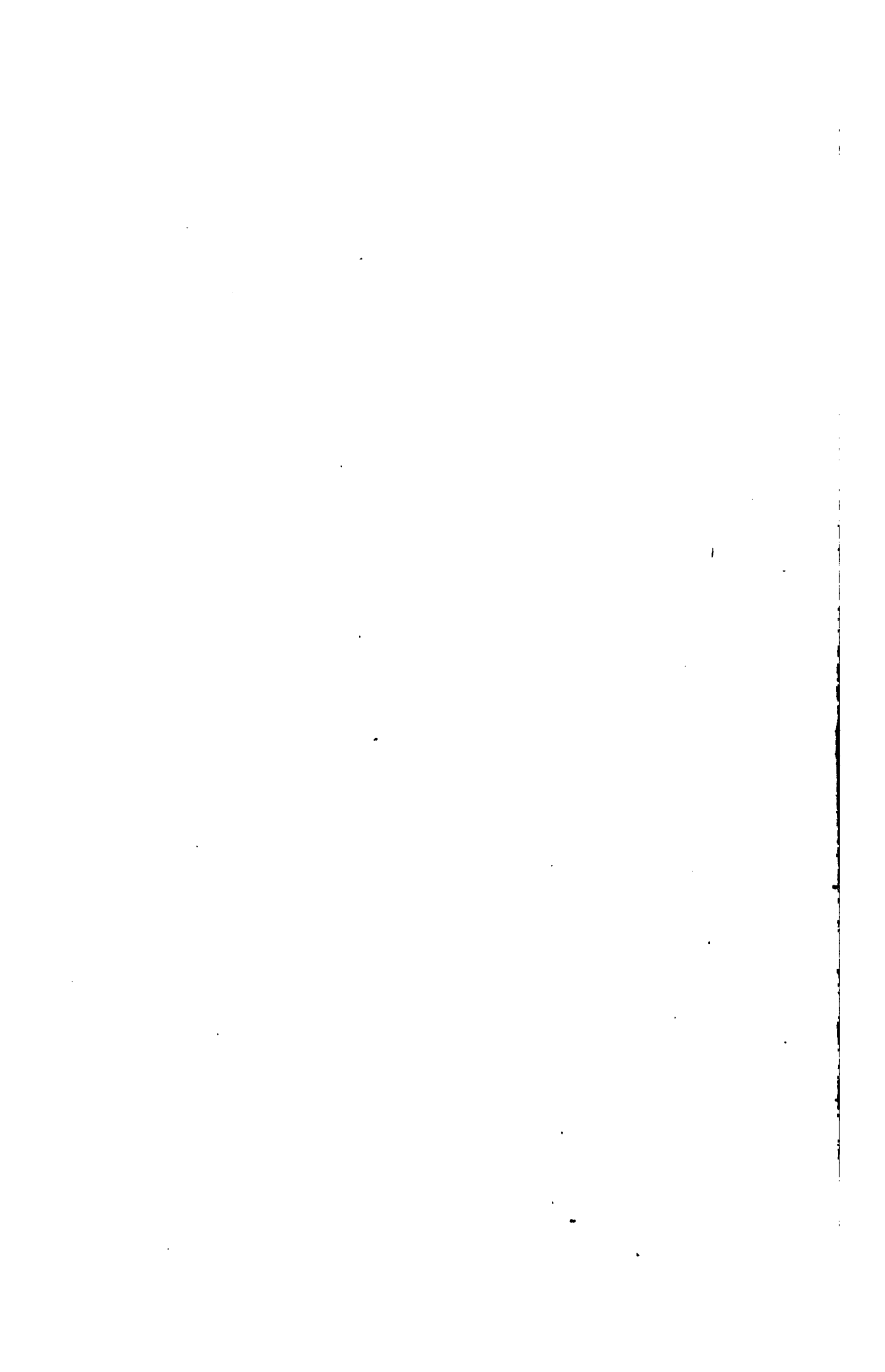
FROM

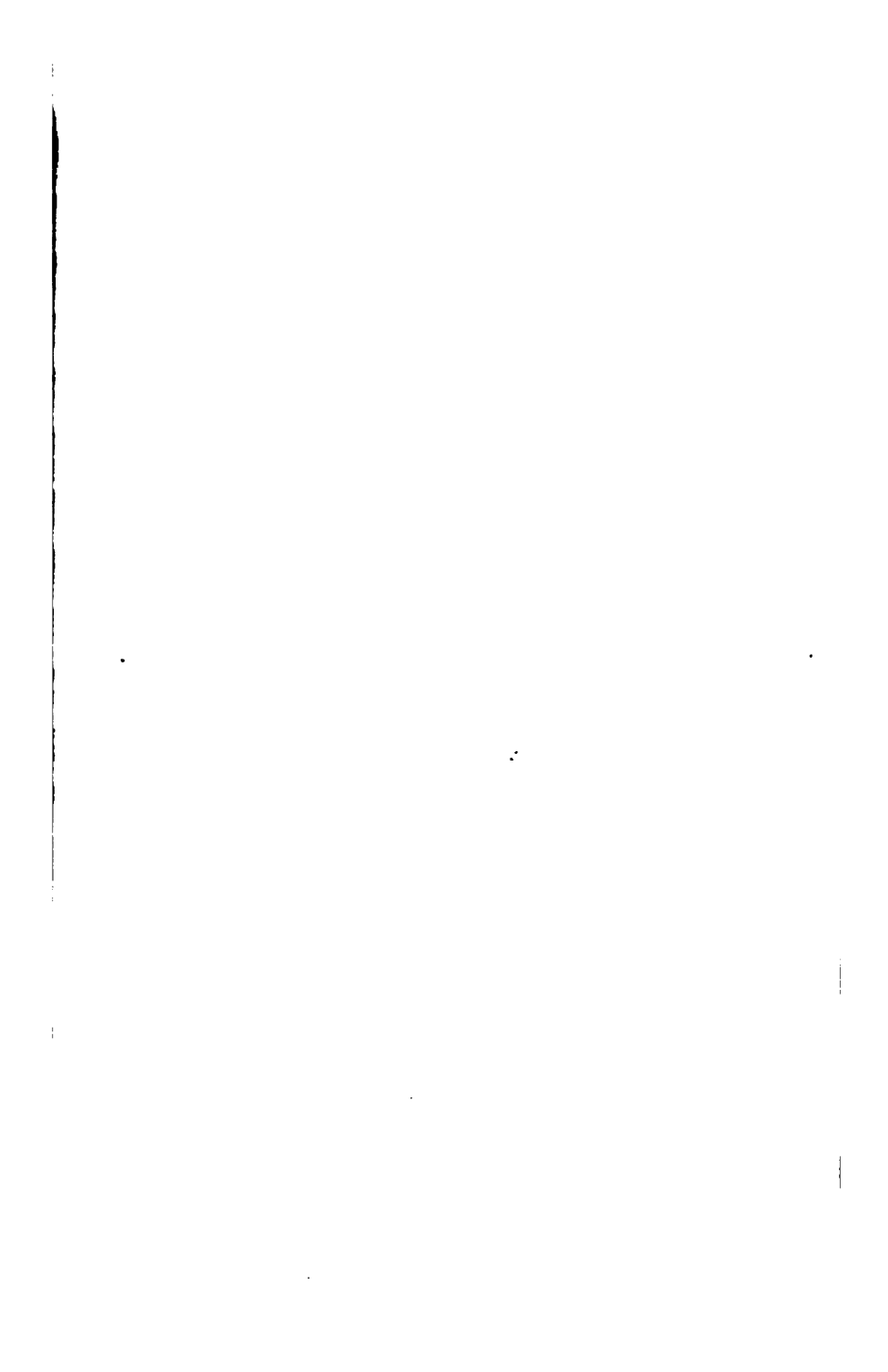
*The Editor*



3 2044 097 062 863









ARNOLD'S  
**FIRST LATIN BOOK;**

REMODELLED AND REWRITTEN,

AND ADAPTED TO THE

OLLENDORFF METHOD OF INSTRUCTION.

BY

ALBERT HARKNESS, P. D.,

PROFESSOR OF THE GREEK LANGUAGE AND LITERATURE IN BROWN UNIVERSITY.

TWENTY-SECOND EDITION

NEW YORK :

D. APPLETON & COMPANY, 443 & 445 BROADWAY.

1864.

Edye T 918.64.160

~~Edye T 918.51.3~~

~~5253,63~~

1864. Nov. 3

Gift of  
the editor

---

ENTERED, according to Act of Congress, in the year 1851, by  
D. APPLETON & CO.,  
In the Clerk's Office of the District Court of the United States for the Southern  
District of New York.

---

34-135  
23

## PREFACE.

---

ARNOLD'S *First and Second Latin Book* was introduced to the American public some five years since, under the editorial care of Professor Spencer. As the system was, at that time, quite new in this country, and comparatively so in England, the American editor did not think it best "to make any material alteration in the original work." The marked favor with which the volume was at once received, and the almost unprecedented success which has since attended it, are a sufficient proof of its excellence. The test of the class-room and the improved methods of instruction have, however, convinced teachers that, with many rare merits, and with a general plan most happily adapted to the wants of the beginner in Latin, it was still, in some important respects, quite incomplete in its execution and details. The present volume, undertaken at the request of the publishers, is the result of an attempt to remove these defects, and thus to render

the work worthy of yet higher favor and success. The entire book has been rewritten and many important additions have been made.

The Latin of the *First and Second Latin Book* has been retained, so far as consistent with our purpose; but as it has been found necessary to add many new selections, care has been taken to secure pure classic Latin, by resorting exclusively to the pages of Caesar and Cicero.

In the preparation of this book, it has been a leading object with the editor, so to classify and arrange the various topics as to *simplify*, and, as far as possible, to *remove* the disheartening difficulties too often encountered by the learner at the very outset in the study of an ancient language. He has accordingly endeavored so to present each new subject as to enable the beginner fully to master it, before he is called upon to perplex himself with its more difficult combinations. The lessons have been prepared with constant reference to the Ollendorff method of instruction, while, at the same time, special pains have been taken to present a complete and systematic outline, both of the grammatical forms and of the elementary principles of the language. An effort has thus been made to combine the respective advantages of two systems, distinct in themselves, but by no means inconsistent with each other.

In the earlier portions of the book, the exercises for translation consist of two paragraphs of Latin sentences and two of English,

## PREFACE.

the first of each being designed to illustrate the particular topic which chances to be the subject of the lesson, and the second to furnish miscellaneous examples on the various subjects already learned. Thus each lesson becomes at once an *advance* and a *review*.

For convenience of reference and for the purposes of general review, a summary of Paradigms and an outline of Syntax have been appended to the lessons. The Syntax will be found, it is hoped, to be an improvement, at least in point of classification and arrangement, upon that ordinarily presented in Latin Grammars. In a Second Latin Book, now in preparation—being at once a Reader and an Exercise Book—the editor contemplates a fuller development and illustration of the Latin Syntax, in a series of exercises on the principle of *analysis* and *synthesis*.

The present volume, as already intimated, has been prepared *mainly* from Arnold's *First and Second Latin Book*; the editor has, however, had before him numerous other works of a kindred character, from some of which he has derived valuable aid. Among these may be mentioned, in addition to the various Latin Grammars in use in this country and in England, Allen's *New Latin Delectus*; *Analysis of Latin Verbs*, by the same author; and Pinnock's *First Latin Grammar*; together with numerous other elementary works, among which the editor is happy to specify the *First Latin Book*, by Professors McClintock and Crooks.

Professor Spencer's edition of Arnold's *Latin Prose Compo-*



sition, one of the volumes of the excellent Classical Series published by the Messrs. Appleton, has been consulted with much advantage.

For valuable assistance in the preparation of the Syntax, the editor is happy to acknowledge his indebtedness to Greene's Analysis of the English Language.

A. HARKNESS.

Providence, July 18, 1851.

# CONTENTS.

---

## INTRODUCTION.

### PRONUNCIATION.

	Page.
I. Letters . . . . .	1
II. Syllables . . . . .	2
III. Quantity . . . . .	2
IV. Accentuation . . . . .	2
V. Sounds of the Letters . . . . .	3
i. The Continental Method . . . . .	3
ii. The English Method . . . . .	4

## LESSONS AND EXERCISES.

Lesson.		
I.	Parts of Speech.—Proposition.—Subject.—Predicate . . .	7
II.	Verbs.—First Conjugation . . . . .	8
III.	First Conjugation—continued . . . . .	11
IV.	Second Conjugation . . . . .	12
V.	Third Conjugation . . . . .	14
VI.	Fourth Conjugation . . . . .	16
VII.	Four Conjugations.—Plural Number . . . . .	17
VIII.	Nouns.—Nominative Case . . . . .	19
IX.	Nominative Case—continued . . . . .	23
X.	Vocative Case . . . . .	24
XI.	Apposition.—Modified Subject . . . . .	26
XII.	Genitive Case.—Modified Subject . . . . .	27
XIII.	Accusative Case.—Direct Object of Predicate . . . . .	31
XIV.	Accusative—continued.—Adverbial Modifiers . . . . .	34
XV.	Dative Case.—Indirect Object of Predicate . . . . .	35
XVI.	Ablative Case.—Modified Predicate . . . . .	38
XVII.	First Declension . . . . .	40
XVIII.	Second Declension.—Nouns in <i>ūs</i> and <i>ūm</i> . . . . .	43

Lesson.	Page.
XIX. Second Declension.—Nouns in <i>ēr</i> and <i>īr</i> . . .	46
XX. Adjectives of the First and Second Declension . . .	47
XXI. First and Second Declension—continued . . .	51
XXII. First and Second Declension, continued.—Price, Value, and Degree of Estimation . . .	58
XXIII. Nouns.—Third Declension.—Class I . . .	55
XXIV. Third Declension.—Class II . . .	58
XXV. Third Declension.—Class III . . .	60
XXVI. Third Declension.—Class IV. . .	63
XXVII. Third Declension.—Genitives in <i>iim</i> .—Gender . . .	66
XXVIII. Third Declension.—Formation of Cases from each other . . .	68
XXIX. Adjectives.—Third Declension . . .	71
XXX. Adjectives, continued.—Nouns.—Fourth Declension . . .	75
XXXI. Nouns.—Fifth Declension . . .	78
XXXII. Five Declensions.—Greek Nouns.—Gender . . .	81
XXXIII. Verbs.— <i>Esse</i> , to be.—Predicate, <i>Esse</i> with a Noun or an Adjective . . .	85
XXXIV. Infinitive as Subject.—Genitive with <i>Esse</i> in the Pre- dicate . . .	87
XXXV. Tenses for Completed Action.—First, Second, and Fourth Conjugations . . .	90
XXXVI. Third Conjugation.—Class I.— <i>Second Root the same as the First</i> . . .	93
XXXVII. Third Conjugation.—Class II.— <i>Second Root formed by adding s to the First</i> . . .	96
XXXVIII. Third Conjugation.—Class II, continued.— <i>Second Root formed by adding s to the First</i> . . .	97
XXXIX. Third Conjugation.—Class II, continued.— <i>Second Root formed by adding s to the First</i> . . .	100
XL. Formation of the Second Root.—First Irregularity— <i>Radical Vowel lengthened (and often changed)</i> . . .	103
XLI. Formation of the Second Root.—Second Irregularity— <i>Reduplication</i> . . .	105
XLII. Formation of the Second Root.—Third Irregularity— <i>Second Root after the analogy of other conjugations</i> . . .	107
XLIII. Subjunctive Mood . . .	110
XLIV. Subjunctive Mood.—Purpose . . .	113
XLV. Persons of Verbs.—Indicative Mood.—First Conjugation . . .	115
XLVI. Indicative Mood.—Four Conjugations.—Personal Pro- nouns . . .	119
XLVII. Subjunctive Mood.—Four Conjugations . . .	123

# CONTENTS.

ix

Lesson.	Page
XLVIII. Indicative and Subjunctive Moods, continued.—Verbs in <i>is</i> of the Third Conjugation.—Demonstrative Pronouns . . . . .	127
XLIX. Indicative and Subjunctive Moods, continued.—Inter-sive Pronoun . . . . .	130
L. Indicative and Subjunctive Moods, continued.—Relative and Interrogative Pronouns . . . . .	132
LI. Indicative and Subjunctive Moods, continued.—Inter-rogative Particles . . . . .	134
LII. Indicative and Subjunctive Moods, continued.—Inde-finite and Possessive Pronouns . . . . .	136
LIII. Verb <i>Essä</i> , to be . . . . .	138
LIV. Verb <i>Essä</i> , continued.—Comparison of Adjectives . . . . .	142
LV. Compounds of <i>Essä</i> .—Comparison of Adverbs.—Nume-ral Adjectives . . . . .	145
LVI. Passive Voice.—Third Persons of Tenses for Continued Action . . . . .	148
LVII. Passive Voice.—Third Persons of Tenses for Completed Action . . . . .	151
LVIII. Indicative Mood of the Passive Voice . . . . .	154
LIX. Subjunctive Mood of the Passive Voice . . . . .	158
LX. Imperative Mood—Active and Passive . . . . .	160
LXI. Infinitive Mood . . . . .	163
LXII. Participles.—Ablative Absolute . . . . .	166
LXIII. Gerunds and Supines . . . . .	169
LXIV. Participle in <i>düs</i> . . . . .	172
LXV. First Conjugation . . . . .	174
LXVI. Second Conjugation . . . . .	175
LXVII. Third Conjugation . . . . .	176
LXVIII. Fourth Conjugation . . . . .	177
LXIX. Verbs with the Dative.—Indirect Object . . . . .	178
LXX. Deponent Verbs . . . . .	180
LXXI. Irregular Verbs.— <i>Possä, Vellä, Nollä, Mallä</i> . . . . .	182
LXXII. Irregular Verbs, continued.— <i>Ferrä, Fförrä</i> . . . . .	185
LXXIII. Irregular Verbs, continued.— <i>Irä, Edärrä</i> . . . . .	189
LXXIV. Periphrastic Conjugations . . . . .	191
LXXV. Impersonal Verbs . . . . .	193
LXXVI. Impersonal Periphrastic . . . . .	195
LXXVII. Impersonal Passive Verbs.—Prepositions . . . . .	197
LXXXVIII. Conjunctions . . . . .	199
LXXXIX. Subjunctive Mood with <i>üt, nä, quä</i> . . . . .	201

Lesson.	Page.
LXXX. Subjunctive with <i>quōmātis, quān</i> , and other Conjunctions . . . . .	203
LXXXI. Interrogative Sentences . . . . .	205
LXXXII. Conditional Sentences.—Subjunctive in Relative Clauses and with <i>quām</i> . . . . .	207
LXXXIII. Participles . . . . .	209
LXXXIV. Participles, continued . . . . .	212
LXXXV. Derivation of Nouns . . . . .	215
LXXXVI. Derivation of Adjectives . . . . .	217
LXXXVII. Derivation of Verbs and Adverbs . . . . .	219
LXXXVIII. Composition of Words . . . . .	222

## PARADIGMS, &amp;c.

1. Nouns.—Endings of Genitive Singular . . . . .	227
2. Gender . . . . .	227
3. First Declension . . . . .	227
4. Second Declension . . . . .	228
5. Third Declension . . . . .	229
6. Fourth Declension . . . . .	232
7. Fifth Declension . . . . .	233
8. Case-Endings of Substantives . . . . .	233
9. Table of Genders . . . . .	234
10. Adjectives.—First and Second Declension . . . . .	235
11. Third Declension . . . . .	236
12. Comparison of Adjectives . . . . .	238
13. Numerals . . . . .	238
14. Substantive Pronouns . . . . .	239
15. Adjective Pronouns . . . . .	239
16. Verbs.— <i>Essē</i> . . . . .	241
17. Infinitive Endings . . . . .	243
18. First Conjugation . . . . .	243
19. Second Conjugation . . . . .	245
20. Third Conjugation . . . . .	247
21. Fourth Conjugation . . . . .	250
22. Formation of Second Root . . . . .	252
23. Deponent Verbs . . . . .	252
24. Irregular Verbs . . . . .	252
25. Periphrastic Conjugations . . . . .	257
26. Impersonal Verbs . . . . .	257

## SYNTAX.

Introduction . . . . .	Page 259
------------------------	-------------

## CHAPTER I.

*Essential Elements of Sentences.—Subject and Predicate.*

Section I. Subject . . . . .	260
“ II. Predicate . . . . .	260

## CHAPTER II.

*Subordinate Elements.—Modifiers.*

Section I. Use of Modifiers . . . . .	262
“ II. Modifiers of Nouns . . . . .	262
“ III. Modifiers of Adjectives . . . . .	263
“ IV. Modifiers of Verbs . . . . .	264
“ “ § I. Objects . . . . .	265
“ “ § II. Adverbial Modifiers . . . . .	268
“ V. Modifiers of Adverbs . . . . .	271

## CHAPTER III.

<i>Use of Moods, Participles, Gerunds, and Supines . . . . .</i>	271
--	-----

DIFFERENCES OF IDIOM . . . . .	275
CAUTIONS . . . . .	277
LATIN-ENGLISH VOCABULARY . . . . .	279
ENGLISH-LATIN VOCABULARY . . . . .	291

## EXPLANATIONS.

The small numerals above the line in the Exercises refer to *Differences of Idiom*, page 275; the small letters to *Cautions*, page 277.

The numerals enclosed in parentheses refer to articles in the body of the work.

In the Exercises, words connected by hyphens are to be rendered into Latin by a single word; as, *natural-to-man*, *hūmānis*; *it-is*, *est*, &c.

# INTRODUCTION.

---

## PRONUNCIATION.

THE two Methods, the Continental and the English, which at present prevail in the pronunciation of Latin, differ from each other chiefly in the sounds of the vowels; we shall accordingly first state the settled principles in which they agree (as accent, quantity, &c.), and then present the vowel sounds of each separately, hoping, however, that, in this country, the Continental Method will soon commend itself to general favor. With the important merit of uniform consistency, it is, at the same time, the only pronunciation intelligible on the Continent of Europe, the very place where the American scholar will most need his Latin as a medium of communication.

### I. LETTERS.

The Latin Language has six characters, or letters, representing vowel sounds, and nineteen representing consonant sounds.

REM. 1. The vowel sounds are *a, e, i, o, u,* and *y*; the consonants are the same as in English, with the omission of *w*, which is not used in Latin.

REM. 2. Two vowels sometimes unite in sound, and form a diphthong, as in English; e. g., *æ* in *Cæsar*.

REM. 3. *X* and *z*\* are called double consonants; *l, m, n,* and *r,* liquids, and the other consonants, with the exception of *h* and *s,* mutes.

---

\* *X* is equivalent to *cs* or *gs*, and *z* to *ds*.



## II. SYLLABLES.

In the pronunciation of Latin, every word has as many syllables as it has vowels and diphthongs; thus the Latin words, *more*, *vice*, *acute*, and *persuade*, are pronounced, not as the same words are in English, but with their vowel sounds all heard in separate syllables; thus, *mo-re*, *vi-ce*, *a-cu-te*, *per-sua-de*.

## III. QUANTITY.

Syllables are, in *quantity* or *length*, either *long*, *short*, or *common* (i. e. sometimes long and sometimes short).

1. A syllable is *long* in quantity:

1) When it contains a *diphthong*, as the first syllable of *cædo*.

2) When its vowel is followed by *j*, *x*, *z*, or any *two consonants*, except a *mute* followed by a *liquid*; as the second syllables of *erexit* and *magister*.

2. A syllable is *short*, when its vowel is followed by another vowel, or a diphthong, as the second syllable of *indies*.

REM. The letter *h* does not affect the quantity of the preceding vowel.

The quantity of syllables, when not determined by these rules, will be indicated in the vocabularies (and, in some instances, in the exercises) by the dash — when *long*, by the curve ~ when *short*, and by the two together " when *common*.

## IV. ACCENTUATION.

1. The primary (or principal) accent, or stress of voice, is placed:

1) In words of two syllables, always on the first; as, *hó'mo*, a man.

2) In words of more than two syllables, on the *penult* (the last syllable but one), if that is *long* in quantity; otherwise on the *antepenult* (the last syllable but two); as, *rādī cīs, con'sūlīs*.

2. An additional accent is placed on each second syllable preceding the *primary* accent; as, *dē'monstrātūr*

## V SOUNDS OF THE LETTERS.

### I. THE CONTINENTAL METHOD.\*

#### 1. *The Sounds of the Vowels.*

The Continental sounds of the vowels are as follows:—

a . . . . .	ā in <i>father</i> ;	e. g.,	āris.
e . . . . .	{ 1. ā in <i>made</i> ;	e. g.,	ēdit.
		2. ě in <i>met</i> ;	e. g.,
i . . . . .	ē in <i>me</i> ;	e. g.,	īrě.
o . . . . .	{ 1. ō in <i>no</i> ;	e. g.,	ōrā.
		2. ǒ in <i>nor</i> ;	e. g.,
u . . . . .	ō in <i>do</i> ;	e. g.,	ūnā.
y . . . . .	ē in <i>me</i> ;	e. g.,	nŷmphā.

REM. Y is used only in words derived from the Greek.

These sounds are uniformly the same in all situations, except as modified by *quantity* and *accent*, (III. and IV.)

#### 2. *The Sounds of the Diphthongs.*

æ and œ . . .	ā in <i>made</i> ;	e. g.,	ætās, cœlŷm.
au . . . . .	ou in <i>out</i> ;	e. g.,	aurŷm.

REM. The vowels in *ei* and *eu* are generally pronounced separately.

---

\* For the Continental Pronunciation the editor is indebted to the kindness of Mr. George W. Greene, Instructor in Modern Languages in Brown University.

### 3. *The Sounds of the Consonants.*

The pronunciation of the consonants is nearly the same as in English, though it varies somewhat in different countries.

## II. THE ENGLISH METHOD.

### 1. *The Sounds of the Vowels* \*

In the English method, the vowels generally have the long or short English sounds: the length of the sound, however, is not dependent upon the quantity of the vowel, but must be determined by its situation or accent.

(a) In all *monosyllables*, vowels have

1) The *long* sound if at the end of the word; as, *si, re*.

2) The *short* sound if followed by a consonant; as, *sit, rem*; except *post, monosyllables* in *es*, and *plural cases* in *os*; as, *hos* (a plural case).

(b) In an *accented penult*, vowels have

1) The *long* sound before a vowel, diphthong, single consonant, or a mute followed by *l, r, or h*; as, *deus, pater, patres*; except *tibi* and *sibi*.

2) The *short* sound before a double consonant, or any two single consonants except a mute followed by *l, r, or h*; as, *bellum, rexit*.

(c) In any *accented syllable* except the penult, vowels have

1) The *long* sound before a vowel or diphthong; as *e* in *eadem*.

---

\* The system of vowel sounds here presented is the same as that given in Andrews and Stoddard's Latin Grammar, and, like that, is based upon Walker's Key to the Pronunciation of Greek and Latin Proper Names. The *rules*, however, unlike those of Andrews and Stoddard, are so prepared as to show the sounds of the vowels, in all their various situations, independently of the division of words into syllables. This, it is hoped, will facilitate their application.

2) The *short* sound before a consonant, as *o* in *dóminus*: except,

a) *U* before a single consonant, or a mute followed by *r* or *h* (and perhaps *l*); as, *Pánicus*, *salúbritas*.

b) *A*, *e*, and *o*, before a single consonant (or a mute before *l*, *r*, or *h*), followed by *e* or *i* before another vowel; as, *dóceo*, *ácria*.

(d) In *all unaccented syllables*, vowels have the *short* sound; as, *cantámus*, *vígilat*: except,

1) Final *a* in words of more than one syllable. This has the sound of *ah*, as in the word *America*; e. g., *musa* (*musah*).

2) Final syllables in *i* (except *tibi* and *sibi*), *es*, and *os*, in *plural cases*; as, *hómini*, *dies*, *illos* (a plural case).

3) The first syllable of words accented on the second, when the first either begins with an *i* followed by a single consonant, or contains *i* before a vowel; as, *diébus*, *irátus*.

REM. *E*, *o*, and *u*, unaccented before a vowel, diphthong, a single consonant, or a mute followed by *l*, *r*, or *h*, are not quite as short in sound as the other vowels in the same situations.

## 2. The Sounds of the Diphthongs.

*Æ* and *œ*, like *e* in the same situation; e. g., *Cæsar*, *Dædálus*.

*Au*, as in the English, *author*; e. g., *aurum*.

*Eu*, " " *neuter*; e. g., *neuter* (both Eng. and Latin).

*Ei*, as in the English, *height*; e. g., *dein*.

*Oi*, " " *coin*; e. g., *proin*.

REM. 1. The vowels in *ei* and *oi* are generally pronounced separately.

REM. 2. A few other combinations seem sometimes to be used as

diphthongs. *U* is always the first element of these combinations, and has then the sound of *w*; as, *suade* — swade: except, *Ui* in *huic*, and *cui*, which has the sound of long *i*.

### 3. *The Sounds of the Consonants.*

The consonants are pronounced nearly as in English; *c* and *g*, however, are soft before *e*, *i*, and *y*, and the diphthongs *æ* and *œ*, and hard in other situations: *ch* is always hard, like *k*; as, *charta* (*kartah*).

# FIRST LATIN BOOK.

---

## LESSON I.

*Parts of Speech.—Proposition.—Subject.—Predicate.*

1. IN Latin, as in English, words are divided, according to their use, into eight classes, called *Parts of Speech*, viz.: *Nouns, Adjectives, Pronouns, Verbs, Adverbs, Prepositions, Conjunctions, and Interjections.*

2. These parts of speech, either singly or combined, form *propositions* or *sentences*; as, *āmās*, thou lovest; *puēr lūdīt*, the boy plays.

3. Every proposition, however simple, consists of two parts: (1.) the *subject*, or the person or thing of which it speaks; and, (2.) the *predicate*, or that which is said of the subject: thus, in the proposition, *puēr lūdīt*, *puēr* (the boy) is the subject of which the proposition speaks, and *lūdīt* (plays) is the predicate which is affirmed of the subject.

4. In Latin the subject is often omitted, because the form of the predicate shows what subject is meant; thus the proposition *āmās*, thou lovest, consists in Latin of a single word, because the ending *ās*, of *āmās*, shows (as we shall see by and by) that the subject cannot be *I*, *he*, or *they*, but must be *thou*.

5. When a proposition thus consists of a single word, that word is always a *verb*; e. g., *āmāt*, he loves.

6. The *analysis* of a proposition consists in separating it into its elements.

EXAMPLE 1.—Proposition, *Puēr* (the boy) *lūdīt* (plays).

*Puēr* (the boy) is the *subject*, because it is that of which the proposition speaks (3). *Lūdīt* (plays) is the *predicate*, because it is that which is said of the subject (3).

EXAMPLE 2.—Proposition, *Amās* (thou lovest).

*Amās* is the *predicate*, because it is that which is said of the subject. *Thou*, the subject in English, is omitted in Latin, because the ending *ās*, of the predicate *āmās*, fully implies it.

### 7. Exercise in Analysis.\*

*Puellā* (the girl) *cantāt* (sings). *Puēr* (the boy) *lūdēt* (will play). *Pātēr* (the father) *vīdēbīt* (will see). *Mātēr* (the mother) *rīdēbāt* (was laughing). *Currēbāt* (he was running). *Cantābīt* (he will sing). *Lūdēbāt* (he was playing). *Arābāt* (he was ploughing).

## LESSON II.

### Verbs.—First Conjugation.

8. A VERB expresses *existence*, *condition*, or *action* (generally the *existence*, *condition*, or *action* of some *person*

\* These propositions are to be analyzed according to the examples just given. The object is twofold: first, to fix definitely the distinction between *subject* and *predicate*; and, secondly, to show the learner that when the subject is a personal pronoun (English, *I*, *thou*, *he*, &c.), it is generally omitted in Latin. The use of the pronoun to express *emphasis* or *contrast* will be considered in another place.

or *thing*, called its *subject*): as, *est*, he is; *dormi*, he sleeps (is sleeping, or is asleep); *ămă*, he loves.

9. When a verb expresses simply its *meaning*, without reference to any person or thing, as *ămăre*, to love, it is said to be in the *Infinitive Mood*.

10. When a verb expresses its meaning in the form of an *assertion* or *question*, referring to its subject, as *ămă*, he loves, it is said to be in the *Indicative Mood*.\*

11. A verb may represent its subject,

- 1) As acting in *present* time; as, *ămă*, he loves. It is then said to be in the *Present Tense*.
- 2) As acting in *past* time; as, *ămăbă*, he was loving. It is then said to be in the *Imperfect Tense*.
- 3) As acting in *future* time (i. e., about to act); as, *ămăbă*, he will love. It is then said to be in the *Future Tense*.\*

12. A verb may represent its subject,

- 1) As *speaking of himself*; as, *ămă*, I love, and then both subject and verb are said to be in the *First Person*.
- 2) As *spoken to*; as, *ămă*, thou lovest, and then both subject and verb are said to be in the *Second Person*.
- 3) As *spoken of*; as, *ămă*, he loves, and then both subject and verb are said to be in the *Third Person*.

13. A verb may represent its subject,

- 1) As consisting of *only one* person or thing; as, *ămă*, he, she, or it loves, and then both subject and verb are said to be in the *Singular Number*.

---

\* The other *moods* and *tenses* will be noticed in another place.



- 2) As consisting of *more than one* person or thing; as, *ămant*, they love; and then both subject and verb are said to be in the *Plural Number*.

14. Every verb consists of two parts, viz.:

- 1) *The Root*, or that part of the verb which remains unchanged throughout the various moods, tenses, numbers, and persons; as, *ăm* in *ămără*, *ămă*, *ămăt*, and *ămăbît*.
- 2) *The Endings* which are added to this root, to form the moods, tenses, numbers, and persons; thus, in the forms just noticed—viz., *ămără*, *ămă*, *ămăt*, and *ămăbît*—the endings are, *ără*, *ă*, *ăt*, and *ăbît*.

15. Some verbs have the *infinitive* in *ără*; as, *ămără*, to love. These are said to be of

*The First Conjugation.*

16. In verbs of this conjugation,

- 1) The *root* is found by dropping the infinitive ending *ără*; as, *ămără*; root, *ăm*.
- 2) The *third persons singular* of the *present*, *imperfect*, and *future tenses* of the *indicative* are formed by adding to this root the following endings:

<i>Present.</i>	<i>Imperfect.</i>	<i>Future.</i>
ăt,	ăbăt,	ăbît.

PARADIGM.

*Ămără*, to love: root, *ăm*.

Present.	Ăm-ăt,	he, she, or it loves (or, is loving).
Imperfect.	Ăm-ăbăt,	" " " was loving.
Future.	Ăm-ăbît,	" " " will love (will be loving).

## 17. VOCABULARY.

<i>Latin.</i>	<i>Meaning.</i>	<i>Key-words*</i>
Amarē,	to love	( <i>amorous</i> ).
Ararē,	to plough	( <i>arable</i> ).
Cantarē,	to sing	( <i>canto</i> ).
Lăborărē,	to labor	( <i>labor</i> ).
Vigilarē,	to watch	( <i>vigilant</i> ).

## 18. Exercise.

1. Labōrat.† 2. Cantat. 3. Arat. 4. Arābat.  
 5. Amābat. 6. Vigilābat. 7. Vigilābit. 8. Cantābit.  
 9. Laborābit. 10. Vigīlat. 11. Laborābat. 12. Amā-  
 bit. 13. Amat. 14. Cantābat. 15. Arābit.

## LESSON III.

*First Conjugation—continued.*

## 19. VOCABULARY.

Ambūlarē,	to walk	( <i>ambulatory</i> ).
Jūrărē,	to swear.	
Pūgnarē,	to fight	( <i>pugnacious</i> ).
Saltarē,	to dance.	
Spērărē,	to hope.	
Vōcărē,	to call	( <i>vocation</i> ).

\* These Key-words, derived from the Latin, are introduced partly as a key or help to the learner, in fixing the meaning of the Latin, and partly as specimens of English derivatives of Latin origin.

† The subject of each of these verbs may be, in English, either *he*, *she*, or *it*. The ending, *at*, shows the number and person of the subject, but not its gender (see Paradigm). When the subject is thus omitted in Latin, we can usually determine from the connection which subject to use, just as in English we determine the meaning of the pronoun *they*, which may represent either *things* or *persons*, and either *males* or *females*. In these exercises the pupil may use *he* as the subject.

20. In English, the *tenses*, *numbers*, and *persons* of verbs are indicated by certain *words* or *signs*; as,

<i>Present.</i>	<i>Imperfect.</i>	<i>Future.</i>
<i>He loves,</i>	<i>He was loving,</i>	<i>He will love.</i>

In Latin, however, no such *signs* are used; but their place is supplied by the *endings* of the verb. Hence, in translating English into Latin, omit these signs and express the *tense*, *number*, and *person* of the verb by the *proper endings*; e. g.:

	<i>Present.</i>	<i>Imperfect.</i>	<i>Future.</i>
Eng.	<i>He loves,</i>	<i>He was loving,</i>	<i>He will love.</i>
Lat.	<i>Amat,</i>	<i>Amābat,</i>	<i>Amābit.</i>

### 21. Exercises.

(a) 1. Saltat. 2. Cantat. 3. Ambūlat. 4. Ambulābat. 5. Jurābat. 6. Vocābat. 7. Sperābat. 8. Sperābit. 9. Ambulābit. 10. Saltābit. 11. Jurat. 12. Cantābat. 13. Vocat. 14. Laborābat. 15. Jurābit.

(b) 1. He calls. 2. He is ploughing. 3. He hopes. 4. He swears. 5. He is laboring. 6. He was laboring. 7. He was walking. 8. He was dancing. 9. He was singing. 10. He was ploughing. 11. He will plough. 12. He will call. 13. He will swear. 14. He will hope. 15. He will labor. 16. He is walking. 17. He was hoping. 18. He will walk. 19. He dances. 20. He was fighting. 21. He will sing.

---

## LESSON IV.

### *Verbs.—Second Conjugation.*

22. SOME Verbs have the *infinitive* in *ērē*; as, *mōnērē*, to advise. These are said to be of

*The Second Conjugation.*

23. In verbs of this conjugation,

- 1) The root is found by dropping the infinitive ending *ērě*; as, *mōnērě*; root, *mōn*.
- 2) The *third persons singular* of the *present*, *imperfect*, and *future tenses* of the *indicative* are formed by adding to this root the following endings:

<i>Present.</i>	<i>Imperfect.</i>	<i>Future.</i>
ět,	ěbat,	ěbit.

## PARADIGM.

Mōnērě, to advise: root, *mōn*.

Present.	Mōn-ět,	he, she, or it advises (is advising).
Imperfect.	Mōn-ěbat,	" " " was advising.
Future.	Mōn-ěbit,	" " " will advise.

## 24. VOCABULARY.

Dōērě,	to teach	( <i>docile</i> ).
Dōlērě,	to grieve	( <i>doleful</i> ).
Flērě,	to weep.	
Mānērě,	to remain.	
Mōvērě,	to move	( <i>move</i> ).
Nērě,	to spin.	
Responderě,	to answer	( <i>respond</i> ).
Ridērě,	to laugh	( <i>ridicule</i> ).
Timērě,	to fear, to be afraid	( <i>timid</i> ).

## 25. Exercises.

- (a) 1. Ridet. 2. Docet. 3. Respondet. 4. Dolet.  
 5. Dolēbat. 6. Nebat. 7. Flebat. 8. Manēbat. 9. Movēbat. 10. Movēbit. 11. Dolēbit. 12. Docēbit. 13. Respondēbit. 14. Ridēbit. 15. Movet. 16. Docēbat. 17. Manēbit. 18. Flet. 19. Ridēbat. 20. Nebit.

21. Pugnāt. 22. Manet. 23. Pugnābat. 24. Manēbat. 25. Pugnābit. 26. Manēbit. 27. Cantat. 28. Timet. 29. Saltābat. 30. Respondēbat. 31. Ambulābit. 32. Timēbit. 33. Labōrat. 34. Movet. 35. Saltābat. 36. Docēbat. 37. Vocābit. 38. Dolēbit.

(b) 1. He remains. 2. He moves. 3. He weeps. 4. He spins. 5. He was spinning. 6. He was laughing. 7. He was teaching. 8. He was grieving. 9. He was answering. 10. He will answer. 11. He will weep. 12. He will remain. 13. He will spin. 14. He is laughing. 15. He was weeping. 16. He will teach. 17. He teaches. 18. He was moving. 19. He will laugh. 20. He dances. 21. He laughs. 22. He was calling. 23. He was weeping. 24. He walks. 25. He answers. 26. He was ploughing. 27. He was laughing. 28. He will sing. 29. He will move.

## LESSON V.

### *Verbs.—Third Conjugation.*

26. SOME verbs have the *infinitive* in *ĕrĕ*; as, *rĕgĕrĕ*, to rule. These are said to be of

### *The Third Conjugation.*

27. In verbs of this conjugation,

- 1) The *root* is found by dropping the infinitive ending *ĕrĕ*; as, *rĕgĕrĕ*; root, *rĕg*.
- 2) The *third persons singular* of the *present*, *imperfect*, and *future tenses* of the *indicative* are formed by adding to this root the following *endings*:

<i>Present.</i>	<i>Imperfect.</i>	<i>Future.</i>
īt,	ēbāt,	ēt.

## PARADIGM.

Rĕgĕrĕ, to rule : root, *rĕg*.

Present.	Rĕg-īt,	he, she, or it rules (is ruling).
Imperfect.	Rĕg-ēbāt,	" " " was ruling.
Future.	Rĕg-ēt,	" " " will rule.

## 28. VOCABULARY.

Bibĕrĕ,	to drink	( <i>bibber ; as, wine-bibber</i> ).
Cādĕrĕ,	to fall	( <i>cadence</i> ).
Currĕrĕ,	to run	( <i>current</i> ).
Discĕrĕ,	to learn	( <i>disciple</i> ).
Lĕgĕrĕ,	to read	( <i>legible</i> ).
Ludĕrĕ,	to play	( <i>ludicrous</i> ).
Scribĕrĕ,	to write	( <i>scribe, scribble</i> ).

## 29. Exercises.

(a) 1. Ludit. 2. Currit. 3. Discit. 4. Discēbat. 5. Scribēbat. 6. Bibēbat. 7. Bibet. 8. Cadet. 9. Leget. 10. Legit. 11. Currēbat. 12. Scribet. 13. Scribit. 14. Ludēbat. 15. Discet.

16. Labōrat. 17. Movet. 18. Cadit. 19. Vocābat. 20. Ridēbat. 21. Legēbat. 22. Sperat. 23. Dolet. 24. Bibit. 25. Jurābat. 26. Flebāt. 27. Cadēbat. 28. Arābit. 29. Respondēbit. 30. Ludet.

(b) 1. He writes. 2. He drinks. 3. He falls. 4. He was falling. 5. He was reading. 6. He was playing. 7. He will play. 8. He will run. 9. He will learn. 10. He learns. 11. He was writing. 12. He will read. 13. He is playing. 14. He was running. 15. He will fall.

16. He is fighting. 17. He fears. 18. He reads. 19. He was singing. 20. He was spinning. 21. He was learning. 22. He will labor. 23. He will remain. 24. He will write.

## LESSON VI.

*Verbs.—Fourth Conjugation.*

30. SOME verbs have the infinitive in *īrē*; as, *audīrē*, to hear. These are said to be of

*The Fourth Conjugation.*

31. In verbs of this conjugation,

- 1) The *root* is found by dropping the infinitive ending *īrē*; as, *audīrē*; root, *aud*.
- 2) The *third persons singular* of the *present*, *imperfect*, and *future* tenses of the *indicative* are formed by adding to this root the following *endings*:

<i>Present.</i>	<i>Imperfect.</i>	<i>Future.</i>
<i>īt,</i>	<i>iēbāt,</i>	<i>iēt.</i>

## PARADIGM.

*Audīrē*, to hear : root, *aud*.

Present.	Aud-īt,	he, she, or it hears (is hearing).
Imperfect.	Aud-iēbāt,	“ “ “ was hearing.
Future.	Aud-iēt,	“ “ “ will hear.

## 32. VOCABULARY.

<i>Audīrē</i> ,	to hear	( <i>audible</i> ).
<i>Custōdirē</i> ,	to guard	( <i>custody</i> ).
<i>Dormirē</i> ,	to sleep	( <i>dormant</i> ).
<i>Erūdirē</i> ,	to instruct	( <i>erudition</i> ).
<i>Scīrē</i> ,	to know	( <i>science</i> ).
<i>Sitirē</i> ,	to thirst.	
<i>Vēnirē</i> ,	to come.	

33. *Exercises.*

- (a) 1. *Custōdit.* 2. *Erūdit.* 3. *Sitit.* 4. *Sitiēbat.*  
 5. *Veniēbat.* 6. *Sciēbat.* 7. *Sciet.* 8. *Audiet.* 9.  
*Dormiet.* 10. *Dormit.* 11. *Erudiēbat.* 12. *Custodiet.*  
 13. *Venit.* 14. *Audiēbat.* 15. *Erudiet.*

16. Ambūlat. 17. Docet. 18. Currit. 19. Audit  
20. Cantābat. 21. Ridēbat. 22. Ludēbat. 23. Dormiē  
bat. 24. Saltābit. 25. Nebit. 26. Discet. 27. Veniet.

(b) 1. He thirsts. 2. He knows. 3. He guards. 4.  
He was guarding. 5. He was instructing. 6. He was  
coming. 7. He will come. 8. He will hear. 9. He  
will thirst. 10. He will know. 11. He hears. 12.  
He was thirsting. 13. He will instruct. 14. He sleeps.  
15. He was hearing. 16. He will guard.

17. He walks. 18. He spins. 19. He runs. 20. He  
comes. 21. He was dancing. 22. He was teaching.  
23. He was writing. 24. He was sleeping. 25. He will  
sing. 26. He will laugh. 27. He will play. 28. He  
will instruct. 29. He labors. 30. He was weeping.  
31. He will learn. 32. He will sleep.

## LESSON VII.

*Verbs.—Four Conjugations.—Plural Number.*

34. THE *Four Conjugations* already noticed contain  
all the *regular* verbs of the Latin language: hence,

- 1) In any *regular* verb, the *root* is found by drop-  
ping the infinitive ending of the conjugation  
to which it belongs. These endings in the four  
conjugations are as follows:

<i>Conj. I.</i>	<i>Conj. II.</i>	<i>Conj. III.</i>	<i>Conj. IV.</i>
āre,	ēre,	ere,	ire.

a) These endings, it must be observed, differ from  
each other only in the vowel before *re*, which is called  
the *characteristic* vowel of the conjugation. The *char-*  
*acteristic* vowels in the four conjugations are as follows:



Conj. I.	Conj. II.	Conj. III.	Conj. IV.
ā,	ē,	ē,	ī.

**REM.**—These vowels occur so frequently in their respective conjugations, that they are called *favorite* vowels of the conjugations. The third conjugation has also *ī* as a *favorite* vowel, as in the present ending, *ūt*; e. g., *rēgīt*, he rules.

- 2) In any *regular* verb, the *third persons singular* of the *present*, *imperfect*, and *future* tenses of the *indicative* are formed by adding to the root the endings of the conjugation to which the verb belongs. These endings in the four conjugations are as follows:

	<i>Pres.</i>	<i>Imperf.</i>	<i>Fut.</i>
Conj. I.	āt,	abāt,	abīt.
II.	ēt,	ebāt,	ebīt.
III.	īt,	ebāt,	ēt.
IV.	īt,	iebāt,	iēt.

35. In any *regular* verb, the *third persons plural*, in the tenses already noticed, are formed by simply inserting *n* before *t* in the *endings* of the *third singular*.

**Exc.**—If *ī* immediately precedes *t*, it must be changed, in the fourth conjugation, into *iu*; as, *audīt*, he hears; *audiunt*, they hear: and in the other conjugations into *u*; as, *amabīt*, he will love; *amabunt*, they will love.

#### PARADIGM.

		<i>Present.</i>	<i>Imperfect.</i>	<i>Future.</i>
Conj. I.	{ Sing.	Am-āt,	ām-abāt,	ām-abīt.
	{ Plur.	Am-ant,	ām-abant,	ām-abunt.
II.	{ Sing.	Mōn-ēt,	mōn-ebāt,	mōn-ebīt.
	{ Plur.	Mōn-ent,	mōn-ebant,	mōn-ebunt.
III.	{ Sing.	Rēg-īt,	rēg-ebāt,	rēg-ēt.
	{ Plur.	Rēg-unt,	rēg-ebant,	rēg-ent.
IV.	{ Sing.	Aud-īt,	aud-iebāt,	aud-iēt.
	{ Plur.	Aud-iunt,	aud-iebant,	aud-ient.

36. *Exercises.*

(a) 1. Saltat. 2. Saltant. 3. Ambulābat. 4. Ambulābant. 5. Arābit. 6. Arābunt. 7. Docet. 8. Docent. 9. Timēbat. 10. Timēbant. 11. Ridēbit. 12. Ridēbunt. 13. Ludit. 14. Ludunt. 15. Scribēbat. 16. Scribēbant. 17. Curret. 18. Current. 19. Dormit. 20. Dormiunt. 21. Veniēbat. 22. Veniēbant. 23. Custodiet. 24. Custodient. 25. Vocant. 26. Dolent. 27. Discunt. 28. Sciunt. 29. Saltābunt. 30. Movēbant. 31. Legēbant. 32. Erudiēbant. 33. Jurābunt. 34. Manēbunt. 35. Cadent. 36. Sitient.

(b) 1. He sings. 2. They sing. 3. He was swearing. 4. They were swearing. 5. He will labor. 6. They will labor. 7. He laughs. 8. They laugh. 9. He was spinning. 10. They were spinning. 11. He will remain. 12. They will remain. 13. He runs. 14. They run. 15. He was playing. 16. They were playing. 17. He will drink. 18. They will drink. 19. He knows. 20. They know. 21. He was guarding. 22. They were guarding. 23. He will hear. 24. They will hear. 25. They walk. 26. They answer. 27. They write. 28. They sleep. 29. They were ploughing. 30. They were teaching. 31. They were learning. 32. They were instructing. 33. They will sing. 34. They will weep. 35. They will read. 36. They will come.

---

LESSON VIII.\* *Nouns.—Nominative Case.*

37. IN Latin, as in English, all names, whether of persons, places, or things, are called *Nouns*; as, *Cæsar*; *puēr*, a boy, &c.

REM. 1.—Names of *individual* persons or objects are called *proper nouns*; as, *Cæsar*; *Româ*, Rome.

REM. 2.—Names applicable to persons or objects, not as *individuals*, but as *members of a class*, are called *common nouns*; as, *equûs*, a horse (a name applicable to all animals of this class).

38. All nouns have *gender*, *number*, *person*, and *case*.

39. The *Gender* of a noun is either *masculine*, *feminine*, *common*, or *neuter*.

40. In Latin, as in English, all nouns denoting objects which have sex, except such names of animals as are applicable to both sexes, are,

1) *Masculine*, when they denote *male* beings; as, *hômînēs*, men; *puēr*, a boy; *leônēs*, lions.

2) *Feminine*, when they denote *female* beings; as, *mûliēr*, a woman; *puellâ*, a girl; *leônâ*, a lioness.

3) *Common*, when they apply alike to both sexes; as, *pârens*, a parent (either *male* or *female*); *testis*, a witness (either *male* or *female*).

41. When gender is employed to denote sex, as in the cases just noticed, it is called *natural* gender.

42. In nouns denoting objects without sex (*neuter in English*), and in most names applicable to animals of both sexes, the gender in Latin is entirely independent of sex, and is accordingly called *grammatical* gender.

Some of these nouns are grammatically masculine; some, grammatically feminine; and some, grammatically neuter.

43. The grammatical gender of nouns is determined *partly* by their *signification*, but *principally* by their *endings*.

44. The general rules for ascertaining the grammatical gender of nouns, independently of their endings, are:

- 1) Most names of *rivers, winds, and months* are masculine; as, *Rhēnūs*, the Rhine; *austēr*, the south wind; *Aprīlis*, April.
- 2) Most names of *countries, towns, islands, and trees* are feminine; as *Ægyptūs*, Egypt; *Rōmā*, Rome; *Dēlōs*, name of an island; *laurūs*, the laurel-tree.
- 8) *Indeclinable nouns*,\* and *clauses used as nouns*, are neuter; as, *fās*, right; *nihil*, nothing.

Gender, as determined by the endings of nouns, will be noticed in connection with the several declensions.

45. The *Numbers* and *Persons* are the same in Latin as in English. The *first* person denotes the *speaker*; the *second*, the *person spoken to*; and the *third*, the *person spoken of*. The singular number denotes one; and the plural, more than one.

46. The *Cases* of Latin nouns are six in number, viz.: *Nominative, Genitive, Dative, Accusative, Vocative, and Ablative*.

47. The case of a noun is indicated by its ending; and the formation of its several cases is called *Declension*.

48. The *Nominative Case* corresponds to the *nominative* in English, both in name and use; e. g.,

*Puēr lūdīt*, the boy plays.

49. RULE OF SYNTAX.†—The subject of a finite (i. e. *not infinitive*) verb is put in the nominative.

REM. 1.—Thus, in the example, *puēr* is in the nominative by this rule.

REM. 2.—The subject stands before the verb, as in English.

\* Such as have but one form for all cases and both numbers.

† Rules for the government and agreement of words are called *Rules of Syntax*.

50. RULE OF SYNTAX.—A finite verb must agree with its subject in *number* and *person*.

REM.—Thus, in the above example, *lædū* is in the third person singular, to agree with its subject *puēr*.

☞ Determine which of the nouns in the following Vocabularies have *natural* gender, and which *grammatical*, and apply rules.

### 51. VOCABULARY.\*

Caesār, <i>n.</i>	Caesar, <i>a celebrated Roman general.</i>	
Filiūs, <i>m.</i>	son	( <i>filial</i> ).
Pātēr, <i>m.</i>	father	( <i>paternal</i> ).
Puellā, <i>f.</i>	girl.	
Puēr, <i>m.</i>	boy	( <i>puerile</i> ).
Vincērē,	to conquer,	( <i>vincible</i> ).

### 52. Exercises

(a) 1. Pater† docet. 2. Puer ludit. 3. Filius discēbat. 4. Caesar vincēbat. 5. Puēr veniet. 6. Puella cantābat. 7. Pater scribēbat.

(b) 1. The girl will learn. 2. The father will conquer. 3. The boy dances. 4. The son was learning. 5. The father was ploughing. 6. The boy was playing. 7. The girl will sing. 8. Caesar was coming.

---

\* Gender is indicated in the Vocabularies by *m.* for *masculine*, *f.* for *feminine*, *c.* for *common*, and *n.* for *neuter*.

† As the Latin has no article, a noun may be translated, (1) without the article; as, *pātēr*, father: (2) with the indefinite article; as, *pātēr*, a father: (3) with the definite article; as, *pātēr*, the father.

## LESSON IX.

*Nouns.—Nominative Case—Continued.*

## 53. VOCABULARY.\*

Aquă, <i>f.</i>	water	( <i>aqueous</i> ).
Aquilă, <i>f.</i>	eagle	( <i>aquiline</i> ).
Avia, <i>f.</i>	bird.	
Cănis, <i>c.</i>	dog	( <i>canine</i> ).
Equus, <i>m.</i>	horse	( <i>equestrian</i> ).
Filiă, <i>f.</i>	daughter	( <i>filial</i> ).
Fluere,	to flow	( <i>fluent</i> ).
Hostis, <i>c.</i>	enemy	( <i>hostile</i> ).
Impărare	to command	( <i>imperative</i> ).
Măgister,	master, teacher	( <i>magisterial</i> ).
Măter,	mother	( <i>maternal</i> ).
Mors, <i>f.</i>	death	( <i>mortal</i> ).
Nubea, <i>f.</i>	cloud.	
Rex,	king	( <i>regal</i> ).
Servus, <i>m.</i>	slave	( <i>servant</i> ).
Volare,	to fly	( <i>volatile</i> ).

## 54. Exercises.

(a) 1. Mors veniet. 2. Aquila volat. 3. Hostis veniēbat. 4. Nubes movet. 5. Aqua fluit. 6. Canis ludēbat. 7. Equus curret. 8. Magister erudiēbat. 9. Rex imperābat.

10. Avis volat. 11. Volant. 12. Servus pugnābit. 13. Pugnābant. 14. Puer timēbat. 15. Timēbant. 16. Puella discēbat. 17. Discēbant. 18. Filia dormiēbat. 19. Dormiēbant.

(b) 1. The bird will fly. 2. The eagle was flying. 3. The king will come. 4. The mother will teach. 5. The daughter will learn. 6. The dog will run. 7. The

---

\* In this and the following Vocabularies, whenever the gender of a noun is not marked, the pupil is expected to determine it by the rules already given.

slave will swear. 8. Caesar was coming. 9. The slave is ploughing.

10. They were ploughing. 11. The king will conquer. 12. They are conquering. 13. The dog will come. 14. They were coming.\* 15. The girl is weeping. 16. They will weep. 17. The boy is singing. 18. They will laugh.

## LESSON X.

### *Nouns.—Vocative Case.*

55. THE same form\* of the noun which is called the *nominative*, when *spoken of*, is called the *vocative*, when *spoken to*. This corresponds to the *nominative independent* in English; e. g.

<i>Voc.</i>	<i>Nom.</i>
Pătër,	puër cădět.
Father (or, <i>O father</i> ),	the boy will fall.

REM.—In very short sentences, like the above, the vocative may be placed either at the beginning or close; in other cases, however, it is generally preceded by one or more words in the sentence.

56. RULE OF SYNTAX.—The name of the person or thing addressed is put in the vocative.

REM.—The interjection *O* is sometimes used before the name addressed, both in Latin and English.

### 57. VOCABULARY.

Agricōlă,	husbandman	( <i>agriculture</i> ).
Balbūs,	Balbus, a man's name.	
Caiūs,	Caius, a man's name.	
Discipulūs,	pupil	( <i>disciple</i> ).
Mordērē,	to bite.	

\* A single exception will be noticed in another place.

O ( <i>interj.</i> ),	O, <i>used in direct address.</i>	
Peccārē,	to sin	( <i>peccant</i> ).
Rēginā,	queen.	
Sōrōr,	sister.	

58. *Exercises.*

(a) 1. Puer jurat. 2. *O mater*, puer jurat. 3. Puer ludēbat. 4. Puer ludēbat, *magister*. 5. Rex saltābat. 6. *O regīna*, rex saltābat. 7. Mater dolēbit. 8. *Soror*, mater dolēbit. 9. Canis mordēbit. 10. *O puer*, canis mordēbit.

11. Mors veniet. 12. Balbus jurābat. 13. Jurābunt. 14. Agricōla arābit. 15. ~~Arant~~. 16. Servus peccat. 17. Peccābant. 18. Magister erudiet. 19. Hostis vincet. 20. Vincēbant. 21. Scient. 22. Discēbant. 23. Puella legēbat. 24. Rex imperābat. 25. Nubes movet. 26. Pugnābant. 27. Vincunt.

(b) 1. The king will conquer. 2. *O queen*, the king will conquer. 3. The slave was weeping. 4. *Father*, the slave was weeping. 5. The boy is swearing (*swears*). 6. *Master*, the boy is swearing (*swears*). 7. The dog will bite. 8. *Brother*, the dog will bite. 9. They will dance. 10. *Mother*, they will dance. 11. The master will hear. 12. *Sister*, the master will hear. 13. The horse will run. 14. *Daughter*, the horse will run. 15. Death will come. 16. Death will come, *O king*.

17. Caius is ploughing. 18. They will plough. 19. Balbus was fighting. 20. They are fighting. 21. The girl was writing. 22. They will learn. 23. The pupil will learn. 24. The master is teaching. 25. The queen is weeping. 26. They will weep. 27. They were reading. 28. The eagle was flying. 29. The king will command. 30. The mother will teach. 31. The king is conquering. 32. The father will come.



## LESSON XI.

*Nouns.—Apposition.—Modified Subject.*

59. THE subject of a proposition may have a noun denoting the same person or thing connected with it to explain or limit its meaning. The subject is then said to be *modified* by the limiting noun; e. g.

*Subject not modified.**Subject modified.*

1. *Lătīnūs rēgnābāt.*      2. *Lătīnūs rex rēgnābāt.*

*Latinus was reigning.      Latinus the king was reigning.*

REM. 1.—*Rex*, in the above example, limits *Lătīnūs*; i. e. it shows that the predicate *rēgnābāt* is not affirmed of every one who may have borne the name *Latinus*, but only of *Latinus the king*. *Rex* is in the same case as the subject, i. e. *nominative*, and is said to be in *apposition* with it.

REM. 2.—The noun in apposition is generally placed after the noun which it limits, as in the above example; if, however, it is *emphatic*, it is placed before that noun.

## 60. VOCABULARY.

Aurūm,	gold.	
Crescērē,	{ to grow, to wax (as moon) }	( <i>ascens</i> ).
Faustūlūs,	Faustulus, an Italian shepherd.	
Lătīnūs,	Latinus, a king of Latium.	
Lavinia,	Lavinia, daughter of Latinus.	
Lūnā,	moon	( <i>lunar</i> ).
Micārē,	to glitter, to shine.	
Milēs,	soldier	( <i>military</i> ).
Nūmā,	Numa, second king of Rome.	
Pastōr,	shepherd	( <i>pastor, pastoral</i> ).

Rēgnārē,	to reign	( <i>regnant, reign</i> ).
Tulliā,	Tullia,	
	<i>a queen of Rome.</i>	
Victoriā,	Victoria,	
	<i>queen of England.</i>	

61. *Exercises.*

(a) 1. Balbus dormiēbat. 2. Balbus *servus* dormit. 3. Latīnus regnābat. 4. Latīnus *rex* vincēbat. 5. Tullia cantābat. 6. Tullia *regīna* saltābit. 7. Caius *pastor* cantābit.

8. Luna crescit. 9. Aurum micat. 10. Lavinia *regīna* regnābat. 11. Currēbant. 12. Current. 13. Pastor ridēbit. 14. Ridēbant. 15. Canis mordēbit. 16. Mordēbunt. 17. Puella nebit. 18. Nebunt.

(b) 1. Numa was reigning. 2. *King* Numa was reigning. 3. Faustus *a shepherd* was singing. 4. *Queen* Victoria was reigning.

5. The boy was ploughing. 6. They were playing. 7. They will write. 8. The queen was weeping. 9. They are weeping. 10. The soldier will fight. 11. The girl will learn. 12. The daughter is spinning. 13. They will spin. 14. The boy will fight. 15. They will fight.

## LESSON XII.

*Nouns.—Genitive Case.—Modified Subject.*

62. NOUNS in Latin are declined in five different ways, and are accordingly divided into five classes, called *Declensions*, distinguished from each other by the following

## GENITIVE ENDINGS.

Dec. I.	Dec. II.	Dec. III.	Dec. IV.	Dec. V.
ae,	i,	is,	us,	el*.

## EXAMPLES.

	Nominative.	Genitive.
Dec. I.	Mūsā, a muse,	mūsae, of a muse.
II.	Servūs, a slave,	servī, of a slave.
III.	Hōnōr, an honor,	hōnōris, of an honor.
IV.	Fructūs, a fruit,	fructūs, of a fruit.
V.	Diēs, a day,	diēi, of a day.

REM.—The genitive endings are usually added to the word after the ending of the nominative is dropped; but, as this is not always the case, it becomes necessary, in order to decline a noun correctly, to know both the *nominative* and the *genitive*: accordingly, both these forms are given in the Vocabularies.

63. The *Genitive Case* expresses *possession*, and the *various relations* denoted by the preposition *of*, and accordingly corresponds both to the *English Possessive*, and the *English Objective* with *of*; as, *rēgis cōrōnā*, the king's crown (or the crown of the king); *āmōr glōriāe*, the love of glory.

64. The subject of a proposition may have a noun denoting a *different person* or *thing* connected with it, to explain or limit its meaning. The subject is then said to be *modified* by such noun; e. g.

*Subject not modified.*

*Subject modified.*

1. Fīliūs rēgnābīt.

2. Rēgis fīliūs rēgnābīt.

The son will reign.

The son of the king will reign.

REM.—The genitive *rēgis* (of the king), in the above example, modifies *fīliūs* (the son); i. e. it shows that the predicate *rēgnābīt*

\* In this ending *e* is long except in *spēi*, *fīdēi*, and *rēi*.

(will reign) is not affirmed of *every* son, but only of the son of the king.

a) In the example, the limiting genitive stands before the noun which it limits. This seems to be the more common order, when no *emphasis* is intended, though we often find it reversed.

b) If the noun which is limited by the genitive is *emphatic*, or is a *monosyllable*, it generally stands before the genitive; e. g.

1. Cicerō, *pāter* pātriae.

Cicero, *the father* of (his) country.

2. Lex nātūrae.

*The law* of nature.

REM.—In the first example, *pāter* is emphatic, and in the second, *lex* is a monosyllable; they accordingly stand before their genitives.

65. RULE OF SYNTAX.—A noun limiting the meaning of another noun is put,

1) In the *same* case as that noun, when it denotes the *same* person or thing; e. g. *Lātinūs rex*, Latinus the king (59, REM. 1).

2) In the *genitive*, when it denotes a different person or thing; e. g. *Rēgis filiūs*, the son of the king.

## 66. VOCABULARY.\*

Agrīcōlā,	Gen. āgrīcōlāe,	husbandman	(agriculture).
Amīcūs,	“ amīci,	friend	(amicable).
Balbūs,	“ Balbi,	Balbus, a man's name.	
Caiūs,	“ Caii,	Caius, a man's name.	
Cānis,	“ cānis,	dog	(canine).
Filiā,	“ filiae,	daughter.	

\* The genitive is given in the Vocabulary; and the pupil may determine from the genitive ending to which declension the noun belongs.

Filius,	Gen. filii,	son	(filial).
Frater,	" fratris,	brother	(fraternal).
Lātinūs,	" Lātini,	Latinus,	
		a king of Latium.	
Milēs,	" militis,	soldier	(military).
Pāter,	" patris,	father	(paternal).
Puēr,	" puēri,	boy	(puerile).
Rēginā,	" rēginae,	queen.	
Rex,	" regis,	king	(regal).
Servūs,	" servi,	slave	(servant).
Tullia,	" Tulliae,	Tullia,	
		a queen of Rome.	

## 67. Exercises.

(a) 1. Servus dormit. 2. Balbi servus dormiet. 3. Filius ludit. 4. Regis filius ludēbat. 5. Reginae pater docēbat. 6. Filia ridēbat. 7. Filia reginae ridēbat. 8. Amicus regis cadet.

9. Balbus servus veniēbat. 10. Balbi servus dormit. 11. Pastor cantābit. 12. Canis pastōris mordēbit. 13. Mordēbunt. 14. Filia pastōris nebit. 15. Regis amicus timēbit. 16. Caius, regis amicus, timēbit. 17. Tullia, regis filia, cantābat.

(b) 1. The brother will conquer. 2. The king will conquer. 3. The brother of the king will conquer. 4. The daughter of the king is singing. 5. The queen will read. 6. The daughter of the queen will read. 7. The father of Balbus was laughing.

8. The shepherd's dog (the dog of the shepherd) will bite. 9. The boy's dog will bite. 10. The husband-man's dog will play. 11. The soldier will fight. 12. The son of the soldier will fight. 13. Latinus the king was conquering. 14. The shepherd's daughter (the daughter of the shepherd) is spinning.

## LESSON XIII.

*Nouns.—Accusative Case.—Direct Object of Predicate.*

68. EVERY noun consists of two distinct parts, viz :—

- 1) The *Root*, or that part which remains *unchanged* throughout the various cases of both numbers ; as *mūs* in *mūsā*, *mūsae*, and *mūsām*.
- 2) The *Endings*, which are added to the root to form these cases ; thus, in the forms just noticed, viz., *mūsā*, *mūsae*, and *mūsām*, the endings are *ā*, *ae*, and *ām*.

69. In any noun, of whatever declension,

- 1) The *root* may be found by dropping the ending of the genitive singular (62) ; as, *mūsā*, Gen. *mūsae* ; root, *mūs* : *servūs*, Gen. *servī* ; root, *serv* : *hōnōr*, Gen. *hōnōris* ; root, *hōnōr*, &c.
- 2) Any *case* may be formed (with a few exceptions) by adding to this root the proper ending.

70. 1) The *Accusative Singular* of *neuter* nouns is the same as the *Nominative* ; e. g., Nom. *sceptŕm*, a sceptre ; Accus. *sceptŕm*.

- 2) The *Accusative Singular* of *masculine* and *feminine* nouns is formed from the root, by adding one\* of the following

## ACCUSATIVE ENDINGS.

Dec. I.	Dec. II.	Dec. III.	Dec. IV.	Dec. V.
ām,	ūm,	ēm,	ūm,	ēm.

\* If the noun is of the first declension, the learner will, of course, add the ending given for the first declension ; if of the second, the ending given for the second ; and so on.

## EXAMPLES.

	<i>Genitive.</i>	<i>Root. Ending.</i>	<i>Accusative.</i>
Dec. I.	Mūsae, <i>of a muse</i> ;	mūs -ām; mūsām, <i>a muse</i> .	
II.	Servi, <i>of a slave</i> ;	serv -ūm; servūm, <i>a slave</i> .	
III.	Hōnōris, <i>of an honor</i> ;	hōnōr -ēm; hōnōrēm, <i>an honor</i> .	
IV.	Fructūs, <i>of a fruit</i> ;	fruct -ūm; fructūm, <i>a fruit</i> .	
V.	Diēi, <i>of a day</i> ;	di -ēm; diēm, <i>a day</i> .	

71. The accusative case corresponds very nearly to the English objective, and is used after *transitive verbs* and *certain prepositions*.

72. When a verb represents its subject as acting upon some other person or thing, it is said to be *transitive*; and the person or thing upon which the action is exerted, is called its *direct object*; e. g.

Serviūs impĕriūm administrāt.  
*(Servius the government administers.)*  
 Servius administers the government.

73. In English the object is placed after the verb; thus, *government* is placed after *administers*; but in Latin the object precedes the verb; thus, *impĕriūm* precedes *administrāt*.

74. RULE OF SYNTAX.—The *Direct Object* of an action is put in the *accusative*.

## 75. VOCABULARY.

Aedificārē,		to build	(edifice).
Diēs,	Gen. diēi,	day.	
Dōminūs,	“ dōmīni,	master, as owner	(domineer).
Epistolā,	“ epistolae, f.	letter	(epistle).
Laudārē,		to praise	(laud).
Monstrārē,		to show.	
Mors,	“ mortis, f.	death	(mortal).

Mūrīa,	Gen. mūrī, m.	wall	(mural).
Occidērē,		to kill.	
Puellā,	" puellae,	girl.	
Sēnatūs,	sēnatūs, m.	senate	(senate).
Sperārē,		to hope for.	
Terrērē,		to terrify.	
Timērē,		to fear	(timid).
Viā,	" viae, f.	way, road.	
Vidērē,		to see.	
Vitarē,		to shun.	

## 76. Exercises.

(a) 1. Caius *puellam* laudat. 2. Puer *murum* aedificābat. 3. Rex *puerum* ridet. 4. Puer *mortem* vitat. 5. Puella *diem* sperābat. 6. Puella *viam* monstrābit. 7. Servus *dominum* occīdit.

8. Puella *puerum* laudat. 9. Rex *senatum* timet. 10. Puer *canem* timēbit. 11. Epistolam scribit. 12. Puer *canem* occidēbat. 13. Mortem vitant. 14. Mortem timent. 15. Balbus servus *dominum* timēbit. 16. Balbum servum docent. 17. Balbi filius *puerum* laudābat.

(b) 1. The boy will show *the road*. 2. Balbus is building *a wall*. 3. Caius was praising *the boy*. 4. The slave is showing *the way*. 5. The king hopes for *the day*. 6. The girl will shun *the dog*.

7. The dog will bite the girl. 8. Father is writing a letter. 9. The father will praise the daughter. 10. They are building a wall. 11. They are killing the slave. 12. The king's son will play. 13. The king fears death. 14. The death of the father will terrify the son.



## LESSON XIV.

*Nouns.—Accusative, continued.—Adverbial Modifiers.*

77. RULE OF SYNTAX.—Certain qualifying words, called *adverbs*, are often connected with verbs, merely to modify their meaning; e. g.,

1. *Milēs fortitēr pūgnāt.*      2. *Milēs nōn pūgnāt.*  
*(The soldier bravely fights.)*    *(The soldier not fights.)*  
 The soldier fights *bravely*.    The soldier *does not* fight.

REM.—In these examples, *fortitēr* (bravely) and *nōn* (not) are adverbs modifying *pūgnāt*. In Latin the adverb generally precedes the verb, as in these instances.

## 78. VOCABULARY.\*

Anguis, anguis, c.	snake, serpent.	
Christianus, i, m.	Christian	( <i>Christian</i> ).
Fortitēr,	bravely.	
Lex, legis, f.	law	( <i>legal</i> ).
Matēr, matris,	mother	( <i>maternal</i> ).
Nēgligēre,	to disregard	( <i>neglect</i> ).
Nōn,	not.	
Pastor, pastoris,	shepherd	( <i>pastor</i> ).
Pecuniā, ae, f.	money	( <i>pecuniary</i> ).
Servius, i,	Servius, a man's name.	
Vox, vocis, f.	voice	( <i>vocal</i> ).

## 79. Exercises.

- (a) 1. *Servius pūgnat.*      2. *Servius fortitēr pūgnat.*  
 3. *Mors Christiānum non† terret.*    4. *Agricola anguem timēbit.*  
 5. *Agricola anguem non timēbit.*    6. *Pater*

\* In this and the following Vocabularies, either the genitive or its ending is given immediately after each substantive.

† In translating *nōn* before a verb, place 'not' after the English tense-sign; thus, *nōn terrēt*, *does not terrify*, or *is not terrifying*.

filiam audiēbat. 7. Pater filii vocem audiēbat. 8. Mater vocem negliget. 9. Mater filiae vocem *non* negliget.

10. Caius legem negligēbat. 11. Christiānus pecuniam negliget. 12. Pecuniam negligent. 13. Puērum docent. 14. Christiānus mortem non timet.

(b) 1. The husbandman will fight. 2. The husbandman will *not* fight. 3. Servius fears death. 4. Servius does *not* fear death. 5. The slave hears the voice of (his) master. 6. The boy was killing the dog. 7. The boy was killing the shepherd's dog. 8. The dog will *not* bite. 9. Servius will avenge the death of the king.

10. They do not fear death. 11. They will fight bravely. 12. Caius is teaching the boy. 13. The daughter of the queen is singing. 14. They did not hear (were not hearing). 15. They will not disregard the law.

## LESSON XV.

*Nouns.—Dative Case.—Indirect Object of Predicate.*

80. THE *Dative Case* in Latin corresponds to the *objective* with *to* or *for* in English; as, *mūsā*, a muse; *Dat. mūsae*, *to* or *for* a muse.

81. The *Dative Singular* of a noun may be formed by adding to its root one of the following

### DATIVE ENDINGS.

Dec. I.	Dec. II.	Dec. III.	Dec. IV.	Dec. V.
ae,	ō,	i,	ui,*	ei.†

\* Neuter nouns of the fourth declension are exceptions, as they have the *dative singular* like the *nominative*.

† In this ending *e* is long except in *spēi*, *fīdēi*, and *rēi*.

## EXAMPLES.

Genitive.	Root.	Ending.	Dative.
Dec. I. Mūsae, <i>of a muse</i> ;	mūs	- ae ;	mūsae, <i>to or for a muse.</i>
II. Servi, <i>of a slave</i> ;	serv	- ō ;	servō, " " <i>a slave.</i>
III. Hōnōris, <i>of honor</i> ;	hōnōr	- ī ;	hōnōrī, " " <i>an honor.</i>
IV. Fructūs, <i>of fruit</i> ;	fruct	- ū ;	fructui, " " <i>a fruit.</i>
V. Diēi, <i>of day</i> ;	di	- ēi ;	diēi, " " <i>a day.</i>

82. The person or thing *to or for which* any thing is, or is done, is called an *indirect object*; e. g.,

Balbūs puērō viām monstrāt.

(*Balbus to the boy the way shows.*)

Balbus shows the way *to the boy*.

REM.—In the example it will be observed that the *indirect object* precedes the *direct*. This is the more common order, though not unfrequently reversed.

83. RULE OF SYNTAX.—Any transitive verb may take the *accusative* of the *direct object* and the *dative* of the *indirect object*.

## 84. VOCABULARY.

Accūsārē,	to accuse.	
Bellūm, <i>n.</i>	war.	
Claudērē,	to shut	( <i>close</i> ).
Condērē,	to found, to build.	
Dārē,*	to give.	
Dōmūs, dōmūs, or dōmī, <i>f.</i>	house	( <i>domestic</i> ).
Evertērē,	to pull down, to overthrow.	
Indicērē,	to declare (as war).	
Leō, leōnis, <i>m.</i>	lion.	
Milēs, itis, <i>m.</i> (rarely <i>f.</i> ),	soldier	( <i>military</i> ).

\* *Dārē* is of the first conjugation, with *ā* short, contrary to the general rule.

Portā, ae, f.	gate	{ ( <i>portal</i> ).
Rēpērirē,	to find.	{ ( <i>porter</i> ).
Rōmūlus, I,	Romulus,	
	<i>the founder of Rome.</i>	
Sceptrūm, I, n.	sceptre.	
Urbs, is, f.	city	( <i>urbane</i> ).

## 85. Exercises.

(a) 1. Pastor viam monstrat. 2. Pastor *puēro* viam monstrat. 3. Puer viam monstrābit. 4. Puer *pastōri* viam monstrābit. 5. Servus portam claudet. 6. Servus *regi* portam claudet.

7. Romūlus urbem condēbat. 8. Agricōla anguem repērit. 9. Miles agricōlae domum evertet. 10. Regis sceptrum vidēbant. 11. Milīti viam monstrant. 12. Leōnem timēbant.

(b) 1. The slave is building a wall. 2. The slave is building a wall *for the king*. 3. The boy was showing the road. 4. The boy was showing the road *to the husbandman*. 5. The husbandman is showing the road *to the boy*. 6. They will declare war *against the city*.

7. They are founding a city for the queen. 8. They will not disregard the law. 9. They were writing for the king. 10. They will accuse the boy. 11. They were praising the queen. 12. They will praise the queen's daughter. 13. The king will declare war against the senate. 14. The king will give the city to (*his*) son.

## LESSON XVI

*Nouns.—Ablative Case.—Modified Predicate.*

86. THE *Ablative Case* in Latin corresponds to the *objective* with *from*, *by*, *in*, or *with* in English; as, *mūsā*, a muse; Abl. *mūsā*, from a muse, or *by*, *in*, or *with* a muse.\*

87. The *Ablative Singular* of a noun may be formed by adding to its root one of the following

## ABLATIVE ENDINGS.

Dec. I.	Dec. II.	Dec. III.	Dec. IV.	Dec. V.
a,	ō,	ē,†	ū,	ē.

## EXAMPLES.

Genitive.	Root.	Ending.	Ablative.
Dec. I. <i>Mūsae</i> , of a muse;	<i>mūs</i>	- a;	<i>mūsā</i> , from, in, &c., a muse.
II. <i>Servi</i> , of a slave;	<i>serv</i>	- ō;	<i>servō</i> , " " " a slave.
III. <i>Hōnōris</i> , of honor;	<i>hōnōr</i>	- ē;	<i>hōnōrē</i> , " " " honor.
IV. <i>Fructūs</i> , of fruit;	<i>fruct</i>	- ū;	<i>fructū</i> , " " " fruit.
V. <i>Diēi</i> , of day;	<i>di</i>	- ē;	<i>diē</i> , " " " day.

88. The predicate may be modified by a noun denoting the *time* of an action; e. g.,

*Hīemē ursūs dormīt.*

(*In winter the bear sleeps.*)

The bear sleeps (when?) *in winter*.

89. RULE OF SYNTAX.—The time *when* is put in the

\* The preposition *is*, however, often expressed before the ablative, as it is before the objective in English.

† As an exception to this, a few nouns of the third declension form the ablative in *i*, as we shall see by-and-by.

ablative without a preposition (i. e., without any word for the English *at, in, &c.*)

REM.—The ablative of time often stands first in a sentence, as in the example.

90. The predicate may be modified by a noun denoting the *place* of its action; e. g.,

Ursūs in antrō dormit.

(*The bear in a cave sleeps.*)

The bear sleeps (where?) *in a cave.*

91. RULE OF SYNTAX.—The name of a place where any thing is, or is done, when not a town (227), is generally put in the ablative with a preposition.

☞ The pupil, in preparing his exercises, should imitate the order in the examples, whenever nothing is said on the point.

## 92. VOCABULARY.

Aestas, atis, <i>f.</i>	summer.	
Agēr, āgri, <i>m.</i>	field	( <i>agriculture</i> ).
Antrūm, i, <i>n.</i>	cave.	
Asinūs, i, <i>m.</i>	ass.	
Avīs, is, <i>f.</i>	bird	( <i>aviary</i> ).
Dilāniarē,	to tear in pieces.	
Equūs, i, <i>m.</i>	horse	( <i>equestrian</i> ).
Hiems, emīs, <i>f.</i>	winter.	
Hortūs, i, <i>m.</i>	garden	( <i>horticulture</i> ).
In ( <i>prep. with abl.</i> ),	in.	
Lūcūs, i, <i>m.</i>	grove.	
Mons, tis, <i>m.</i>	mountain.	
Pratūm, i, <i>n.</i>	meadow.	
Ursūs, i, <i>m.</i>	bear.	

## 93. Exercises.

(a) 1. Ursus dormit. 2. Ursus in antro dormit. 3. Canis currit. 4. Canis in horto currit. 5. Puer ludēbat. 6. Puer in agro ludēbat. 7. Hiēme ursus in

*antro* dormiet. 8. Romŭlus urbem condēbat. 9. Romŭlus urbem *in monte* condēbat. 10. *Hĩeme* ursus *in antro* dormit.

11. Servus regem occidet. 12. Leo aſinum dilaniat. 13. Rex reginam accusābat. 14. Regīna filiam docēbit. 15. In luco ludunt. 16. Leo equum dilaniābit.

(b) 1. The boy is playing. 2. The boy is playing *in the garden*. 3. The dog is running. 4. The dog is running *in the meadow*. 5. The bird will not sing. 6. The bird will not sing *in winter*. 7. The daughter was singing *in the grove*. 8. They will walk *in the field*. 9. They will play *in summer*.

10. Balbus will fear Caius. 11. They will fear the queen. 12. He was building a wall. 13. They are building a wall. 14. The queen is walking in the field. 15. The queen's mother was weeping. 16. The slave is showing the boy (to the boy) the way. 17. The slave was shutting the gate. 18. The boy will shut the gate.

## LESSON XVII.

### *Nouns.—First Declension.\**

94. To the *First Declension* belong all nouns which have the genitive in *ae* (62). They all end in *ā* (except a few *Greek* nouns. See 174).

95. Latin nouns of this declension are grammatically feminine; unless their gender is determined by their *signification*, according to previous rules (40, 44).

\* Having learned in the previous Lessons the *use* of the *several cases* of the Latin language, the pupil will now find little difficulty in mastering the *five declensions* (62) in all the cases of *both numbers*.

96. We have already learned that the root of a noun may always be found from the genitive singular (69, 1), but, as it may *also* be formed without much difficulty from the nominative, it will be well for us to notice, in connection with the different declensions, the manner in which this may be done.

97. In the First Declension,

- 1) The *root* may be found by dropping the nominative ending *ă*, as *mūsă*; root, *mūs* (69, 1).
- 2) Any noun *may be declined* (i. e., all the cases of both numbers may be formed) by adding to the root the following

CASE-ENDINGS.

	<i>Nom.</i>	<i>Gen.</i>	<i>Dat.</i>	<i>Accus.</i>	<i>Voc.</i>	<i>Abl.</i>
Sing.	ă,	ae,	ae,	ăm,	ă,	ă,
Plur.	ae,	ărūm,	is,	as,	ae,	is.

PARADIGM.

<i>Singular.</i>		<i>Plural.</i>	
Nom.	Mūs-ă, <i>a muse.</i>	Nom.	Mūs-ae, <i>muses.</i>
Gen.	Mūs-ae, <i>of a muse.</i>	Gen.	Mūs-ărūm, <i>of muses.</i>
Dat.	Mūs-ae, <i>to, for a muse.</i>	Dat.	Mūs-is, <i>to, for muses.</i>
Acc.	Mūs-ăm, <i>a muse.</i>	Acc.	Mūs-as, <i>muses.</i>
Voc.	Mūs-ă, <i>O muse.</i>	Voc.	Mūs-ae, <i>O muses.</i>
Abl.	Mūs-ă, <i>from, &amp;c. a muse.</i>	Abl.	Mūs-is, <i>from, &amp;c. muses.</i>

98. VOCABULARY.\*

Apărîrē,	to open, to uncover	( <i>aperture</i> ).
Aquilă, ae,	eagle	( <i>aquiline</i> ).
Căpūt, itis, n.	head	( <i>capital</i> ).
Columbă, ae,	dove.	

\* The pupil must apply rules for gender



Cōronā, ae,	garland, crown	( <i>coronation</i> ).
Dōlōr, ōris, m.	pain, grief, sorrow	( <i>dolorous</i> ).
Lusciniā, ae,	nightingale.	
Rīdēre,	{ to laugh, }	(ridicule).
	{ to laugh at }	
Sentīre,	{ to feel, to perceive }	
	{ by the senses.	
Vincīre,	{ to bind,	
	{ to bind up.	

99. *Exercises.*

(a) 1. Puellae saltant. 2. Aquilae volant. 3. Regīna puellas docēbit. 4. Tulliae filiae ridēbunt. 5. Tulliae filias ridēbit. 6. Aquila columbas occīdet. 7. Luscinae cantābant.

8. Balbus vocem audit. 9. Caius dolōrem vitābit. 10. Puellae dolōrem sentiunt. 11. Servus epistōlas scribit. 12. Puer caput vīciēbat. 13. Regīna puellae corōnam dabit. 14. Regīna puellis corōnas dabit.

(b) 1. The girl was writing a letter. 2. The girls are writing letters. 3. The queen will call (her) daughter. 4. The queen is calling (her) daughters. 5. Tullia will give a garland to her daughter.

6. They will give garlands to (their) daughters. 7. He is reading the queen's letter. 8. They are reading the girls' letters (the letters of the girls). 9. They will show the way to the queen. 10. The husbandman will shut the gate. 11. The doves will fly. 12. The nightingales are singing. 13. The boy hears (his) father's voice. 14. The boy is opening the letters. 15. The slave will open (his) master's letters.

## LESSON XVIII.

*Nouns.—Second Declension.—Nouns in ūs and ūm.*

100. To the *Second Declension* belong all nouns which have the genitive singular in ī (62). They end in *ūs*, *ūm*, *ēr*, and *īr* (except a few Greek nouns. See 174).

101. In this declension nouns in *ūm* are grammatically *neuter*; and the *rest* (with a few exceptions\*) are grammatically *masculine*; unless their gender is determined by their signification, according to previous rules (40, 44).

102. In nouns in *ūs* and *ūm*, of this declension, the *root* is found by dropping the *nominative ending*; as, *serv-ūs*, a slave; root, *serv*: *rēgn-ūm*, a kingdom; root, *rēgn*.

103. Nouns in *ūs* are declined by adding to the root the following

## CASE-ENDINGS.

	<i>Nom.</i>	<i>Gen.</i>	<i>Dat.</i>	<i>Accus.</i>	<i>Voc.</i>	<i>Abt.</i>
Sing.	ūs,	I,	ō,	ūm,	ě,†	ō,
Plur.	I,	ōrūm,	Is,	ōs,	I,	Is.

\* It has not been thought best to burden the memory of the learner with *lists* of exceptions, at this early stage of his study. Accordingly, *general rules*, covering the great majority of cases, are given for *immediate* and *constant use*, thus the pupil may fix the general principles of the language, and become better prepared to understand and recollect the exceptions as they occur in his lessons. Such exceptions, whether pertaining to gender or other subjects, will be marked in the *Vocabularies*.

† The vocative singular, in nouns in *ūs* of this declension, is not like the nominative (see 55 and note). Proper nouns in *iūs* drop the ending *ī* in the vocative singular; as, *Tullius* (proper name), Voc. *Tulli*. *Filiūs*, a son, and *gēniūs*, a guardian angel, also drop the ending *ī* in the vocative singular.

## PARADIGM.

<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
Nom. Serv-ūs, <i>a slave.</i>	Nom. Serv-i, <i>slaves.</i>
Gen. Serv-i, <i>of a slave.</i>	Gen. Serv-ōrūm, <i>of slaves.</i>
Dat. Serv-o, <i>to, for a slave.</i>	Dat. Serv-is, <i>to, for slaves.</i>
Acc. Serv-ūm, <i>a slave.</i>	Acc. Serv-ōs, <i>slaves.</i>
Voc. Serv-ē, <i>O slave.</i>	Voc. Serv-i, <i>O slaves.</i>
Abl. Serv-o, <i>from, by a slave.</i>	Abl. Serv-is, <i>from, by slaves.</i>

REM.—It will be well for the pupil to accustom himself to compare the several cases with each other, and to associate together such as are alike, or nearly so.

104. Nouns in *ūm* are declined by adding to the root the following

## NEUTER CASE-ENDINGS.

	<i>Nom.</i>	<i>Gen.</i>	<i>Dat.</i>	<i>Accus.</i>	<i>Voc.</i>	<i>Abl.</i>
Sing.	ūm,	i,	o,	ūm,	ūm,	o,
Plur.	ā,	ōrūm,	is,	ā,	ā,	is.

## PARADIGM.

<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
Nom. Rēgn-ūm, <i>a kingdom.</i>	Nom. Rēgn-ā, <i>kingdoms.</i>
Gen. Rēgn-i, <i>of a kingdom.</i>	Gen. Rēgn-ōrūm, <i>of kingdoms.</i>
Dat. Rēgn-o, <i>to, for a kingdom.</i>	Dat. Rēgn-is, <i>to, for kingdoms.</i>
Acc. Rēgn-ūm, <i>a kingdom.</i>	Acc. Rēgn-ā, <i>kingdoms.</i>
Voc. Rēgn-ūm, <i>O kingdom.</i>	Voc. Rēgn-ā, <i>O kingdoms.</i>
Abl. Rēgn-o, <i>from, by a kingdom.</i>	Abl. Rēgn-is, <i>from, by kingdoms.</i>

REM. 1.—In neuters of all declensions, the *nom.*, *acc.*, and *voc.* are alike in each number, and in the plural end in *ā*, as in the paradigm just given.

REM. 2.—Neuters in *ūm* are declined like masculines in *is* of this declension, except in the cases just mentioned (*nom.*, *acc.*, and *voc.*). Compare paradigms.

## 105. VOCABULARY.

Agnūs, I,	lamb.	
Discipŭlus, I,	pupil	(disciple).
Dōminūs, I,	master, as owner	(domineer).
Gērērē,	{ to carry on, to wage (as war).	
Haedūs, I,		kid.
Lŭpūs, I,	wolf.	
Māgistēr, trī,	master, as teacher	(magisteria-).

## 106. Exercises.

(a) 1. Caius Balbum docēbat. 2. Balbus Caium docēbat. 3. Servus domīnum occīdet. 4. Servi domīnos timent. 5. Balbus filios laudābit. 6. Servus domīni filios timet. 7. Servi dominōrum filiōs timēbunt.

8. Puellae dolōrem sentiēbant. 9. Servi muros aedificābunt. 10. Pastor filiis canem dabit. 11. Pastor filiābus\* haedum dabit.

(b) 1. Balbus will instruct the slave. 2. Caius will punish the pupil. 3. They will instruct (their) pupils. 4. The slaves will fear Balbus. 5. The master was punishing (his) slaves. 6. Caius will kill the wolf. 7. Wolves will kill lambs. 8. The wolves do not see (see not) the kids:

9. Caius was waging war. 10. They are waging wars. 11. Balbus will fight. 12. The sons of Balbus will fight. 13. The master is teaching the boys. 14. The master is teaching his pupils in the garden. 15. The girls were walking in the garden. 16. He was playing in the meadow. 17. They will play in the fields. 18. The slaves were reading (their) master's letters.

---

\* Filiā has the dative and ablative plur. in *abŭs*, to distinguish it from the same cases of *filiŭs*.

## LESSON XIX.

*Nouns.—Second Declension, continued.—Nouns in ěr and ĭr.*

107. NOUNS in ěr and ĭr, of the second declension, have the *nominative* and *vocative singular* alike, and in all the other cases are declined like *servŭs* (103), with the single exception that most nouns in ěr drop ě in the root.

## PARADIGMS.

## 1. Gĕnĕr, a son-in-law : root, gĕnĕr (ĕ not dropped).

<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
Nom. Gĕnĕr, a son-in-law.	Nom. Gĕnĕr-I, sons-in-law.
Gen. Gĕnĕr-I, of son-in-law.	Gen. Gĕnĕr-ŏrum, of sons-in-law.
Dat. Gĕnĕr-ŏ, to son-in-law.	Dat. Gĕnĕr-Is, to sons-in-law.
Acc. Gĕnĕr-ŭm, son-in-law.	Acc. Gĕnĕr-ŏs, sons-in-law.
Voc. Gĕnĕr, O son-in-law.	Voc. Gĕnĕr-I, O sons-in-law.
Abl. Gĕnĕr-ŏ, from son-in-law.	Abl. Gĕnĕr-Is, from sons-in-law.

## 2. Agĕr, a field : root, āgr (ĕ dropped).

<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
Nom. Agĕr, a field.	Nom. Agr-I, fields.
Gen. Agr-I, of a field.	Gen. Agr-ŏrŭm, of fields.
Dat. Agr-ŏ, to a field.	Dat. Agr-Is, to fields.
Acc. Agr-ŭm, a field.	Acc. Agr-ŏs, fields.
Voc. Agĕr, O field.	Voc. Agr-I, O fields.
Abl. Agr-ŏ, from a field.	Abl. Agr-Is, from fields.

✎ Vĭr (a man) and its compounds are the only nouns in ĭr, and are declined like gĕnĕr.

## 108. VOCABULARY.

Armĭgĕr, I,  
Dilĭgentĭā, ae,  
Gĕnĕr, I,  
Libĕr, libri,  
Vulpĕs, is, f.

armor-bearer.  
diligence.  
son-in-law.  
book.  
fox.

109. *Exercises.*

(a) 1. Puer in agro ludit. 2. Pueri in agris ludēbant. 3. Magister puēros docēbit. 4. Magistri discipūlos docēbunt. 5. Magister puēris libros dabit. 6. Armigērū occidēbant.

7. Pater diligentiam (64, b) filiōrum laudābat. 8. Regīnae filia in luco ambulābat. 9. Lusciniæ in lucia cantant. 10. Magistri legem non negligēt. 11. Puēri vulpem non occīdent.

(b) 1. The boy was running in the fields. 2. The boys will run in the fields. 3. The boys saw the master's book. 4. The pupils will give the master a book (a book to the master). 5. They will give books to (their) masters. 6. He will punish the armor-bearer. 7. He will accuse (his) son-in-law. 8. They will accuse (their) sons-in-law.

9. The master was praising (his) pupils. 10. The master was praising the diligence of (his) pupils. 11. The pupils do not hear the master. 12. The slaves will shut the gates of the city. 13. The boys were reading in the garden. 14. The girls are reading in the meadow.

---

LESSON XX.*Adjectives of the First and Second Declension.*

110. THE *Adjective* is that part of speech which is used to qualify substantives; as, *bōnūs*, good; *māgnūs*, great.

111. The form of the adjective often depends, in part, upon the gender of the noun which it qualifies;

e. g., *Bōnūs puēr*, a good boy; *Bōnā puellā*, a good girl; and *Bōnūm rēgnūm*, a good kingdom. Thus, *bōnūs* is the form of the adjective when used with *masc.* nouns, *bōnā* with *fem.*, and *bōnūm* with *neuter*.

112. These three forms of the adjective are declined like nouns of the same endings. Thus, the masculine is declined like *servūs* (103), and is accordingly of the *second* declension; the feminine like *mūsā* (97), and is of the *first* declension; and the neuter like *rēgnūm* (104), and is of the *second* declension.

## PARADIGM.

Bōnūs, good.			
SINGULAR.			
	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
Nom.	Bōn-ūs,	bōn-ā,	bōn-ūm.
Gen.	Bōn-I,	bōn-ae,	bōn-I.
Dat.	Bōn-o,	bōn-ae,	bōn-o.
Acc.	Bōn-ūm,	bōn-ām,	bōn-ūm.
Voc.	Bōn-ē,	bōn-ā,	bōn-ūm.
Abl.	Bōn-o,	bōn-a,	bōn-o.
PLURAL.			
Nom.	Bōn-I,	bōn-ae,	bōn-ā.
Gen.	Bōn-ōrūm,	bōn-ārūm,	bōn-ōrūm.
Dat.	Bōn-Is,	bōn-Is,	bōn-Is.
Acc.	Bōn-ōs,	bōn-ās,	bōn-ā.
Voc.	Bōn-I,	bōn-ae,	bōn-ā.
Abl.	Bōn-Is,	bōn-Is,	bōn-Is.

REM.—Adjectives like the above are called adjectives of the *First* and *Second Declension*, because they are declined like nouns of these declensions; the *masc.* and *neut.* being declined like nouns of the *second* declension, and the *fem.* like those of the *first*.

113. Some adjectives of this declension have the *nom.* and *voc. sing.* in *ēr*, like nouns in *ēr* of the *second* declension. These, in all their other forms, are de-

clined like *bönüs* in the Paradigm above, with the exception, that most of them drop *ě* before *r* of the root in all genders.

## PARADIGMS.

1. Těněr, tender : root, *těněr* (*ě* not dropped).

## SINGULAR.

	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
Nom.	Těněr,	těněr-ě,	těněr-ům.
Gen.	Těněr-I,	těněr-ae,	těněr-I.
Dat.	Těněr-ō,	těněr-ae,	těněr-ō.
Acc.	Těněr-ům,	těněr-ām,	těněr-ům.
Voc.	Těněr,	těněr-ě,	těněr-ům.
Abl.	Těněr-ō,	těněr-a,	těněr-ō.

## PLURAL.

Nom.	Těněr-I,	těněr-ae,	těněr-ě.
Gen.	Těněr-ōrům,	těněr-ārům,	těněr-ōrum.
Dat.	Těněr-Ia,	těněr-Ia,	těněr-Ia.
Acc.	Těněr-ōa,	těněr-āa,	těněr-ě.
Voc.	Těněr-I,	těněr-ae,	těněr-ě.
Abl.	Těněr-Ia,	těněr-Ia,	těněr-Ia.

2. Aegěr, sick : root, *aegr* (*ě* dropped).

## SINGULAR.

	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
Nom.	Aegěr,	aegr-ě,	aegr-ům.
Gen.	Aegr-I,	aegr-ae,	aegr-I.
Dat.	Aegr-ō,	aegr-ae,	aegr-ō.
Acc.	Aegr-ům,	aegr-ām,	aegr-ům.
Voc.	Aegěr,	aegr-ě,	aegr-ům.
Abl.	Aegr-ō,	aegr-a,	aegr-ō.

## PLURAL.

Nom.	Aegr-I,	aegr-ae,	aegr-ě.
Gen.	Aegr-ōrům,	aegr-ārům,	aegr-ōrům.
Dat.	Aegr-Ia,	aegr-Ia,	aegr-Ia.
Acc.	Aegr-ōa,	aegr-āa,	aegr-ě.
Voc.	Aegr-I,	aegr-ae,	aegr-ě.
Abl.	Aegr-Ia,	aegr-Ia,	aegr-Ia.



REM.—The following adjectives have the genitive singular in *tis* (the *i* is generally short in *alterius*), and the dative singular in *t* in all genders, viz: *aliūs*, another; *nullūs*, no one; *solūs*, alone; *cōtūs*, the whole; *ullūs*, any; *unūs*, one; *altēr*, the other; *neutēr*, neither; and *utēr*, which (of the two).

114. RULE OF SYNTAX.—Adjectives agree with the nouns which they qualify, in *gender*, *number*, and *case*; e. g.,

Māter bōnām filiām laudāt.

(The mother (her) good daughter praises).

The mother praises her good daughter.

REM. 1.—The adjective *bōnām* is in the *feminine accusative singular*, to agree with its noun *filiām*.

REM. 2.—The position of the adjective seems to depend principally upon *emphasis*; and accordingly the adjective *precedes* or *follows* its noun, according as it is or is not emphatic. In the example, *bōnām* is emphatic.

REM. 3.—*Meūs*, my; *tuūs*, your (or thy); *suūs*, his, her, &c., though called *adjective pronouns* (278 and 295), are in declension and agreement really adjectives. They usually follow their nouns: e. g.,

Māliēr ancillām suām excitāt.

(The woman maid her awakens.)

The woman awakens her maid.

## 115. VOCABULARY.

Bēignūs, ā, ūm,	kind	(benign).
Bōnūs, ā, ūm,	good.	
Magnūs, ā, ūm,	large, great	(magnitude).
Meūs,* ā, ūm,	my.	
Pulchēr, chrā, chrūm,	beautiful.	
Sēpēlirē,	to bury.	
Stūdīōsūs, ā, ūm,	studious.	
Suūs,† ā, um,	his, her, its, their.	
Tuūs, ā, ūm,	your, thy.	

\* Voc. sing. masc. is *mī*.

† The meaning of this word depends in part upon the *gender* and *number* of the subject of the proposition in which it is used. Thus, in the

116. *Exercises.*

(a) 1. Regīna puēros laudābat. 2. Regīna puēros bonos laudābat. 3. Pater filium suum<sup>a</sup> docēbat. 4. Mater filias suas amābit. 5. Bona mater filias suas amābit.

6. Magister puēros docēbit. 7. Bonus magister studiōsos puēros docēbit. 8. Agricōlae anguem non timēbunt. 9. Caius bonam legem non negliget. 10. Christiāni legem bonam non negligunt. 11. Pater meus in prato ambūlat.

(b) 1. The father was burying *his*<sup>a</sup> son. 2. They are burying *their*<sup>a</sup> sons. 3. My friend does not hear my voice. 4. The daughters love (their) kind mother. 5. The mother will instruct her beautiful daughters.

6. Caius disregards the law. 7. They disregard the good laws. 8. The boys are killing your dog. 9. Good boys will not kill dogs. 10. Your dog will kill the wolf. 11. Dogs will kill large wolves.

## LESSON XXI.

*Adjectives of the First and Second Declension, continued.*

117. THE noun which the adjective qualifies is often omitted in Latin; and then in translating into English the word *man* must be supplied, if the adjective is masc. sing.; *woman*, if fem. sing.; and *thing*, if neuter sing.; e. g.,

above example (*Mūliēr ancillām suām excītāt*), *suām* means *her*, because the subject *mūliēr* is *fem. sing.*; with a masculine subject it would mean *his*, and with a plural subject, *their*, &c.

Avārūs pēcūniām āmāt.

(*The avaricious (man) money loves.*)

The avaricious man loves money.

REM.—After a plur. adjec. the noun is sometimes expressed and sometimes omitted in the Eng. translation; thus, *avarī* may be translated *avaricious men*, or simply *the avaricious*.

118. When a noun is limited by a genitive, one or both nouns may be qualified by an adjective; e. g.,

1. Māgnā rēgīs cōrōnā.

(*The great of the king crown.*)

The king's great crown.

2. Māgnā bōnī rēgīs cōrōnā.

(*The great of the good king crown.*)

The good king's great crown.

#### 119. VOCABULARY.

Aureūs, ā, ūm,	golden.
Avarītiā, ae,	avarice.
Avārūs, ā, ūm,	avaricious.
Impiūs, ā, ūm,	impious.
Indoctūs, ā, ūm,	unlearned.
Lābōr, ōris, m.	labor.
Poētā, ae, m.	poet.
Sāpientiā, ae,	wisdom.
Vindicārē	to avenge.

#### 120. Exercises.

(a) 1. Auream regis corōnam vidēbant. 2. Servi magnam regis corōnam vidēbunt. 3. Balbi domum evertent. 4. Impii domum evertēbant. 5. Indoctus sapientiam laudābat.

6. Magnum boni regis sceptrum timēbunt. 7. Amīci sapientiam tuam laudant. 8. Christiāni avaritiam vitābunt. 9. Mater bonas filias laudābat.

(b) 1. He disregards his slave's labor. 2. He disre-

gards his slave's great labor. 3. The beautiful daughters of the queen will dance. 4. The poet was holding the beautiful crown. 5. The poet was holding the good queen's beautiful crown. 6. The good (man) will not disregard the law. 7. The poet will *laugh at* the unlearned (man). 8. The good will not fear death.

9. They will avenge the death of their father. 10. They were avenging the death of the good (woman). 11. The impious (man) will fear death. 12. The poet will build a beautiful house.

## LESSON XXII.

*Nouns and Adjectives.—First and Second Declension, continued.—Price, Value, and Degree of Estimation.*

121. THE predicate of a proposition may be modified by a noun or adjective denoting *price, value, or degree of estimation*; e. g.,

1. Avārūs pātriām aurō vendēt.

(*The avaricious (man) (his) country for gold will sell.*)

The avaricious man will sell his country for gold.

2. Avārūs pēcūniām māgnī aestīmāt.

(*The avaricious (man) money at a great (price) values.*)

The avaricious man values money at a great price  
(or highly).

122. RULE OF SYNTAX.—*Price*, when expressed by nouns, is generally put in the ablative, and when expressed by adjectives, generally in the genitive.

REM. 1.—The genitive of a few nouns and the ablative of a few adjectives sometimes occur in expressions of price and value.

REM. 2.—In example 1. the noun *aurō* is in the ablative, and in example 2. the adjective *māgnī* is in the genitive, by the above rule.

## 123. VOCABULARY.

Aestimārē,	to value	( <i>estimate</i> ).
Aurūm, i,	gold.	
Magnī,	{ at a great price, { at a high price.	
Magnī aestimārē,	{ to prize highly, { to think highly of.	
Parvī,	{ at a little price, { at a low price.	
Parvī aestimārē,	to think little of.	
Pātriā, ae,	native country	( <i>patriotic</i> ).
Prodītōr, ōris,	traitor.	
Vendērē,	to sell	( <i>vend</i> ).
Vērūs, ū, ūm,	true, real.	
Virtūs, ūtis, f.	virtue.	

## 124. Exercises.

(a) 1. Impius patriam auro vendēbat, 2. Prodītōr patriam *parvī*<sup>3</sup> aestimābit. 3. Caius amīci sui labōrem *parvī* aestimat. 4. Boni virtūtem *magnī*<sup>3</sup> aestimant.

5. Rex servum *magnī* aestimābit. 6. Regīna aurēam corōnam *magnī* aestimat. 7. Magnam urbis portam claudent. 8. Domīnus servi sui epistōlas aperiet. 9. Servus puēros vocābit.

(b) 1. The traitor will sell (his) country for gold. 2. Caius values true virtue *at a great (price)*.<sup>3</sup> 3. The master thinks *little*<sup>3</sup> of the labor of his slave.

4. The poet will feel real sorrow. 5. A father will not disregard the sorrow of his son. 6. The avaricious (man) will value virtue *at a low (price)*.<sup>3</sup> 7. The avaricious value money *at a high (price)*.<sup>3</sup> 8. Christians think *little*<sup>3</sup> of money.

## LESSON XXIII.

*Nouns.—Third Declension.—Class I.*

125. To the *Third Declension* belong all nouns which have the genitive singular in *is*. They end in *a, e, i, o, y, c, l, n, r, s, t, x*, and may be divided into four classes:

- 1) Those which have the root the same as the nominative singular (except, in a few instances, the omission or change of the radical vowel): as, *mŭlĕr*, a woman; root, *mŭlĕr*.
- 2) Those which form the root by adding a single letter to the nominative singular: as, *leŏ*, a lion; root, *leŏn*.
- 3) Those which form the root by dropping the ending of the nominative singular: as, *urb*s, a city; root, *urb*.
- 4) Those which form the root by changing the ending of the nominative singular: as, *piĕtĕs*, piety; root, *piĕtĕt*.

126. CLASS I.—This class comprises nouns in *c,\* l, n, r, t, and y*. These either have the root the same as the nominative singular, or form it (with a few exceptions) by one of the following slight vowel changes:

- 1) Nouns in *tĕr* and *bĕr* generally drop *e* in the root: as, *pĕtĕr*, a father; root, *pĕtr*.
- 2) Nouns in *ĕn* generally change *ĕ* into *ĭ* in the root: as, *flŭmĕn*, a river; root, *flŭmĭn*.
- 3) Nouns in *ŭt* change *ŭ* into *ĭ* in the root: as, *cĕpŭt*, a head; root, *cĕpĭt*.

---

\* There are only two nouns with this ending, one of which belongs to Class II.

**REM.**—The quantity of the radical vowel is sometimes changed; this is the case in most nouns in *al* and *or*, which generally lengthen the vowel in the root.

127. Neuter nouns of this declension have the nominative, accusative, and vocative singular alike, and are declined in the other cases by adding to the root the following

## CASE-ENDINGS.

	<i>Nom.</i>	<i>Gen.</i>	<i>Dat.</i>	<i>Accus.</i>	<i>Voc.</i>	<i>Abl.</i>
Sing.	—	is,	I,	—	—	ě (I).
Plur.	ă (iă),	üm (iüm),	íbüs,	ă (iă),	ă (iă),	ibüs.

**REM.**—The inclosed endings belong only to neuters in *e*, *al*, and *ar*.

## PARADIGMS.

1. Căpăt, <i>n.</i> , a head. (root, <i>căpăt</i> [126, 8].)		2. Anîmăl, <i>n.</i> , an animal. (root, <i>same as nom.*</i> [126].)	
<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>	<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
Nom. Căpăt,	Căpăt-ă.	Nom. Anîmăl,	Anîmal-iă.
Gen. Căpăt-is,	Căpăt-üm.	Gen. Anîmal-is,	Anîmal-iüm.
Dat. Căpăt-I,	Căpăt-íbüs.	Dat. Anîmal-I,	Anîmal-íbüs.
Acc. Căpăt,	Căpăt-ă.	Acc. Anîmăl,	Anîmal-iă.
Voc. Căpăt,	Căpăt-ă.	Voc. Anîmăl,	Anîmal-iă.
Abl. Căpăt-ě,	Căpăt-ibüs.	Abl. Anîmal-I,	Anîmal-ibüs.

128. Masculine and feminine nouns of this declension are declined, in all the cases except the *nominative* and *vocative singular* (which are alike), by adding to the root the following

## CASE-ENDINGS.

	<i>Nom.</i>	<i>Gen.</i>	<i>Dat.</i>	<i>Accus.</i>	<i>Voc.</i>	<i>Abl.</i>
Sing.	—	is,	I,	ëm (im),	—	ě (I).
Plur.	es,	üm (iüm),	íbüs,	es,	es,	ibüs.

\* With the radical vowel lengthened (126, **REM.**)

REM.—The inclosed endings (except that of the genitive plural, which will be noticed again, 141) belong only to a few words.

## PARADIGMS.

1. Lăbör, <i>m., labor.</i>		2. Măliër, <i>f., a woman.</i>	
(root, <i>same as nom.*</i> [126].)		(root, <i>same as nom.</i> [126].)	
<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural.</i>	<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
Nom. Lăbör,	Lăbör-ēs.	Nom. Măliër,	Măliër-ēs.
Gen. Lăbör-īs,	Lăbör-ūm.	Gen. Măliër-īs,	Măliër-ūm.
Dat. Lăbör-ī,	Lăbör-ībūs.	Dat. Măliër-ī,	Măliër-ībūs.
Acc. Lăbör-ēm,	Lăbör-ēs.	Acc. Măliër-ēm,	Măliër-ēs.
Voc. Lăbör,	Lăbör-ēs.	Voc. Măliër,	Măliër-ēs.
Abl. Lăbör-ē,	Lăbör-ībūs.	Abl. Măliër-ē,	Măliër-ībūs.

3. Pătër, <i>a father.</i>		4. Frătër, <i>a brother.</i>	
(root, <i>patr</i> [126, 1].)		(root, <i>fratr</i> [126, 1].)	
<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>	<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
Nom. Pătër,	Pătr-ēs.	Nom. Frătër,	Fratr-ēs.
Gen. Pătr-īs,	Pătr-ūm.	Gen. Fratr-īs,	Fratr-ūm.
Dat. Pătr-ī,	Pătr-ībūs.	Dat. Fratr-ī,	Fratr-ībūs.
Acc. Pătr-ēm,	Pătr-ēs.	Acc. Fratr-ēm,	Fratr-ēs.
Voc. Pătër,	Pătr-ēs.	Voc. Frătër,	Fratr-ēs.
Abl. Pătr-ē,	Pătr-ībūs.	Abl. Fratr-ē,	Fratr-ībūs.

## 129. VOCABULARY.

Brūtūs, ī,	Brutus, <i>a Roman consul.</i>
Caecūs, ā, ūm,	blind.
Consul, īs,	consul, <i>Roman chief magistrate.</i>
Finirē,	to finish.
Frătër, trīs,	brother.
Lucērē,	to shine.
Măliër, ērīs,	woman.
Sēnatōr, ōrīs,	senator.
Sirēn, īs, f.	siren.
Sol, īs, m.	sun.
Sōrōr, ōrīs,	sister.

\* With the radical vowel lengthened (126, REM.)



130. *Exercises.*

(a) 1. Agricōla labōrem finiēbat. 2. Mulier sorōres accusābit. 3. Brutum consūlem occidēbat. 4. Senatōres Caesārem occidēbant.

5. Bonus puer caput aperiet. 6. Servi capīta aperiēbant. 7. Sirēnes cantābant. 8. Sol lucēbat. 9. Caeci solem non vident. 10. Pastōres aurum magni aestīmant.

(b) 1. The boy accuses his brother. 2. They accuse their brothers. 3. The consuls were waging war. 4. The senators fear the consul. 5. The consuls fear the senators. 6. The shepherd values his dog *at a high (price).*\* 7. They will finish their labor.

8. They fear the sirens. 9. Good boys uncover their heads. 10. The blind boy does not see the sun. 11. The blind do not see the sun. 12. The good woman loves (her) beautiful daughters. 13. Good daughters love their mothers. 14. Good mothers instruct their daughters.

## LESSON XXIV.

*Nouns.—Third Declension.—Class II.*

131. CLASS II. comprises nouns of the third declension in *a*, *o*, and a few in *i*. These form the root by adding a letter to the nominative singular.

1) Nouns in *a*, and a few in *i*, add *t*: as, *poēmā*, a poem; root, *poēmāt*: *hydrōmētī*, mead; root, *hydrōmētīt*.

2) Nouns in *o* add *n*: as, *leō*, a lion; root, *leōn*.

REM. 1.—*O* is long in the root.

REM. 2.—Nouns in *do* and *go* change *o* into *ī*, before *n* in the root: as *virgo*, a virgin; root, *virgīn*.

## PARADIGMS.

1. Poēma, *n.*, a poem : root, *poēmāt* (131, 1).*Singular.*

N. Poēmā,  
G. Poēmāt-īs,  
D. Poēmāt-i,  
A. Poēmā,  
V. Poēmā,  
A. Poēmāt-ē,

*Plural.*

N. Poēmāt-ā.  
G. Poēmāt-ūm.  
D. Poēmāt-ībūs, or *īa*.<sup>\*</sup>  
A. Poēmāt-ā.  
V. Poēmāt-ā.  
A. Poēmāt-ībūs, or *īa*.

2. Sermō, *m.*, a discourse.(root, *sermōn* [131, 2].)*Singular.**Plural.*

N. Sermō, Sermōn-ēs.  
G. Sermōn-īs, Sermōn-ūm.  
D. Sermōn-i, Sermōn-ībūs.  
A. Sermōn-ēm, Sermōn-ēs.  
V. Sermō, Sermōn-ēs.  
A. Sermōn-ē, Sermōn-ībūs.

3. Virgō, *f.*, a virgin.(root, *virgīn* [131, 2. Rm. 2].)*Singular.**Plural.*

N. Virgō, Virgīn-ēs.  
G. Virgīn-īs, Virgīn-ūm.  
D. Virgīn-i, Virgīn-ībūs.  
A. Virgīn-ēm, Virgīn-ēs.  
V. Virgō, Virgīn-ēs.  
A. Virgīn-ē, Virgīn-ībūs.

## 132. VOCABULARY.

Accipitēr, trīs, *m.*

hawk.

Hōmō, inīs,

man.

Optiō, ōnīs, *f.*

choice

(optional).

Oratiō, ōnīs, *f.*

oration.

Orātōr, ōrīs,

orator.

Pavō, ōnīs, *m.*

peacock.

Poēmā, trīs, *n.*

poem.

Sermō, ōnīs, *m.*

discourse

(sermon).

Timid-ūs, ā, ūm,

timid.

Virgō, inīs,

maiden, virgin

(virgin).

\* Nouns in *a* generally take the ending *īs* instead of *ībūs* in the dat. and abl. plural.

133. *Exercises.*

(a) 1. Pater tuus poemāta legēbat. 2. Poēta sermōnem tuum laudābit. 3. Timīdae puellae pavōnem timent. 4. Virgīnes homīni viam monstrābunt.

5. Bonus puer fratri optiōnem dabit. 6. Puēri homīnes timent. 7. Indocti sapientiam *parvi*<sup>1</sup> aestimābunt. 8. Puellae sorōres suas amant.

(b) 1. My brother is reading your discourse. 2. The boys will kill the peacock. 3. They will kill the beautiful peacocks. 4. Your mother is reading the poem. 5. The girls are reading poems. 6. The doves fear the hawk. 7. The hawk will kill your dove.

8. The hawks will kill the beautiful doves. 9. Mothers feel real sorrow. 10. The unlearned will laugh at the orator. 11. The poet will hear the oration. 12. The orator prizes wisdom *highly*.<sup>2</sup> 13. The avaricious think *little*<sup>3</sup> of wisdom.

## LESSON XXV.

*Nouns.—Third Declension.—Class III.*

134. CLASS III. comprises nouns of the third declension in *bs*, *ms*, *ps*, *x* (= *cs* or *gs*), *is*, *ys*, *e*, a few in *i*,\* and a few in *es*. They form the root by dropping the nominative ending.

- 1) Nouns in *bs*, *ms*, *ps*, and *ys*, drop *s*: *as*, *urbs*, a city; root, *urb*; *hiems*, winter; root, *hiēm*.
- 2) Nouns in *x* (= *cs* or *gs*) drop the *s* in *x*: *as*, *vox* (*cs*), a voice; root, *vōc*; *rex* (*gs*), a king; root, *rēg*.

\* Nouns in *i* are of Greek origin: most of these are indeclinable; a few form the root by dropping *i*, and a few by adding *i* (131, 1).

- 3) Nouns in *is*, *e*, and a few in *es*, drop those endings; as, *hostīs*, an enemy; root, *host*: *nūbēs*, a cloud; root, *nūb*: *mārē*, a sea; root, *mār*.

## PARADIGMS.

<p>1. <i>Urbs</i>, <i>f.</i>, a city. (root, <i>urb</i> [184, 1].) <i>Singular.</i>      <i>Plural.</i> N. <i>Urb-s</i>,      <i>Urb-ēs</i>. G. <i>Urb-īs</i>,      <i>Urb-iūm</i>.<sup>*</sup> D. <i>Urb-I</i>,      <i>Urb-ībūs</i>. A. <i>Urb-ēm</i>,      <i>Urb-ēs</i>. V. <i>Urb-s</i>,      <i>Urb-ēs</i>. A. <i>Urb-ē</i>,      <i>Urb-ībūs</i>.</p>	<p>2. <i>Mārē</i>, <i>n.</i>, a sea. (root, <i>mār</i> [184, 3].) <i>Singular.</i>      <i>Plural.</i> N. <i>Mār-ē</i>,      <i>Mār-iā</i>.† G. <i>Mār-īs</i>,      <i>Mār-iūm</i>.† D. <i>Mār-I</i>,      <i>Mār-ībūs</i>. A. <i>Mār-ē</i>,      <i>Mār-iā</i>. V. <i>Mār-ē</i>,      <i>Mār-iā</i>. A. <i>Mār-I</i>,†      <i>Mār-ībūs</i>.</p>
<p>3. <i>Arx</i> (<i>cs</i>), <i>f.</i>, a citadel. (root, <i>arc</i> [184, 2].) <i>Singular.</i>      <i>Plural.</i> N. <i>Arx</i>,      <i>Arc-ēs</i>. G. <i>Arc-īs</i>,      <i>Arc-iūm</i>.<sup>*</sup> D. <i>Arc-I</i>,      <i>Arc-ībūs</i>. A. <i>Arc-ēm</i>,      <i>Arc-ēs</i>. V. <i>Arx</i>,      <i>Arc-ēs</i>. A. <i>Arc-ē</i>,      <i>Arc-ībūs</i>.</p>	<p>4. <i>Rex</i> (<i>gs</i>), <i>m.</i>, a king. (root, <i>rēg</i> [184, 2].) <i>Singular.</i>      <i>Plural.</i> N. <i>Rex</i>,      <i>Rēg-ēs</i>. G. <i>Rēg-īs</i>,      <i>Rēg-iūm</i>. D. <i>Rēg-I</i>,      <i>Rēg-ībūs</i>. A. <i>Rēg-ēm</i>,      <i>Rēg-ēs</i>. V. <i>Rex</i>,      <i>Rēg-ēs</i>. A. <i>Rēg-ē</i>,      <i>Rēg-ībūs</i>.</p>
<p>5. <i>Hostīs</i>, <i>c.</i>, an enemy. (root, <i>host</i> [184, 3].) <i>Singular.</i>      <i>Plural.</i> N. <i>Host-īs</i>,      <i>Host-ēs</i>. G. <i>Host-īs</i>,      <i>Host-iūm</i>. D. <i>Host-I</i>,      <i>Host-ībūs</i>. A. <i>Host-ēm</i>,      <i>Host-ēs</i>. V. <i>Host-īs</i>,      <i>Host-ēs</i>. A. <i>Host-ē</i>,      <i>Host-ībūs</i>.</p>	<p>6. <i>Nūbēs</i>, <i>f.</i>, a cloud. (root, <i>nūb</i> [184, 3].) <i>Singular.</i>      <i>Plural.</i> N. <i>Nūb-ēs</i>,      <i>Nūb-ēs</i>. G. <i>Nūb-īs</i>,      <i>Nūb-iūm</i>. D. <i>Nūb-I</i>,      <i>Nūb-ībūs</i>. A. <i>Nūb-ēm</i>,      <i>Nūb-ēs</i>. V. <i>Nūb-ēs</i>,      <i>Nūb-ēs</i>. A. <i>Nūb-ē</i>,      <i>Nūb-ībūs</i>.</p>

\* Monosyllables in *s* or *x*, preceded by a consonant, have *iūm* in the genitive plural. See 141, 3.

† See 127.

## 135. VOCABULARY.

Arx, arcis, <i>f.</i>	citadel, tower	
Civis, is, <i>m. and f.</i>	citizen	( <i>civil</i> ).
Frutex, icis, <i>m.</i>	shrub.	
Grex, egis, <i>m.</i>	flock, herd	( <i>gregarious</i> ).
Hostis, is, <i>m. and f.</i>	enemy	( <i>hostile</i> ).
Judex, icis,	judge	( <i>judicial</i> ).
Pax, pacis, <i>f.</i>	peace	( <i>pacific</i> ).
Reus, i,	criminal.	
Servare,	to keep, observe	( <i>serve</i> ).
Violare,	to violate.	

## 136. Exercises.

(a) 1. Caius leges violabit. 2. Regina urbem condēbat. 3. Puēri magnam urbis portam claudunt. 4. Pastōres arcem condent. 5. Reus iudicis vocem timet.

6. Cives regem accusābant. 7. Consules hostes vincēbant. 8. Pastor gregem *magni*<sup>2</sup> aestimat. 9. Boni cives pacem *magni* aestimant. 10. Filii patrem vindicābunt. 11. Servus fruticem in horto reperiēbat. 12. Impii patriam auro vendunt. 13. Rei iudicis vocem timēbunt. 14. Proditōr patriam *parvi*<sup>3</sup> aestimat. 15. Proditōres patriam *parvi* aestimabunt. 16. Agricōla labōrem finiēbat.

(b) 1. The boys will not observe the law. 2. Good citizens observe the laws. 3. They will guard the city. 4. Soldiers will guard the cities. 5. They accuse the judge. 6. The criminals will accuse their judges. 7. The king is violating the law.

8. Slaves fear their masters. 9. Slaves fear the voices of their masters. 10. The king will conquer the enemy (*pl.*). 11. The shepherd will guard his flock. 12. Shepherds guard their flocks. 13. The poet will

praise the judge. 14. They praise the judges. 15. Christians will observe the laws of the city. 16. He does not observe the laws of the city. 17. Good citizens will not violate the laws. 18. The boy is accusing his sister. 19. They are accusing their fathers. 20. Traitors will sell their country for gold. 21. They think *little* of virtue. 22. They prize money *highly*.

## LESSON XXVI.

*Nouns.—Third Declension.—Class IV.*

137. CLASS IV. comprises nouns of the third declension in *as*, *os*, *us*, *ls*, *ns*, *rs*, and most of those in *es*. These form the root by changing *s* into *r*, *t*, or *d*.

- 1) Nouns in *as*, *ls*, *ns*, *rs*, and most of those in *es*, generally change *s* into *t*: *as*, *piētās*, piety; root, *piētūt*: *mons*, a mountain; root, *mont*: *ābiēs*, a fir-tree; root, *ābiēt*: *mīlēs*, a soldier; root, *mīlīt*. (See REM. 2, below.)

REM. 1.—Masculines in *as*, of Greek origin, insert *n* before *t* in the root: *as*, *ēlēphas*, an elephant; root, *ēlēphant*.

REM. 2.—Many nouns in *es* change *s* into *i*, before *t*, in the root: *as*, *mīlēs*; root, *mīlīt*.

- 2) Nouns in *os* and *us* generally change *s* into *r* or *t*: *as*, *flōs*, a flower; root, *flōr*: *sācerdōs*, a priest; root, *sācerdōt*: *virtūs*, virtue; root, *virtūt*: *gēnūs*, a kind; root, *gēnēr*: *tempūs*, time; root, *tempōr*.

REM.—Most nouns in *us* change *s* into *r*, and *u* of the nominative becomes *ō* or *ō* in the root, as in these examples.

## PARADIGMS.

1. <i>Civitas, f., a state.</i> (root, <i>civitat</i> [187, 1].)		2. <i>Ars, f., art.</i> (root, <i>art</i> [187, 1].)	
<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>	<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
N. <i>Civitas,</i>	<i>Civitat-ēs.</i>	N. <i>Ars,</i>	<i>Art-ēs.</i>
G. <i>Civitat-is,</i>	<i>Civitat-ūm.</i>	G. <i>Art-is,</i>	<i>Art-iūm.</i>
D. <i>Civitat-i,</i>	<i>Civitat-ibūs.</i>	D. <i>Art-i,</i>	<i>Art-ibūs.</i>
A. <i>Civitat-ēm,</i>	<i>Civitat-ēs.</i>	A. <i>Art-ēm,</i>	<i>Art-ēs.</i>
V. <i>Civitas,</i>	<i>Civitat-ēs.</i>	V. <i>Ars,</i>	<i>Art-ēs.</i>
A. <i>Civitat-ē,</i>	<i>Civitat-ibūs.</i>	A. <i>Art-ē,</i>	<i>Art-ibūs.</i>
3. <i>Miles, c., a soldier.</i> (root, <i>milit</i> [187, 1, REM. 2].)		4. <i>Corpus, n., a body.</i> (root, <i>corpōr</i> [187, 2].)	
<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>	<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
N. <i>Miles,</i>	<i>Milit-ēs.</i>	N. <i>Corpus,</i>	<i>Corpōr-ā.</i>
G. <i>Milit-is,</i>	<i>Milit-ūm.</i>	G. <i>Corpōr-is,</i>	<i>Corpōr-ūm.</i>
D. <i>Milit-i,</i>	<i>Milit-ibūs.</i>	D. <i>Corpōr-i,</i>	<i>Corpōr-ibūs.</i>
A. <i>Milit-ēm,</i>	<i>Milit-ēs.</i>	A. <i>Corpus,</i>	<i>Corpōr-ā.</i>
V. <i>Miles,</i>	<i>Milit-ēs.</i>	V. <i>Corpus,</i>	<i>Corpōr-ā.</i>
A. <i>Milit-ē,</i>	<i>Milit-ibūs.</i>	A. <i>Corpōr-ē,</i>	<i>Corpōr-ibūs.</i>

138. The Latin, like every other language, has certain forms of expression peculiar to itself, called *Idioms*:\* e. g.,

<i>Aliquid</i> † <i>tempōris,</i>	{ something of time	( <i>Lat. Idiom.</i> )
	{ some time	( <i>Eng. Idiom.</i> )
<i>Multū</i> † <i>bōnī,</i>	{ much of good	( <i>Lat. Idiom.</i> )
	{ much good	( <i>Eng. Idiom.</i> )
<i>Quantū</i> † <i>vōluptātis,</i>	{ how much of pleasure	( <i>Lat. Idiom.</i> )
	{ how much pleasure	( <i>Eng. Idiom.</i> )
<i>Nihil</i> <i>stabilitātis,</i>	{ nothing of stability	( <i>Lat. Idiom.</i> )
	{ no stability	( <i>Eng. Idiom.</i> )

REM.—These (†) are neuter adjectives used as nouns; they govern the genitive by the rule already given (65).

\* These should be carefully compared with the corresponding English. A table presenting the *Differences of Idiom* between the Latin and English is inserted in this volume for the benefit of the learner. See p. 275.

## 139. VOCABULARY.

Aliquid,	something.	
Amittĕrĕ,	to lose.	
Avaritiā, ae,	avarice.	
Civitās, atis, f.	state.	
Corpūs, ōris, n.	body	{ (corporal).
		{ (corporeal).
Elēphas, antiās, m.	elephant.	
Figūrā, ae,	figure.	
Hābĕrĕ,	to have.	
Imprōbus, ū, ūm,	bad, wicked.	
Multūm (neut. adj.),	much.	
Multūm boni,	much good.	
Multūm temporis,	much time.	
Nihil (indec.),	nothing.	
Perdĕrĕ,	to waste	(perdition).
Quantūm (neut. adj.),	how much?	
Sācerdōs, ōtis, m. and f.	priest, priestess.	
Stabilitās, atis, f.	firmness, stability	(stability).
Tempūs, ōris, n.	time.	
Voluptās, atis, f.	pleasure	(voluptuous).

## 140. Exercises.

(a) 1. Avaritia *nihil* habet *voluptātis*.<sup>4</sup> 2. Multum *tempōris* perdēbat. 3. Figūra *nihil* habet *stabilitātis*. 4. Imprōbi leges civitātis violābunt. 5. Servus elephantis corpus puēro monstrābat.

6. Imprōbi virtūtem parvi<sup>8</sup> aestīmant. 7. Milītes urbem custodient. 8. Sacerdōtes bonam legem non violābunt. 9. Discipūli *multum tempōris* perdunt. 10. Indocti *multum voluptātis* amittunt.

(b) 1. The boy will waste much time.<sup>4</sup> 2. They will lose *much pleasure*. 3. The state will observe its laws. 4. The soldiers are violating the laws of the state. 5. The king will punish the soldiers.



6. The priests were praising the queen. - 7. The good queen will praise the priests. 8. The soldiers will fear the enemy. 9. The good value wisdom *highly*.<sup>2</sup> 10. He will laugh at' the unlearned. 11. He is losing *much time*. 12. The unlearned lose *much pleasure*.

## LESSON XXVII.

*Nouns.*---*Third Declension, continued.*---*Genitives in iŭm.*---*Gender.*

141. It has already been mentioned (128, REM.) that some nouns of the third declension have the genitive plural in *iŭm* instead of *iŭi*. These are,

- 1) Neuters in *e*, *al*, and *ar*: as, *măřě, măřiŭm*; *ăŋimăł, ăŋimăliŭm*.
- 2) Nouns in *is* and *es* of Class III.: as, *hostis, hostiŭm*; *nŭbēs, nŭbiŭm*.
- 3) All monosyllables in *s* or *x* preceded by a consonant: as, *urbs, urbiŭm*; *arx, arciŭm*.
- 4) Nouns in *ns* and *rs* (though in these *iŭm* is sometimes used): as, *cliens, clientiŭm*; *cohors, cohortiŭm*.

REM.—The use of *iŭm* in words not included in the above classes must be learned from observation.

142. The gender of nouns of the third declension, when not determined by their signification (40, 44), may generally be ascertained from their *endings*, by the following

### RULES FOR GRAMMATICAL GENDER.

- 1) *Masculines.*—Most nouns in *er*, *or*, *os* *es*, increasing in the genitive, and *o*, except *do*, *go*,

and *io*, are masculine; e. g., *āēr*, air; *hōnōr*, honor; *flōs*, a flower; *pēs* (gen. *pēdis*), a foot; *sermō*, a discourse.

2) *Feminines*.—Most nouns in *do*, *go*, *io*, *as*, *is*, *ys* *aus*, *s* preceded by a consonant, *x*, and *es* not increasing in the genitive, are feminine; e. g., *ārundō*, a reed; *īmāgō*, an image; *ōrātiō*, an oration; *aestās*, summer; *turrīs*, a tower; *laus*, praise; *hiems*, winter; *lex*, a law; *nūbēs* (gen. *nūbīs*), a cloud.

3) *Neuters*.—Most nouns in *a*, *e*, *i*, *y*, *c*, *l*, *n*, *t*, *ar*, *ur*, and *us*, are neuter; e. g., *mārē*, a sea; *poēmā*, a poem; *lāc*, milk; *ānīmāl*, an animal; *flūmēn*, a river; *cāpūt*, a head, &c.

For exceptions, see *Table of Genders* (579).

### 143. VOCABULARY

Amicūs, i,*	friend	(amicable).
Animūs, i,	mind, soul.	
Carpērē,	to gather, to pluck.	
Flōs, ōris,	flower	(floral).
Ignāvūs, ā, ūm,	indolent, cowardly.	
Magnitūdō, inīs,	greatness, size	(magnitude).

### 144. Exercises.

(a) 1. Veram anīmi magnitudīnem laudābunt. 2. Christiāni leges bonas non violābunt. 3. Puēri *multum temporis*\* perdunt. 4. Puer caput aperiet.

5. Servus urbis portas claudit. 6. Servi domīnum suum vindicābunt. 7. Puer patris vocem audit. 8.

---

\* Gender, when not given, must be determined by previous rules.

Puēri patrum voces audient. 9. Lupus haedum dilaniābat. 10. Haedi lupos timent.

(b) 1. The boys are gathering flowers. 2. He will pluck the beautiful flower. 3. The dog will fear the lion. 4. Dogs fear lions. 5. The girl will waste *much time*.<sup>4</sup> 6. Your father will lose *much time*. 7. The indolent lose *much pleasure*. 8. The priests are praising the king.

9. The queen will not violate the laws. 10. The king's son was violating the laws of the state. 11. My friend will not disregard my sorrow. 12. Your friends will not disregard your sorrow.

## LESSON XXVIII.

*Nouns.—Third Declension.—Formation of Cases from each other.*

145. 1) IN any noun of the third declension, all the cases, except the nominative and vocative singular (and the accusative sing. in neuters), can be readily formed from each other, by a simple change of the endings: thus, the accusative sing. *hōnōrēm* gives (by a change of ending) the dat. *hōnōrī*, or the dat. and abl. plur. *hōnōrībūs*, or any other case which may be desired.
- 2) The *nominative* and *vocative singular* (and *acc. sing. in neuters*) can generally be formed from any other case, in some one of the following ways:

a) By dropping the ending of the given case: *as*, *hōnōrēm*,\* Nom. *hōnōr*.†

REM. 1.—This applies to many nouns whose root ends in *l*, *n*, or *r*, and to a few with the root in *it*.

REM. 2.—*l* is changed before *t* into *š*, and before *n* into *š*; and *š* is inserted before *r* when preceded by *t* or *š* (126, 1); e. g., Gen. *cāpšis*; root, *cāpit*; Nom. *cāpit*. Gen. *šūminis*; root, *šūmin*; Nom. *šūmēn*. Gen. *patrīs*; root, *patr*; Nom. *pātr*.

b) By changing the ending of the given case into *s*, *ēs*, *īs*, (or for neuters into) *ě*: *as*, *urbīs*, Nom. *urbs*; *nūbēm*, Nom. *nūbēs*, &c.

REM. 1.—This applies to most nouns of this declension.

REM. 2.—*t*, *d*, or *r*, at the end of the root, is dropped before *s*, and *š* is changed into *š*; *cs* or *gs* will of course be written *s*; e. g., *piētātēm*, Nom. *piētās* (*t* dropped before *s*); *mištēm*, Nom. *mišs* (*t* dropped before *s*, and *š* changed into *š*); *rišēm*, Nom. *riš* (rega. — rex).

c) By changing the ending of the given case, together with *ēr* or *ōr*, as the last syllable of the root, into *ūs*: *as*, *gēnērīs*, Nom. *gēnūs*.

REM.—This applies only to a few of those words whose root ends in *ēr* or *ōr*.

146. The predicate of a proposition may be modified by a noun denoting the *manner* or *cause* of its action, or the *means* or *instrument* employed; e. g.,

*Irām meām dōnō plācābīt.*

(*Anger my with a gift he will appease.*)

He will appease my anger with a gift.

147. RULE OF SYNTAX.—The *cause* or *manner* of an

\* The *acc. sing.* is used here, though any other case would do equally well.

† The *nom.* and *voc.*, it will be remembered, are the same in form.

action, and the *means* or *instrument* employed, are expressed by the *ablative*.

REM.—In the above example, *donis* expresses the means employed, and is accordingly in the ablative.

#### 148. VOCABULARY.

Altūs, ū, ūm,	high, lofty	( <i>altitude</i> ).
Cătănă, ae,	chain.	
Cingērē,	to surround.	
Complērē,	to fill	( <i>complement</i> ).
Cunctūs, ū, ūm,	all (as a whole)	
Donūm, i,	gift	( <i>donation</i> ).
Flūmēn, inīa,	river.	
Glādiū, i,	sword.	
Illustrārē,	{ to illumine to illuminate	{ ( <i>illustrate</i> )
Irā, ae,	anger	{ ( <i>ire</i> ). ( <i>irascible</i> ).
Lux, lucis,	light	( <i>lucid</i> ).
Mūliēr, ēris,	woman.	
Placārē,	to appease	( <i>placable</i> ).

#### 149. Exercises.

(a) 1. Miles regem gladio occidēbat. 2. Regem catēna vinciēbat. 3. Sol urbem magnam sua luce illustrat. 4. Iram dono placant. 5. Cives regis iram donis placābunt. 6. Flumen urbem cingit.

7. Mulier bona epistōlas scribit. 8. Agricōla urbis portas claudet. 9. Poetārum filiae cantant. 10. Pulchrae pastōrum filiae saltābunt. 11. Caii anīmum donis placābunt.

(b) 1. The soldiers will bind the king with chains. 2. The river will surround the beautiful city. 3. The boy surrounds his head with a garland. 4. He will surround his sister's head with garlands. 5. He will

give a beautiful garland to his sister. 6. They will give beautiful garlands to their brothers.

7. They were building a wall. 8. They will surround the city with a high wall. 9. The sun illumines all (things) with its light. 10. The sun fills all (things) with its light. 11. The blind do not see the sun. 12. The blind do not see the light of the sun.

## LESSON XXIX.

### *Adjectives.—Third Declension.*

150. ADJECTIVES of the third declension may be divided into three classes, viz :

- 1) Those which have three different forms in the nominative singular (one for each gender).
- 2) Those which have two (the *masc.* and *fem.* being the same).
- 3) Those which have but one (the same for all genders).

151. Adjectives of the third declension are declined in their several genders like nouns of the same *declension*, *gender*, and *ending*. It must, however, be observed,

- 1) That those which have only one form in the nominative singular have the abl. sing. in *ě* or *ĩ*, and the rest, with the exception of comparatives, in *ĩ* only.
- 2) That all except comparatives have, in the plural, the *nom.*, *acc.*, and *voc. neuter* in *ĩĩ*, and the *genitive* in *ĩĩm*.

## CLASS I.—THREE TERMINATIONS.

152. Adjectives of the first class have in the nominative singular the masculine in *ēr*, the feminine in *īs*, and the neuter in *ĕ*.

## PARADIGM.

Acēr, <i>sharp</i> .			
SINGULAR.			
	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
N.	Acēr,	acr-īs,	acr-ĕ.
G.	Acr-īs,	acr-īs,	acr-īs.
D.	Acr-I,	acr-I,	acr-I.
A.	Acr-ēm,	acr-ēm,	acr-ĕ.
V.	Acēr,	acr-īs,	acr-ĕ.
A.	Acr-I,	acr-I,	acr-I.
PLURAL.			
N.	Acr-ēs,	acr-ēs,	acr-iā.
G.	Acr-iūm,	acr-iūm,	acr-iūm.
D.	Acr-ībūs,	acr-ībūs,	acr-ībūs.
A.	Acr-ēs,	acr-ēs,	acr-iā.
V.	Acr-ēs,	acr-ēs,	acr-iā.
A.	Acr-ībūs,	acr-ībūs,	acr-ībūs.

## CLASS II.—TWO TERMINATIONS.

153. Adjectives of the second class have both the masculine and feminine in *īs*, and the neuter in *ĕ*, except comparatives,\* which have the masculine and feminine in *īōr*, and the neuter in *iūs*.

---

\* The use of comparatives will be illustrated in connection with the comparison of adjectives.

## PARADIGMS.

1. Tristis, *sad*.

SINGULAR.		PLURAL.	
<i>Masc. and Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	<i>Masc. and Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
N. Trist-is,	trist-ě.	N. Trist-es,	trist-iā.
G. Trist-is,	trist-is.	G. Trist-iūm,	trist-iūm.
D. Trist-i,	trist-i.	D. Trist-ibūs,	trist-ibūs.
A. Trist-ēm,	trist-ě.	A. Trist-es,	trist-iā.
V. Trist-is,	trist-ě.	V. Trist-es,	trist-iā.
A. Trist-i,	trist-i.	A. Trist-ibūs,	trist-ibūs.

2. Tristiōr (*comparative*), *more sad*.

SINGULAR.		PLURAL.	
<i>Masc. and Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	<i>Masc. and Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
N. Tristiōr,	tristiūs.	N. Tristiōr-es,	tristiōr-ā.
G. Tristiōr-is,	tristiōr-is.	G. Tristiōr-ūm,	tristiōr-ūm.
D. Tristiōr-i,	tristiōr-i.	D. Tristiōr-ibūs,	tristiōr-ibūs.
A. Tristiōr-ēm,	tristiūs.	A. Tristiōr-es,	tristiōr-ā.
V. Tristiōr,	tristiūs.	V. Tristiōr-es,	tristiōr-ā.
A. Tristiōr-ě (i),	tristiōr-ě (i).	A. Tristiōr-ibūs,	tristiōr-ibūs.

## CLASS III.—ONE TERMINATION.

154. All other adjectives of this declension have *only one* form in the nominative singular for all genders.

## PARADIGMS.

1. Fēlix, *happy*.

SINGULAR.		PLURAL.	
<i>Masc. and Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	<i>Masc. and Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
N. Fēlix,	fēlix.	N. Fēlic-es,	fēlic-iā.
G. Fēlic-is,	fēlic-is.	G. Fēlic-iūm,	fēlic-iūm.
D. Fēlic-i,	fēlic-i.	D. Fēlic-ibūs,	fēlic-ibūs.
A. Fēlic-ēm,	fēlix.	A. Fēlic-es,	fēlic-iā.
V. Fēlix,	fēlix.	V. Fēlic-es,	fēlic-iā.
A. Fēlic-ě (i),	fēlic-ě (i).	A. Fēlic-ibūs,	fēlic-ibūs.



## PARADIGMS,—continued.

2. Prudens, <i>prudent</i> .			
SINGULAR.		PLURAL.	
<i>Masc. and Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	<i>Masc. and Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
N. Prudens,	prudens.	N. Prudent-ēs,	prudēt-iā.
G. Prudent-is,	prudēt-is.	G. Prudent-iūm,	prudēt-iūm.
D. Prudent-i,	prudēt-i.	D. Prudent-ibūs,	prudēt-ibūs.
A. Prudent-ēm,	prudens.	A. Prudent-ēs,	prudēt-iā.
V. Prudens,	prudens.	V. Prudent-ēs,	prudēt-iā.
A. Prudent-ē (i),	prudēt-ē (i).	A. Prudent-ibūs,	prudēt-ibūs.

## 155. VOCABULARY.

Acēr, acris, acrē,	sharp, severe	( <i>acrid</i> ).
Fidelis, ē,	trusty, faithful	( <i>fidelity</i> ).
Fortis, ē,	brave	( <i>fortitude</i> ).
Gloriā, ae,	glory.	
Māculārē,	to blemish, to stain	( <i>maculate</i> ).
Maximī,	at a very high (price), very highly.	
Maximī aestimārē,	to prize very highly.	
Pausanias, ae,	Pausanias,	
	<i>a distinguished Spartan general.</i>	
Prudens, entis,	prudent, cautious.	
Turpis, ē,	base, disgraceful	( <i>turpitude</i> ).
Sāpiens, entis,	wise.	
Splendens, entis,	shining	( <i>splendid</i> ).

## 156. Exercises.

(a) 1. Pater meus fidēlem servum vindicābat. 2. Fidēles servi domīnos suos vindicābunt. 3. Sol splendens cuncta suā luce illustrābat. 4. Sapientes virtutem maximi<sup>2</sup> aestimant.

5. Sapiens leges acres non violābit. 6. Christiāni virtutem laudant. 7. Boni virtutem magni aestimābant. 8. Pausanias gloriam turpi morte maculābat. 9. Pausanias magnam belli gloriam turpi morte maculābat.

(b) 1. The brave soldier will fight. 2. The brave king will conquer the enemy (*pl.*). 3. The brave will

conquer the cowardly. 4. Wise (men) will not stain their glory by a base death.

5. The good prize the laws of the state *very highly*.<sup>2</sup>  
 6. Kind masters do not punish faithful slaves. 7. A prudent (man) will not violate the laws of his country.  
 8. The prudent do not violate severe laws.

### LESSON XXX.

*Adjectives, continued.—Nouns.—Fourth Declension.*

157. ADJECTIVES are either of the *first* and *second declension*, or of the *third only*: those of the first and second declension are declined in the *masculine* and *neuter* like nouns of the *second* declension, and in the *feminine* like nouns of the *first*; those of the third declension are declined throughout like nouns of the *third*. (See Lesson XXIII.)

158. Endings of adjectives of the first and second declension.

	SINGULAR.			PLURAL.			<i>A few; have Sing. thus:</i>		
	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
	2*	1.	2.	2.	1.	2.			
N.	ūs, ěr,†	ā,	üm.	I,	ae,	ā.	ūs, ěr,	ā,	üm.
G.	I,	ae,	I.	örüm,	arüm,	örüm.	Iūs,	Iūs,	Iūs.
D.	ō,	ae,	ō.	Is,	Is,	Is.	I,	I,	I.
A.	üm,	ām,	üm.	ös,	äs,	ā.	üm,	ām,	üm.
V.	ě, ěr,†	ā,	üm.	I,	ae,	ā.	ě, ěr,	ā,	üm.
A.	ō,	ā,	ō.	Is,	Is,	Is.	ō,	ā,	ō.

\* The declensions of the different genders are here indicated by numerals.

† In adjectives in ěr, the *masc. nom. sing.* is generally the root (ř is sometimes dropped): ěr, therefore, is not properly a *case-ending*; it is given merely to show the termination of the *nom.* and *voc. sing.*, without regard to the root (107).

† See list, 118, REM.

## 159. Endings of adjectives of the Third Declension.

	THREE TERM.			TWO TERM.		COMPARATIVES.		ONE TERM.	
	M.	F.	N.	M. & F.	N.	M. & F.	N.	M. & F.	N.
N.	ēr,*	īs,	ē.	īs,	ē.	ōr,†	ūs.	various.	
G.	īs,	īs,	īs.	īs,	īs.	ōr†-īs,	ōr-īs.	īs.	
D.	I,	I,	I.	I,	I.	ōr-I,	ōr-I.	I.	
A.	ēm,	ēm,	ē.	ēm,	ē.	ōr-ēm,	ūs.	ēm.†	
V.	ēr,*	īs,	ē.	īs,	ē.	ōr,	ūs.	like nom.	
A.	I,	I,	I.	I,	I.	ōr-ē (ōr-I),	ōr-ē (ōr-I).	ē (I).	
N.	ēs,	ēs,	iā.	ēs,	iā.	ōr-ēs,	ōr-ā.	ēs,	
G.	iūm,	iūm,	iūm.	iūm,	iūm.	ōr-ūm,	ōr-ūm.	iūm,	
D.	ibūs,	ibūs,	ibūs.	ibūs,	ibūs.	ōr-ibūs,	ōr-ibūs.	ibūs,	
A.	ēs,	ēs,	iā.	ēs,	iā.	ōr-ēs,	ōr-ā.	ēs,	
V.	ēs,	ēs,	iā.	ēs,	iā.	ōr-ēs,	ōr-ā.	ēs,	
A.	ibūs,	ibūs,	ibūs.	ibūs,	ibūs.	ōr-ibūs,	ōr-ibūs.	ibūs,	

## FOURTH DECLENSION.

160. Nouns of the *Fourth Declension* have the genitive singular in *ūs*, and the nominative in *ūs* and *ū*.

161. In this declension, nouns in *ūs* (with a few exceptions) are *masculine*, and those in *ū* are neuter.

162. The root is found by dropping the *nominative ending*: *as*, *fructūs*, fruit; root, *fruct*: *cornū*, a horn; root, *corn*.

163. Nouns in *ūs* (of the fourth declension) are declined with the following

## CASE-ENDINGS.

	Nom.	Gen.	Dat.	Accus.	Voc.	Abl.
Sing.	ūs,	ūs,	ui,	ūm,	ūs,	ū.
Plur.	ūs,	uūm,	ibūs (ūbūs †),	ūs,	ūs,	ibūs (ūbūs †).

\* The remark on this ending, in adjectives of the first and second declension, is also applicable here (See 158, REM. 2.)

† The *ōr* here given in connection with the case-endings belongs to the root; in the *nom.*, *acc.*, and *voc.* of the *neut. sing.*, it is changed into *ūa*.

‡ Neut. like nom.

§ This ending is used only in a few words.

164. Neuters in *ū*, though formerly considered indeclinable in the singular, are found to have the genitive in *ūs*, and are declined with the following

## NEUTER CASE-ENDINGS.

<i>Nom.</i>	<i>Gen.</i>	<i>Dat.</i>	<i>Accus.</i>	<i>Voc.</i>	<i>Abl.</i>
Sing. <i>ū</i>	<i>ūs</i> ,	<i>ū</i> ,	<i>ū</i> ,	<i>ū</i> ,	<i>ū</i> .
Plur. <i>uā</i> ,	<i>uūm</i> ,	<i>ībūs</i> ( <i>ūbūs*</i> ),	<i>uā</i> ,	<i>uā</i> ,	<i>ībūs</i> ( <i>ūbūs*</i> ).

## PARADIGMS.

1. Fructūs, <i>m.</i> , fruit.		2. Cornū, <i>n.</i> , a horn.	
(root, <i>fruct.</i> )		(root, <i>corn.</i> )	
<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>	<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
N. Fruct-ūs,	Fruct-ūs.	N. Corn-ū,	Corn-uā.
G. Fruct-ūs,	Fruct-uūm.	G. Corn-ūs,	Corn-uūm.
D. Fruct-ūi,	Fruct-ībūs.	D. Corn-ū,	Corn-ībūs.
A. Fruct-ūm,	Fruct-ūs.	A. Corn-ū,	Corn-uā.
V. Fruct-ūs,	Fruct-ūs.	V. Corn-ū,	Corn-uā.
A. Fruct-ū.	Fruct-ībūs.	A. Corn-ū,	Corn-ībūs.

## 165. VOCABULARY.

Currūs, ūs,	chariot.	
Dux, dūcīs, <i>m. and f.</i>	leader, guide	( <i>duke</i> ).
Et,	and.	
Exercūciārē,	to torture	( <i>excruciate</i> ).
Exercītūs, ūs,	army.	
Innōcens, entīs,	innocent.	
Lactūs, ūs,	grief, sadness.	
Mānūs, ūs, <i>f.</i>	hand	( <i>manacle</i> ).
Mētūs, ūs,	fear.	
Nescirē,	not to know, to be ignorant of.	
Sinūs, ūs,	bosom	( <i>sinuous</i> ).
Sullā, ae,	Sulla, a man's name.	

\* This ending is used only in a few words.

166. *Exercises.*

(a) 1. Sinus metum nescit. 2. Luctus animum excruciat. 3. Rex hostium (141, 2) currus videt. 4. Hostes regis currum audient. 5. Duces exercitui viam monstrābunt. 6. Puella epistolam sua manu scribit.

7. Caius epistolas sua manu scribēbat. 8. Servi Sullae domum evertēbant. 9. Servus domini mortem vindicābit. 10. Pastōris filius mortem non timet. 11. Luctus et metus animum excruciant (612, REM.).

(b) 1. The innocent (man) knows not fear. 2. The innocent know not fear. 3. The bosom of the innocent knows not fear. 4. The boy's mother will write the letter with her own hand. 5. The father is writing the letters with his own hand.

6. The slave will show the beautiful chariot to his master. 7. The father will avenge the death of his son. 8. Fear tortures the cowardly. 9. Fear does not torture the brave. 10. The cowardly fear death. 11. Brave soldiers do not fear the enemy.

## LESSON XXXI

*Nouns.—Fifth Declension.*

167. NOUNS of the *Fifth Declension* have the genitive singular in *ē*,\* and the nominative in *ēs*.

168. Nouns of this declension are feminine, except *diēs*, a day, masculine and feminine in the singular,

\* In the ending of the gen. and dat. sing. *e* is long, except in *spēs* (where it is short), *fidei*, and *rei* (where it is common).

and masculine only in the plural; and *mēridiēs*, mid-day, masculine.

REM.—The fifth declension comprises only a few words, and of these few, only two,—*diēs*, a day, and *rēs*, a thing, are complete in the plural.

169. The root is formed by dropping the nominative ending: as, *diēs*, a day; root, *dī*.

170. Nouns of this declension are declined with the following

## CASE-ENDINGS.

	<i>Nom.</i>	<i>Gen.</i>	<i>Dat.</i>	<i>Accus.</i>	<i>Voc.</i>	<i>Abi.</i>
Sing.	ēs,	ei,*	ei,*	ēm,	ēs,	ē.
Plur.	ēs,	erūm,	ebūs,	ēs,	ēs,	ebūs.

## PARADIGMS.

<i>Rēs, f., a thing.</i> (root, <i>r.</i> )		<i>Diēs, m. and f., a day.</i> (root, <i>dī</i> )	
<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>	<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
N. R-ēs,	R-ēs.	N. Di-ēs,	Di-ēs.
G. R-ēi,	R-erūm.	G. Di-ēi,	Di-erūm.
D. R-ēi,	R-ebūs.	D. Di-ēi,	Di-ebūs.
A. R-ēm,	R-ēs.	A. Di-ēm,	Di-ēs.
V. R-ēs,	R-ēs.	V. Di-ēs,	Di-ēs.
A. R-ē,	R-ebūs.	A. Di-ē,	Di-ebūs.

## 171. VOCABULARY.

*Acies, ei,* line of battle.

*Aciem instruere,* to draw up an army in order of battle.

*Copiae,† arūm,* forces (copious).

*Diēs, ei,* day.

\* See note on page 78.

† *Copiae* is of the first declension, plural; the singular is not used with this signification.

Educēre,	to lead forth	( <i>educē</i> ).
Emēre,	to purchase.	
Equitatūs, ūs,	cavalry.	
Fidēs, ēi,	faith, one's word	( <i>fidelity</i> ).
Instruere,	to arrange, to array	( <i>instruct</i> ).
Omnis, ē,	all, every.	
Proximūs, ū, ūm,	nearest, next	( <i>proximate</i> ).
Reducere,	to lead back	( <i>reduce</i> ).
Servare,	to keep, to observe	( <i>serve</i> ).
Spēs, ēi,	hope.	

## 172. Exercises.

(a) 1. Christianus fidem suam servat. 2. Boni fidem suam non violant. 3. Dies veniet. 4. Proximo die (88) Caesar copias suas reducēbat. 5. Proximo die Caesar aciem instruēbat.

6. Caesar equitatum omnem educēbat. 7. Puellam regis currum vidēbat. 8. Hostium (141, 2) copias vidēbunt. 9. Tullia puellis viam monstrābit. 10. Tullia epistolam sua manu scribit.

(b) 1. The king will keep his word. 2. The queen will not break her word. 3. All (men) prize hope *very highly*.<sup>2</sup> 4. They do not purchase hope with gold. 5. The wise will not sell hope for gold (122).

6. He prizes his cavalry *very highly*. 7. The king thinks *highly* of his whole army. 8. The soldiers will observe the laws. 9. The citizens will observe all the laws of the state. 10. The wise value true greatness of mind *very highly*. 11. The avaricious value money *very highly*.

## LESSON XXXII.

*Nouns.—Five Declensions.—Greek Nouns.—Gender.*

## 173. TERMINATIONS of Substantives.

SINGULAR.								
Dec. I.	Dec. II.		Dec. III.		Dec. IV.		Dec. V.	
F.	M.	N.	M. & F.	N.	M.	N.	F.	
N. ā.	ūs, ěr, ĩr. ūm.		various.		ūs.	ū.	ēs.	
G. ae.	ī.		īs.		ūs.		ei.*	
D. ae.	ō.		ī.		uī.	ū.	ei.*	
A. ām.	ūm.		ēm (īm).	like nom.	ūm.	ū.	ēm.	
V. ā.	ě, ěr, ĩr. ūm.		like nom.		ūs.	ū.	ēs.	
A. ā.	ō.		ě (ī).		ū.		ē.	

PLURAL.								
N. ae.	ī.	ā.	ēs,	ā, or iā.	ūs.	uā.	ēs.	
G. arūm.	orūm.		ūm (iūm).		uūm.		erūm.	
D. īs.	īs.		ībūs.		ībūs (ūbūs).		ēbūs.	
A. ās.	ōs.	ā.	ēs.	ā, or iā.	ūs.	uā.	ēs.	
V. ae.	ī.	ā.	ēs.	ā, or iā.	ūs.	uā.	ēs.	
A. īs.	īs.		ībūs.		ībūs (ūbūs).		ēbūs.	

REM.—The above table presents the endings of all nouns in the Latin language, except a few derived from the Greek. The only *nominative endings* not already noticed, are *e*, *ae*, and *es*, in the first declension, and *os* and *on* in the second.

174. The following are specimens of the declension of Greek nouns.

\* See 167, REM.



## DECLENSION I.

1. Aenēās (
- c man's name*
- ). 2. Anchīsēs (
- a man's name*
- ).

N. Aenē-ās,  
G. Aenē-ae,  
D. Aenē-ae,  
A. Aenē-ām (an),  
V. Aenē-a,  
A. Aenē-a.

N. Anchīs-ēs,  
G. Anchīs-ae,  
D. Anchīs-ae,  
A. Anchīs-ēn,  
V. Anchīs-ē (a),  
A. Anchīs-ē (a).

3. Epitome, *an abridgment*.*Singular.*

N. Epītōm-ē,  
G. Epītōm-ēs,  
D. Epītōm-ae,  
A. Epītōm-ēn,  
V. Epītōm-ē,  
A. Epītōm-ē,

*Plural.*

Epītōm-ae.  
Epītōm-arūm.  
Epītōm-is.  
Epītōm-ās.  
Epītōm-ae.  
Epītōm-is.

## DECLENSION II.

1. Ilion,
- n. (name of a city)*
- . 2. Delos,
- f. (name of an island)*
- .

N. Ili-ōn,  
G. Ili-i,  
D. Ili-o,  
A. Ili-ōn,  
V. Ili-ōn,  
A. Ili-o.

N. Del-ōs,  
G. Del-i,  
D. Del-o,  
A. Del-ōn,  
V. Del-ē,  
A. Del-o.

## DECLENSION III.

1. Pericles (
- a man's name*
- ). 2. Hērōs,
- a hero*
- .

N. Pērcl-ēs,  
G. Pērcl-is,  
D. Pērcl-i,  
A. Pērcl-ēm (eā),  
V. Pērcl-ēs (e),  
A. Pērcl-ē.

*Singular.*

N. Hērō-a,  
G. Hērō-is,  
D. Hērō-i,  
A. Hērō-ēm (ā),  
V. Hērō-a,  
A. Hērō-ē,

*Plural.*

Hērō-ēs.  
Hērō-ūm.  
Hērō-ibūs.  
Hērō-ēs (as).  
Hērō-ēs.  
Hērō-ibūs.

175. Table of Genders of Nouns as determined by Nom. Ending.

	MASCULINE.	FEMININE.	NEUTER.
Dec. I.	as and es.	ā and ē.	
Dec. II.	ēr, ir, ūs (and os*).		ūm (and on*).
Dec. III.	er, or, os, es, in- creasing in gen. and o, <i>except</i> do, go, and io.	do, go, io, as, ia, ya, aus, s impure, † x and es not in- creasing in gen.	a, e, i, y, e, l, n, t, ar, ur, and us
Dec. IV.	ūs.		ū.
Dec. V.		ēs.	

(For exceptions see Table of Genders [579]).

#### 176. VOCABULARY.

Accīpērē, †	to receive, to accept.
Achillēs, ‡ is,	Achilles, <i>a Grecian hero.</i>
Aenēas, ae,	Aeneas, <i>a Trojan prince.</i>
Anchīsēs, æe,	Anchiseas, <i>the father of Aeneas.</i>
Ascāniūs, i,	Ascanius, <i>the son of Aeneas.</i>
Carthagō, inīs,	Carthage, <i>a city in the northern part of Africa.</i>

\* The inclosed endings belong to Greek nouns, many of which, being proper names (of men and women), have natural gender.

† Preceded by a consonant.

‡ Accīpērē forms its imperfect and future tenses like verbs of the fourth conjugation. (See 270, 271.)

§ Achillēs, being a Greek noun, is declined like Pericles (174).

Dido,* ūs, or ōnīs,	Dido, <i>queen of Tyre and afterwards the foundress of Carthage.</i>	
Epitōmē, ēa,	abridgment	( <i>epitome</i> ).
Hērōs, ōis,	hero.	
Histōriā, ae,	history.	
Industriā, ae,	industry.	
Nostēr, trā, trūm,	our.	
Rēgnūm, i,	kingdom, government.	
Romā, ae,	Rome, <i>city of Italy, on the river Tiber.</i>	
Trojanūs, ā, ūm,	Trojan.	

177. *Exercises.*

(a) 1. Aenēas, Anchīsae filius, urbem condēbat. 2. Ascanius, Aenēae filius, regnum accipit. 3. Dido Carthagīnem condēbat. 4. Epitōmen oratiōnis suae scribet.

5. Caesar milītes omnes educēbat. 6. Industria *multum voluptātis* habet. 7. Labōrem suum finiet. 8. Horti nostri multos flores habent. 9. Servus puēros vocābit.

(b) 1. Aeneas was founding Rome. 2. The son of Anchises was founding Rome. 3. Aeneas, the son of Anchises, was founding the city of Rome (the city Rome). 4. The Trojan hero loves queen Dido. 5. They will kill the Trojan hero.

6. They are reading an abridgment of the history. 7. The soldiers praise Caesar. 8. Aeneas praises his father Anchises. 9. The Trojans fear Achilles. 10. Achilles was slaying the Trojans. 11. The soldier is showing his sword to the boy. 12. They will show their swords to the boys.

---

\* Dido is sometimes declined regularly, as a Latin noun of the third declension, and sometimes has the genitive in *ae*, and all the other cases like the nom.

## LESSON XXXIII.

*Verbs.*—*Essě, to be. Predicate, Essě, with a Noun or an Adjective.*

178. *Essě, to be*, is an irregular verb (i. e., it does not belong to either of the four conjugations already noticed), and gives us in the *third persons* of the *present*, *imperfect*, and *future tenses*, the following

## PARADIGM.

	<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
Present.	Est, he, she, or it is,	Sunt, they are,
Imperfect.	Erāt, “ “ “ was,	Erant, “ were,
Future.	Erit, “ “ “ will be.	Erunt, “ will be.

179. The predicate of a proposition is sometimes expressed by the verb *essě* (to be), with a noun or an adjective; e. g.,

1. *Terrā est rōtundā.*

The earth is round.

REM. 1.—In this example, the predicate is not simply *est*, but *est rōtundā*; for the assertion is not that the earth *is* (i. e. exists), but that the earth *is round*.

REM. 2.—The adjective *rōtundā* agrees with the *subject terrā* in *gender, number, and case*, by the rule already given. (114).

2. *Plūrīmae stellae sōlēs sunt.*

(*Very many stars suns are.*)

Very many stars are suns.

REM.—Here the predicate is *sōlēs sunt*.

180. RULE OF SYNTAX.—A noun in the predicate after *essě* is put in the same case as the subject when it denotes the same person or thing.

REM.—In example 2, *sōlēs* is in the nominative by this rule.

181. RULE OF SYNTAX.—The adjectives *dignūs*, *indignūs*, *contentūs*, *praeditūs*, *frētūs*, and *libēr*, take the ablative; e. g.,

*Virtūs parvō contentā est.*

(*Virtue with little content is.*)

Virtue is content *with little*.

REMARK.—*Parvō* in this example is a neut. adj. used as a noun; it is put in the ablative after *contentā*, by the rule just given.

## 182. VOCABULARY

Arbōr, ōris, <i>f.</i>	tree	( <i>arbor</i> ).
Beatūs, ā, ūm,	happy	( <i>beatitudo</i> )
Candidūs, ā, ūm,	white	( <i>candid</i> ).
Contentūs, ā, ūm,	content, contented.	
Culpā, ae,	blame, fault	( <i>culpable</i> ).
Dignūs, ā, ūm,	worthy	( <i>dignity</i> ).
Essē,	to be.	
Est,	is, it is.	
Fācērē,*	to do, to make.	
Flōrērē,	to flourish.	
Frētūs, ā, ūm,	relying on.	
Indignūs, ā, ūm,	unworthy	( <i>indignity</i> ).
Laus, dis,	praise	( <i>laud</i> ).
Libēr, ērā, ērūm,	free	( <i>liberty</i> ).
Nēmō (inis,†)	nobody, no one.	
Nix, nivīs,	snow.	
Nunquām,	never.	
Parvūm ( <i>neut. adj.</i> ),	little, a little.	
Praeditūs, ā, ūm,	endued with.	
Quām,	how.	
Quām multī, ae, ā,	how many.	
Sempēr,	always.	
Virēs, viriūm, <i>plur. of vīs</i> ,	strength.	
Vitā, ae,	life	ot ( <i>vital</i> ).

\* This verb, together with some others of the third conjugation, has the imperfect and future like verbs of the fourth conjugation.

† The genitive *neminis* and ablative *nemine* are not in good use.

183. *Exercises.*

(a) 1. Nix est candida. 2. Bonus est beatus. 3. Boni sunt beati. 4. Sapientes parvo contenti sunt. 5. Servus laude dignus est. 6. Patris mei servus laude indignus est.

7. Caius patriam auro vendebat. 8. Caius, homo vita indignus, patriam auro vendet. 9. Quam multi indigni luce sunt! 10. Arbor florēbat. 11. Balbus multa laude florēbat.

(b) 1. No-one is always happy. 2. The avaricious (man) will never be contented. 3. The avaricious are not contented. 4. Caius is not free from blame. 5. Caius is unworthy of praise.

6. Balbus praises my fidelity. 7. Balbus, a man endowed with great virtue, was praising my fidelity. 8. Balbus does *much good*.<sup>4</sup> 9. Caius is unworthy of life. 10. Caius, a man unworthy of life, does *no good*.<sup>4</sup> 11. Caius, relying on his strength, does not fear the lion. 12. The slaves are not free from blame. 13. Christians are contented with little.

## LESSON XXXIV.

*Verbs.—Infinitive as Subject.—Genitive with Esse in the Predicate.*

184. AN *infinitive mood* (with the words belonging to it) (9) may be used as a noun, and thus become the subject of a verb. When thus used it is in the neuter gender (44, 3), and of course takes the adjectives in agreement with it in the same gender; e. g.,

Difficilē est iudicārē.

(*Difficult (it) is to judge.*)

It is difficult to judge, or, To judge is difficult.

REM.—Here *iudicārē* (to judge) is the subject of the proposition, for it is that of which the predicate *difficilē est* (is difficult) is affirmed. It is in the nominative case, and subject of the verb *est*, and the adjective *difficilē* agrees with it.

185. When the noun in the predicate after *essē* does not denote the same person or thing as the subject, it is put in the *genitive*; e. g.,

Christiānī est nēmīnēm viōlārē.

(*Of a Christian it is nobody to wrong.*)

It is the duty (or part) of a Christian to wrong nobody.

REM. 1.—In this example the subject is *nēmīnēm viōlārē*, and the predicate, *Christiānī est*.

REM. 2.—Combining articles 180 and 185 we have the following

186. RULE OF SYNTAX.—A noun in the predicate, after the verb *essē*, is put,

- 1) In the same case as the subject when it denotes the same person or thing; e. g., *Cicēřō ērāt consūl*, *Cicero was consul.*
- 2) In the *genitive* when it denotes a different person or thing; e. g., *Christiānī est nēmīnēm viōlārē*, *it is the duty of a Christian to wrong nobody.*

187. In rendering into English, when a genitive follows any part of the verb *essē* (as *est*, *ērāt*, *ērīt*, &c.), such a substantive as *duty*, *part*, *mark*, *business*, &c., must be supplied.

<i>English Idiom.</i>		<i>Latin Idiom.</i>
It is the part	} of a wise man.	It is of a wise man.
" duty		
" business		
" mark		
" character		

## 188. VOCABULARY.

Difficilis, ě,	difficult.	
Errare,	to err.	
Facilis, ě,	easy	(facility).
Fidem violare,	to break one's word.	
Humanus, a, um,	human, natural to man.	
Magnū est,	it is a great thing.	
Peccare,	to sin, to do wrong.	
Turpis, ě,	base, disgraceful	(turpitude).
Violare,	{ to offend against, to wrong, to } { break a law, one's word, &c. } (violate).	

## 189. Exercises.

(a) 1. *Humānum*\* est peccāre. 2. *Humānum* est errāre. 3. *Turpe* est fidem suam violāre. 4. *Patris*\* est filium suum docēre. 5. *Regis* est regnāre.

6. *Matris* est filias suas docēre. 7. *Servi* est viam monstrāre. 8. *Turpe* est poētae domum evertēre. 9. *Matres* filias laudant. 10. *Boni* est fidem servāre. 11. *Impii* est fidem violāre.

REM. 1.—In English, when an infinitive mood is the subject of a proposition, the pronoun *it* is used before the verb *is*; hence, in translating such sentences into Latin, this pronoun *it*, which represents, as it were, the coming infinitive or clause, must be omitted.

REM. 2.—After *it is*, such a substantive as *part, duty, business, mark*, must be omitted in translating into Latin.

(b) 1. *It* is a great (thing) not to fear death.\* 2. *It* is easy to err. 3. *It* is (the duty)\* of a Christian to keep (his) word. 4. It is (the part) of a wise (man) to keep the laws.

5. It is disgraceful to neglect a son. 6. It is natural-to-man to prize money *very highly*. 7. It is the mark of an unlearned man *to think little* of wisdom. 8. It is the slave's *business* to shut the gates of the city. 9. It is difficult to shut the gates of the city. 10. A



good citizen will observe the laws of his country. 11. It is the *part*<sup>7</sup> of a good citizen to observe the laws of his country.

---

### LESSON XXXV.

*Verbs.—Tenses for Completed Action.—First, Second, and Fourth Conjugations.*

190. THE tenses which we have thus far used, viz., the *present*, *imperfect*, and *future*, represent the action of the verb as continuing (11), i. e., as *not completed*. There are also three tenses for *completed* action, viz.:

- 1) The *Perfect*, which represents the action as *completed* in *present* time, i. e., as just completed; e. g., *āmāvīt*, he has loved.
- 2) The *Pluperfect*, which represents the action as *completed* in *past* time; as, *āmāvērāt*, he had loved.
- 3) The *Future Perfect*, which represents the action as *completed* in *future* time; as, *āmāvērīt*, he will have loved.

191. The tenses for *completed* action are not formed from the same root as those for action *not completed*, but from another called the *second root*. This is formed in various ways.

192. In the first, second, and fourth conjugations, the *second root* is formed by adding *āv*, *ū*,\* and *ēv*, respectively, to the root† of the verb; e. g.:

---

\* A very few verbs of the second conjugation add *ev*, which may be regarded as the full form for which *u* is a contraction (the *e* being dropped, and *v* changed to *u*).

† This we will now call the 1st root, to distinguish it from the 2d.

		<i>First Root.</i>	<i>Second Root.</i>
Conj. I.	Amără,	ăm,	ămăv.
Conj. II.	Mönără,	mön,	mönü.
Conj. IV.	Audără,	aud,	audiv.

193. In verbs of all the conjugations, the *third persons singular* of the tenses for *completed action* are formed by adding to the *second root* the following *endings*:

<i>Perfect.</i>	<i>Pluperfect.</i>	<i>Future Perfect.</i>
ît,	ărăt,	ărit.

## PARADIGMS.

## FIRST CONJUGATION.

Amără, to love: 1st root, *ăm*; 2d root, *ămăv*.

Perfect. Amav-ît, he, she, or it has loved (or loved).\*

Pluperf. Amav-ărăt, " " " had loved.

Fut. Perf. Amav-ărit, " " " will have loved.

## SECOND CONJUGATION.

Mönără, to advise: 1st root, *mön*; 2d root, *mönü*.

Perfect. Mönü-ît, he, she, or it has advised (or advised).\*

Pluperf. Mönü-ărăt, " " " had advised.

Fut. Perf. Mönü-ărit, " " " shall have advised.

## FOURTH CONJUGATION.

Audără, to hear: 1st root, *aud*; 2d root, *audiv*.

Perfect. Audiv-ît, he, she, or it has heard (or heard).\*

Pluperf. Audiv-ărăt, " " " had heard.

Fut. Perf. Audiv-ărit, " " " shall have heard.

194. In any regular verb, the third persons *plural*, in the tenses for completed action, are formed by simply

\* The perfect in Latin corresponds sometimes to our *perfect indefinite*, and sometimes to our *perfect definite* (perfect with have); hence, *amavit* may be translated either *he has loved*, or *he loved*.

inserting *n* before *t* in the ending of the third person singular (85), except in the perfect, where it must be changed into *erunt*; e. g.,

		<i>Perfect.</i>	<i>Pluperfect.</i>	<i>Fut. Perfect.</i>
Conj. I.	{	Sing. Amāv-īt,	āmāv-ērāt,	āmāv-ērīt.
		Plur. Amāv-erunt,	āmāv-erant,	āmāv-erint.
Conj. II.	{	Sing. Mōnu-īt,	mōnu-ērāt,	mōnu-ērīt.
		Plur. Mōnu-erunt,	mōnu-erant,	mōnu-erint.
Conj. IV.	{	Sing. Audīv-īt,	audīv-ērāt,	audīv-ērīt.
		Plur. Audīv-erunt,	audīv-erant,	audīv-erint.

### 195. VOCABULARY.

Aestimārē, av,*	to estimate, to value.	
Arārē, av,	to plough	(arable).
Audīre, iv,	to hear	(audible).
Dilāniārē, av,	to tear in pieces.	
Jūrārē, av,	to swear.	
Laudārē, av,	to praise	(laudable.)
Monstrārē, av,	to show.	
Placārē, av,	to appease	(placable.)
Sēpēlīrē, iv,	to bury.	
Servārē, av,	to keep, to observe.	
Terrērē, u,	to terrify, to frighten.	

### 196. Exercises.

(a) 1. Puer juravērat. 2. Puēri juravērunt. 3. Agricōla aravērit. 4. Servi aravērunt. 5. Vulpes puēros terruit. 6. Vulpes puēros terruērunt. 7. Poētae sapientiam parvi aestimāvit.

8. Veram virtūtem magni aestimavērat. 9. Christiānus pecuniam parvi aestimāvit. 10. Christiāni est pecuniam parvi aestimāre. 11. Magnam poētae sapi-

---

\* The learner will readily form the *second root* from the *first*, by adding the endings here given.

entiam parvi aestimaverant. 12. Pater filium sepelivit. 13. Puëri patrem sepeliverant.

(b) 1. The boy has heard a voice. 2. The boys had heard their father's voice. 3. The slave had shown the way to the shepherd. 4. They will have shown the house to their master.

5. Caius had praised his son. 6. He has praised his slaves. 7. The lion has torn the horse in pieces. 8. The fox had frightened the boy. 9. They had valued wisdom *at a low price*. 10. It is easy to keep (one's) word. 11. It is difficult to appease anger. 12. He has appeased the boy's anger with a gift.

## LESSON XXXVI.

*Third Conjugation.—Class I.—Second Root the same as the First.*

197. Most verbs of the third conjugation may be divided into two classes, viz.:

1) Those which have the *second root* the same as the first.

2) Those which form it by the addition of *s*.

198. The *first class* comprises most verbs of this conjugation which have the first root in a vowel, together with a few which have it in a consonant; e. g.,

Suëřë, *to sew*: 1st root, sũ; 2d root, sũ.

Děfenděřë, *to defend*: “ dëfend; “ dëfend.

199. The manner in which the *third persons* of the tenses for *completed* action are formed from the second root, has already been explained. See 193, 194.

## PARADIGM.

## THIRD CONJUGATION.

**Dēfendērē**, to defend: 1st root, *dēfend*; 2d root, *dēfend*.

<i>Perfect.</i>	<i>Pluperfect.</i>	<i>Future Perfect.</i>
Dēfend- <b>it</b> ,	dēfend- <b>ērāt</b> ,	dēfend- <b>ērīt</b> .
Dēfend- <b>ērunt</b> ,	dēfend- <b>ērant</b> ,	dēfend- <b>ērint</b> .

200. The *Preposition* is the part of speech which expresses the various relations of objects; \* e. g.,

Rex *pēr* urbēm ambūlābāt.

(The king through the city was walking.)

The king was walking through the city.

REM.—In this example, *pēr*, through, is a *preposition*.

201. PARTIAL RULE OF SYNTAX.—Some prepositions govern the *accusative*, and some the *ablative*.

REM. 1.—Whenever a preposition occurs in the exercises, its particular case will be given in the vocabularies.

REM. 2.—The *accusative*, *urbēm*, in the above example, is governed by the preposition *pēr*.

## 202. VOCABULARY.

Aedificiūm, I,	building, edifice.	
Ambūlarē, av,	to walk.	
Annuērē, annū,	to assent, to give assent.	
Conciliūm, I,	council, meeting.	
Conditio, ōnis,	condition, terms.	
Constituērē, constitū,	to arrange, to appoint	(constitute).
Dēfendērē, defend,	to defend.	
Dormirē, iv,	to sleep	(dormant).
Incendērē, incend,	to set on fire, to burn	(incendiary).
Lēgiō, ōnis,	legion, body of foot-soldiers.	
Pēr (prep. with acc.),	through.	
Proeliūm, I,	battle.	

\* It will be remembered, however, that certain relations are sometimes expressed by the *cases* of nouns (63, 80, 86).

Privātūs, ā, ūm,	private, personal.	
Rēliquūs, ā, ūm,	remaining, the rest	( <i>relic</i> ).
Respuērē, respū,	to reject.	
Rōmānī ( <i>adj. pl.</i> ),	Romana.	
Rōmānūs, ā, ūm,	Roman, belonging to Rome.	
Suērē, sū,	to sew, to stitch.	
Tīmērē, ū,	to fear	( <i>timid</i> ).
Vestīs, īn.	garment	( <i>vest</i> ).

## 203. Exercises.

(a) 1. Privātum aedificium incendit. 2. Reliqua privāta aedificia incendērant. 3. Puellae vestem suērunt. 4. Patres annuērant. 5. Milītes urbem defendērant. 6. Rōmāni urbem defendērunt.

7. Reliquas legiōnes in acie constituit. 8. Ursi in antro dormivērunt. 9. Agricōla per urbem ambulāvit. 10. Non respuit condiōnem Caesar. 11. Diem concilio constituērunt. 12. Diem concilio constituērit. 13. Servus viam monstravērat. 14. Puer mortem timuit. 15. *Humānum*<sup>6</sup> est mortem timēre. 16. *Impiī*<sup>7</sup> est fidem violāre.

(b) 1. The king has appointed a day for the battle. 2. They had appointed a day for the council. 3. The soldiers defended the building. 4. They had defended the poet's house. 5. The queen assented. 6. The king had not assented.

7. The good boy will walk in the city. 8. The poet's daughter had walked through the great city. 9. They will *set* the house of the poet *on fire*. 10. It is the *duty*<sup>8</sup> of a good man to defend the house of a friend. 11. The avaricious (man) will build a small house. 12. They will not defend the house of the avaricious. 13. They will not reject the condition. 14. Caesar had rejected the terms. 15. He will have arranged his sol-

diers in order of battle. 16. They had arranged their soldiers in order of battle.

### LESSON XXXVII.

*Third Conjugation.—Class II.—Second Root formed by adding s to the First.*

204. VERBS of the third conjugation which have the first root in a consonant, generally form the second from it by the addition of *s*; e. g.,

Carpĕrĕ, to pluck; 1st root, carp; 2d root, carps.

Rĕpĕrĕ, to creep; " rĕp; " reps.

REM.—When *b* stands at the end of the first root, it is changed into *p* before *s* in the second; e. g.,

Scribĕrĕ, to write; scrib; scrips (not scribs).

Nubĕrĕ, to marry; nub; nups (not nubs).

205. An adjective modifying the subject is sometimes used in Latin instead of an adverb modifying the verb; e. g.,

Portām *invītūs* claudĕt.

(*Lat. Id.*) The gate *unwilling* he will shut (*adj.*).

(*Eng. Id.*) He will shut the gate *unwillingly* (*adv.*).

### 206. VOCABULARY.

Carpĕrĕ, carps,	to pluck, to card, to gather.
Deglŭbĕrĕ, deglups,	to flay.
Lanā, ae,	wool.
Ludĕrĕ, lus,	to play
Mālŭs, ā, ūm,	bad.
Ovis, is,	sheep.
Scribĕrĕ, scrips,	to write.
Uvā, ae,	grape.

207. *Exercises.*

(a) 1. Caius epistolās sua manu scripsit. 2. Puella epistolām sua manu scripsērat. 3. Puēri lanam carpserunt. 4. Malus pastor deglupsit oves.

5. Facile est \* lanam carpere. 6. Pater meus fidem servavērat. 7. Turpe est fidem suam non servare. 8. Sapientis est \* virtutem magni aestimare. 9. Virtutem magni aestimavērint.

(b) 1. The boy has written a letter in his own hand. 2. The girl had written letters in her own hand. 3. They wrote letters. 4. The girl has plucked a flower. 5. The shepherd's daughter had gathered flowers with her own hand.

6. The boy will pluck the grape. 7. It is easy to pluck the grape. 8. The girls were gathering flowers. 9. They had gathered flowers. 10. It is easy to gather flowers. 11. The slaves will card the wool. 12. They will have carded the wool. 13. In winter the bear will sleep in the cave. 14. In summer the girls will play in the garden.

---

### LESSON XXXVIII.

*Third Conjugation.—Class II., continued.—Second Root formed by adding s to the First.*

208. WHEN a *k*-sound (*c, g, h, qu*) stands at the end of the first root, it generally unites, in the second, with the *s* which is added, and forms *x* (i. e. *cs, gs, hs, or qu* becomes *x*); e. g.,

---

\* What is the subject of *est*? (208, 2.)



## LESSON XXXIX.

*Third Conjugation.—Class II., continued.—Second Root formed by adding s to the First.*

211. WHENEVER a *t*-sound (*d* or *t*) stands at the end of the first root, it is generally dropped before *s* in the second, and the preceding vowel, if short, is lengthened; e. g.,

Claudĕrĕ, to shut;	claud,	claus	(clauds).
Amittĕrĕ, to lose;	āmitt,	amīs	(amitts).
Dīvidĕrĕ, to divide;	dīvid,	dīvīs	(divids).

212. When a limiting noun denotes some *characteristic* or *quality* of the noun which it limits, it is always accompanied by an adjective, and is put either in the *genitive* or *ablative*; e. g.,

Puēr exīmiāe pulchrītūdīnīa.

Puēr exīmiā pulchrītūdīnĕ.

A boy of remarkable beauty.

213. Combining the above with the rule already given (65), we have the following

**RULE OF SYNTAX.**—A noun limiting the meaning of another noun is put,

- 1) In the same case as that noun, when it denotes the same person or thing; as, *Lātīnūs rex*, *Latinus the king*.
- 2) In the genitive, when it denotes a different person or thing; as, *Rēgīs filiūs*, *the king's son*: except

(a) When it denotes *character* or *quality*, it is then accompanied by an adjective, and is put either in the *genitive* or *ablative*; as, *Puēr exīmiāe pulchrītūdīnīs*;

or, *Puer eximīa pulchritūdīnē*, a boy of remarkable beauty.

214. RULE OF SYNTAX.—Verbs of *accusing, convicting, acquitting, warning*, and the like, take the accusative of the person and the genitive of the crime, charge, &c.; e. g.,

Caiūm prōditiōnīs accūsant.  
(*Caius of treachery they accuse.*)  
They accuse Caius of treachery.\*

REM.—Here *prōditiōnīs* is in the genitive, by the above rule.

215. (*Eng. Id.*) To condemn to death.

(*Lat. Id.*) To condemn of the head (*cāpitis*).†

## 216. VOCABULARY.

Accūsarē, av,	to accuse.	
Ambitūs, us,	bribery.	
Amittērē, amīs,	to lose.	
Cāpitis ( <i>gen.</i> ),	of the head, to death	( <i>capital</i> ).
Claudērē, claus,	to shut	( <i>close</i> ).
Damnārē, av,	to condemn.	
Fāciēs, ei,	face; appearance.	
Furtūm, i,	theft	( <i>furtive</i> ).
Ingēniūm, i,	talent, ability	( <i>ingenious</i> ).
Ludērē, lūs,	to play.	
Nunquām,	never.	
Prōditio, ōnis,	treachery.	
Saltarē, av,	to dance.	
Vīr,† vīrī,	man, hero.	

\* This genitive is not properly governed by the verb, but by a noun understood; thus, if we supply *crimīnīs* with *prōditiōnīs* in the example, the sense will not be changed; as, 'They accuse Caius *with the charge* of treachery.'

† We may suppose that it was originally, "to condemn to the loss of the head," or, "to the punishment of the head"

‡ *Hōmo*, G. *hōmīnīs*, and *vīr* are both *man*: but *homo* is *man* as opposed to other animals; that is, a *human being*. whereas *vīr* is *man*

217. *Exercises.*

(a) 1. *Portas urbis clausērant.* 2. *Caius multum tempōris amīsit.* 3. *Caius, vir summo ingenio, multum tempōris amīsit.* 4. *Balbus ambitus accusavērunt.* 5. *Puēri in prato lusērunt.*

6. *Balbus capītis damnābunt.* 7. *Christiāni est avaritiā damnāre.* 8. *Caius accusāvīt.* 9. *Caius, summo ingenio virum, proditionis accusavērat.* 10. *Facile est saltāre.* 11. *Difficile est iram placāre.* 12. *Facile est puēri anīmum dono placāre.* 13. *Ursus in antro dormīvīt.* 14. *Hiēme ursi in antris dormiunt.* 15. *Nunquam utīle est peccāre.*

(b) 1. The slave has shut the gates of the city. 2. They will accuse the slave of treachery. 3. Caius had accused the slaves of theft. 4. He will have lost much time.\* 5. Balbus, a man of the greatest virtue, has praised the fidelity of the slave. 6. Balbus, a man endowed with the greatest virtue, has accused the boy of theft.

7. They have accused Balbus of bribery. 8. They had accused Balbus, a man of the greatest virtue, of bribery. 9. The sun had illuminated all things with its light. 10. The sun will have filled the world with its light. 11. They have written the letters with their own hands. 12. The queen had written a letter with her own hand. 13. He covered his face with his cloak. 14. They had covered their faces with their cloaks.

---

as opposed to *woman*.—When *men* means *human beings*, *men* generally (including *both sexes*), it should be translated by *homīnes*.—When *man* is used *contemptuously*, it should also be translated by *homo*, because that word says nothing better of a person than that he is a *human* being.—When *man* is used *respectfully*, with any praise, &c., it should be translated by *vir*.

## LESSON XL

*Formation of the Second Root.—First Irregularity—  
Radical vowel lengthened (and often changed).*

## 218. REGULAR Endings of the Second Root of Verba.

<i>Conj. I.</i> av.	<i>Conj. II.</i> u (or ēv).	<i>Conj. III.</i> s, or like 1st root.	<i>Conj. IV.</i> iv.
------------------------	--------------------------------	---	-------------------------

**REMARK.**—The above table presents only the *regular* endings of the second root; there are, however, several *irregularities* in the formation of that root which we must notice.

219. Some verbs in each\* of the four conjugations form the second root by lengthening the vowel of the first; e. g.,

Jūvārē, <i>to assist ;</i>	jūv,	jūv.
Vīdērē, <i>to see ;</i>	vīd,	vīd.
Edērē, <i>to eat ;</i>	ēd,	ēd.
Vēnīrē, <i>to come ;</i>	vēn,	vēn.

1) In the third conjugation,

a) If the first root has  $\tilde{\alpha}$ , the second will have  $\tilde{\alpha}$ .

b) *M* and *n* are often dropped before a final mute; e. g.,

Căp <sup>er</sup> ē, <i>to take</i> ;	căp,	căp	(ă changed to ə).
Frang <sup>er</sup> ē, <i>to break</i> ;	frang,	frēg	{ (n dropped, and a changed to ə).
Rump <sup>er</sup> ē, <i>to burst</i> ;	rump,	rūp	(m dropped).
Vinc <sup>er</sup> ē, <i>to conquer</i> ;	vinc,	vīc	(n dropped).

\* In the first and fourth conjugations, *jivārē, lāvārē, vēntrē*, and their compounds, are probably the only instances.

## 220. VOCABULARY.

Brachiūm, i,	arm.	
Cāpērē, cēp,	to take, to receive.	
Cibūs, i,	food.	
Emērē, em,	to buy.	
Exercītūs, ūs,	army.	
Foedūs, ēris,	treaty	( <i>federal</i> ).
Frangērē, frēg,	to break	( <i>fragile</i> ).
Gallūs, i,	{ a Gaul, an inhabitant of Gaul, now France.	
Lāvārē, lav,		( <i>lave</i> ).
Mēl, mellis,	honey.	
Milēs, itis,	soldier	( <i>military</i> ).
Nēmō, inis,*	nobody, no one.	
Quia,	because.	
Rumpērē, rūp,	to break, to violate.	
Sempēr,	always.	
Utilis, ē,	useful	( <i>utility</i> ).
Vēnirē, ven,	to come.	
Viderē, vid,	to see	( <i>visible</i> ).
Vinculūm, i,	chain.	

## 221. Exercises.

(a) 1. Balbus manus lāvit. 2. Puēri manus-lāvērunt. 3. Agricōla exercītum vīdit. 4. Milītes vēnērunt. 5. Caius brachium suum frēgērat. 6. Quantum voluptātis cēpērunt!

7. Nunquam utīle est foedus rumpēre. 8. Nunquam utīle est fidem violāre, quia semper est turpe. 9. Facīle est puerōrum anīmos donis placāre. 10. Turpe est foedēra negligēre. 11. Galli negligēbant foedēra. 12. Nemo semper labōrat. 13. Culpas suas simulatiōne virtūtis textit. 14. Multum voluptātis cepērunt. 15.

---

\* The gen. *nēmīnis* and abl. *nēmīnē* are not in good use.

Multum voluptātis amisērānt. 16. Quantum cibi amisērunt!

(b) 1. Caius has broken his arm. 2. They had broken their arms. 3. The king had broken the treaty. 4. The Gauls had broken the treaty. 5. Caesar had seen the army. 6. The girls will have seen the queen. 7. Caesar conquered the Gauls. 8. The Gauls did not conquer Caesar.

9. It is disgraceful to break a treaty. 10. It is difficult to conquer the Gauls. 11. It is not easy to conquer the enemy. 12. He had appeased Balbus. 13. They will break their chains. 14. They had broken their chains. 15. It is easy to break (one's) arm. 16. They are losing much money. 17. They had lost much money. 18. They were losing much pleasure. 19. They will condemn Balbus to death (215). 20. He had conquered his enemies.

## LESSON XLI.

### *Formation of the Second Root.—Second Irregularity—Reduplication.*

222. A FEW verbs of the first, second, and third conjugations, form the second root by prefixing to the first their initial consonant, with the following vowel or with *e*; e. g.,

Dăřě, to give;	d,	děd.
Morděřě, to bite;	mord,	mōmord.
Currěřě, to run;	curr,	cūcurr.

REM.—The radical vowel is also sometimes changed; as, *cădăřě*, to fall; 2d root *căd* (*ă* changed to *ı*).

## 223. VOCABULARY.

Ab ( <i>prep. with abl.</i> ),	from.
Auctumnūs, <i>m.</i> ,	autumn.
Barbā, <i>ae</i> ,	beard.
Cōlōr, <i>ōris</i> ,	color.
Currērē, cūcurr,	to run.
Dārē, dēd,	to give.
Finis, <i>is, m. or f.</i>	end.
Hūmērūs, <i>m.</i> ,	shoulder.
Mordērē, mōmord,	to bite.
Mūtārē, <i>av</i> ,	to change.
Nox, noctis,	night.
Pendērē, pēpend,	to hang ( <i>intrans.</i> ).
Pēr ( <i>prep. with accus.</i> )	through.
Sāgittā, <i>ae</i> ,	arrow.
Tondērē, tōtōnd,	to shear, shave.

## 224. Exercises.

(a) 1. Equus per urbem cucurrit. 2. Sagittae ab hamero pendērunt. 3. Nox proelio (648) finem dedit. 4. Malus pastor oves non totondit. 5. Malus pastor deglupsit oves; non totondit.

6. Boni pastōris' est tondēre oves, non deglubēre. 7. Pastōres agricōlas risērunt. 8. Lupus boni pastōris ovem momordērīt. 9. Boni canis' non est oves mordēre. 10. Servus portas urbis clausērīt. 11. Puēri regis sceptrum vidēbunt. 12. Lusciniae colōrem mutābunt. 13. Auctumno lusciniāe colōrem suum mutavērīt.

(b) 1. The dog has bitten the sheep. 2. Your dog had bitten the girl. 3. My horses have been running (have run). 4. Balbus has given his dog to your son. 5. They had given their dogs to the shepherd.

6. The wolf had bitten the sheep. 7. The shepherd will shear his sheep. 8. A shepherd does not shear

his sheep in the winter. 9. The wolves have bitten my dog. 10. Caius will shave (his) beard. 11. The cloak was hanging from (his) shoulder. 12. The dog has bitten the wolf. 13. They wrote the letter. 14. Balbus had shaved (his) beard. 15. The girls have plucked flowers in Caius's garden. 16. The girls will walk in the garden. 17. The queen was walking through the city. 18. They have surrounded the city with walls. 19. They have offended-against the laws of their country.

---

### LESSON XLII.

*Formation of the Second Root.—Third Irregularity—  
Second root after the analogy of other conjugations.*

225. A FEW verbs in each conjugation form the second root according to the *analogy* of one or more of the other conjugations.

- 1) A few in the first conjugation follow the analogy of the second; e. g.,

Micărē, to *glitter*: 1st root, *măc*; 2d root, *măcū*.

- 2) A few in the second follow the analogy of the third; e. g.,

Ridērē, to *laugh*; 1st root, *rīd*; 2d root, *rīs* (rids).

Lūgērē, to *mourn*; " *lūg*; " *lux* (lugs).

- 3) A few in the third follow the analogy of the second or fourth; e. g.,

Cōlērē, to *till*; 1st root, *cōl*; 2d root, *cōlū*.

Pētērē, to *seek*, " *pēt*; " *pētiv*.



- 4) A few in the fourth follow the analogy of the second or third; e. g.,

Apĕrĭrĕ, to open; 1st root, *ăpĕr*; 2d root, *ăpĕrŭ*.

Vincĭrĕ, to bind; " *vinc*; " *vinx* (cs).

REM.—Verbs of the third conj. which have the 1st root in *ac*, together with a few others, generally change the consonant-ending of the 1st root into *v* in the 2d; as, *crescĕrĕ*, to increase; 1st root, *cresc*; 2d, *crĕv*. Most of these verbs are supposed to have been derived from pure roots.

226. RULE OF SYNTAX.—Length of time is generally expressed by the accusative; e. g.,

Caiŭs annŭm ūnŭm vixĭt.

(Caius year one lived.)

Caius lived one year.

227. RULE OF SYNTAX.—The name of a town (91) where any thing is or is done, if of the first or second declension, and singular number, is put in the genitive; otherwise, in the ablative; e. g.,

1. Caiŭs annŭm ūnŭm *Cortŏnae* vixĭt.

Caius lived one year at Cortona.

2. Caiŭs annŭm ūnŭm *Tĭbŭrĕ* vixĭt.

Caius lived one year at Tibur.

REM.—In these examples, *Cortŏnae* and *Tĭbŭrĕ* are names of towns; the first is put in the *genitive*, because it is of the first declension, and sing. number, and the second in the *ablative*, because it is of the third declension.

## 228. VOCABULARY.

Amittĕrĕ, amĭs,

to lose.

Annŭs, 1,

year.

Apĕrĭrĕ, ăpĕrŭ,

to open, to uncover.

Bienniŭm,

two years, space of two years.

Castigārĕ, av,

to chastise.

Invītūs, ā, ūm,	unwilling.
Lagērē, lux,	to grieve, mourn, weep for.
Mānērē, mans,	to remain.
Matrōna, ae,	matron.
Rōmā, ae,	Rome,
	<i>a city of Italy, on the Tiber.</i>
Tibūr, ūris,	Tibur,
	<i>a town in Latium, in Italy.</i>
Tōtūs, ā, ūm (g. iūs),	the whole, the entire.

## 229. Exercises.

(a) 1. Balbus multos annos Romae manserat. 2. Biennium Carthagine manserant. 3. Mater luxerit. 4. Matrōnae luxerunt. 5. Brutum Romānae matrōnae luxerunt. 6. Pastōres agricōlas riserunt. 7. Puēri capīta aperuerunt.

8. Domīnus servi sui epistōlam aperiet. 9. Domīnus servi sui epistōlas aperuerat. 10. Aliquid temporis<sup>4</sup> invītus (205) amittet. 11. Christiāni est nemīnem violāre. 12. Nemīnem violāvit. 13. Biennium Romae manēbit. 14. Biennium Carthagine manēbunt.

(b) 1. They remained at Tibur many years. 2. Caius remained at Carthage for the space-of-two-years. 3. He has opened his father's letter. 4. They had opened the letters at Carthage.

5. My father will remain at Rome the whole winter. 6. He wrote the letters at Rome. 7. They are mourning for their son. 8. They have been in mourning two years. 9. The girls were mourning for their mother. 10. My father values industry very highly. 11. Balbus has accused the shepherd's son of theft. 12. They have accused Caius of bribery.

## LESSON XLIIL

*Subjunctive Mood.*

230. THE *Subjunctive Mood* represents the action or state expressed by the verb, not as a *fact*, but simply as a *possibility, wish, or conception of the mind*; e. g.,

- |                      |   |  |
|----------------------|---|--|
| 1. Scribāt,          | { | he may write,                          |
|                      |   | may he write,                          |
|                      |   | let him write.                         |
| 2. Vēnīt ūt scribāt, | { | he has come <i>that he may write</i> , |
|                      |   | he has come <i>to write</i> .          |

REM.—*Scribāt* in the above examples is in the present subjunctive.

231. The present subjunctive, when not preceded by *ūt*, generally expresses either a *wish* (to be translated by *may he*), or a *command* (to be translated by *let him, &c.*).

232. If the wish or command is to be expressed *negatively*, *nē* (never *nōn*) must be used with the subjunctive; e. g.,

Nē pūtēt, let him not think.

233. The tenses of the subjunctive mood\* are the *present, imperfect, perfect, and pluperfect*.

234. The endings of the third persons sing. of the tenses of the subjunctive are as follows:

	<i>Present.</i>	<i>Imperfect.</i>	<i>Perfect</i>	<i>Pluperfect.</i>
	(1st root.)	(1st root.)	(2d root.)	(2d root.)
Conj. I.	ēt,	arēt,	ērīt,	issēt.
Conj. II.	ēāt,	erēt,	ērīt,	issēt.
Conj. III.	āt,	ērēt,	ērīt,	issēt.
Conj. IV.	iāt,	irēt,	ērīt,	issēt.

\* The subjunctive has no futures.

**Rem.**—The third persons plural of the several tenses of the subjunctive are formed by inserting *s* before *t* in the ending of the third singular

235. The English signs corresponding to the Latin subjunctive are as follows:

Present, *may* or *can*.  
 Imperfect, *might*, *could*, *would*, or *should*.  
 Perfect, *may have*.  
 Pluperfect, *might*, *could*, *would*, or *should have*.

236. Partial Paradigm of the Subjunctive Mood.

FIRST CONJUGATION.	
<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
Pres. Am-ēt, he may or can love.	Am-ent, they may or can love.
Imp. Am-ārēt, he might, &c. love.	Am-arent, they might, &c. love.
Perf. Amāv-ērīt, he may have loved.	Amāv-erint, they may have loved.
Plup. Amāv-issēt, he might, &c. have loved.	Amāv-issent, they might, &c. have loved.
SECOND CONJUGATION.	
Pres. Mōn-eāt, he may or can advise.	Mōn-eant, they may advise.
Imp. Mōn-ārēt, he might, &c. advise.	Mōn-arent, they might, &c. advise.
Perf. Mōnu-ērīt, he may have advised.	Mōnu-erint, they may have advised.
Plup. Mōnu-issēt, he might, &c. have advised.	Mōnu-issent, they might, &c. have advised.
THIRD CONJUGATION.	
Pres. Rēg-āt, he may rule.	Rēg-ant, they may rule.
Imp. Rēg-ārēt, he might, &c. rule.	Rēg-arent, they might, &c. rule.
Perf. Rex-ērīt, he may have ruled.	Rex-erint, they may have ruled.
Plup. Rex-issēt, he might, &c. have ruled.	Rex-issent, they might, &c. have ruled.

## PARADIGM—continued.

FOURTH CONJUGATION.			
<i>Singular.</i>		<i>Plural.</i>	
Pres.	Aud-īāt, <i>he may hear.</i>	Aud-iant, <i>they may hear.</i>	
Imp.	Aud-irēt, <i>he might, &amp;c. hear.</i>	Aud-irent, <i>they might, &amp;c. hear.</i>	
Perf.	Audiv-ērīt, <i>he may have heard.</i>	Audiv-erint, <i>they may have heard.</i>	
Plup.	Audiv-issēt, <i>he might, &amp;c. have heard.</i>	Audiv-issent, <i>they might, &amp;c. have heard.</i>	

## 237. Exercises.

(a) 1. Scribat. 2. Ne scribant. 3. Servus claudat portas. 4. Puēri ne claudant portas. 5. Cantet puella. 6. Ludant Puēri. 7. Pater scribēret. 8. Scripsissent. 9. Filium suum sepeliřet. 10. Sepeliat filium.

11. Placet puēri animum. 12. Ne multa discat. 13. Fidem suam servāvit. 14. Fidem suam servavissent. 15. Fidem suam invīti servavērunt. 16. Puērum in urbe sepelivērunt. 17. Patres filios suos docuērunt.

(b) 1. Let the slaves shut the gates of the city. 2. Do not let the slave see the letter. 3. Let him write a letter. 4. He might have come. 5. They may have read the book. 6. He would have broken his arm. 7. Do not let the dog bite the boy.

8. Balbus has kept his word. 9. He would have broken his word. 10. Let him appease his father's anger. 11. He remained at Carthage many years. 12. They would have remained at Rome two years. 13. They had remained in the city one year. 14. Let fathers teach their sons.

## LESSON XLIV.

*Subjunctive Mood.—Purpose.*

238. THE present and imperfect subjunctive in Latin are often used to express a *purpose*.

239. The infinitive often denotes purpose in English, but never in Latin; accordingly, in expressions of purpose, the idioms of the two languages are entirely distinct from each other, and should be carefully studied.

240. *Eng. Id.* { I have come to see you.  
                  { I came to see you.

*Lat. Id.* { I have come that I may see you.  
                  { I came that I might see you.

241. When a purpose is to be expressed affirmatively, *ut* is used with the subj., when negatively, *nē*; e. g.,

1. Balbūm rōgāt *ut* puērūm dōceāt.  
(Balbus he asks that the boy he may teach.)  
He asks Balbus to teach the boy.
2. Balbūm rōgāt *nē* puērūm dōceāt.  
He asks Balbus not to teach the boy.

242. The subjunctive expressing purpose must be in the *present tense*; unless the verb on which it depends is in a *past tense* (*imperfect, perfect indefinite, or pluperfect*), and then it must be in the *imperfect*.

REM.—The perfect definite (193, REM.), or perfect with have (which denotes that the action *has been done* in a period of time *still present*), is considered a *present tense*, and followed by the *present subjunctive*.

## 243. EXAMPLES.

1. Vēnīt ūt portās claudāt.  
(*He is coming that the gates he may shut.*)  
He is coming to shut the gates.
2. Vēnīt (*indef.*) ūt portās claudērēt.  
(*He came that the gates he might shut.*)  
He came to shut the gates.
3. Vēnīt (*def.*) ūt portās claudāt.  
(*He has come that the gates he may shut.*)  
He has come to shut the gates.

REM. 1.—In the 1st example the subjunctive is in the *present* tense, because the verb *vēnīt*, on which it depends, is present; while in the 2d, it is in the *imperfect*, because its verb, *vēnīt* (came), is in the *perfect indefinite*.

REM. 2.—In the 3d example the subjunctive is in the *present*, because the verb *vēnīt* (has come) is in the *perfect definite*, and, though in form the same as in the 2d example, really expresses different time.

REM. 3.—The Latin perfect, when followed by the present subjunctive, must be translated into English with the sign *have*, as in example 3.

## 244. VOCABULARY.

Compārārē, av,	to procure, to raise, to levy.	
Discērē, didic,	to learn.	
Edērē, ed,	to eat	( <i>edible</i> ).
Evertērē, evert,	to overthrow, to pull down.	
Lēgērē, lēg,	to read	( <i>legible</i> ).
Plūrīmūs, ā, ūm,	very much or great, <i>pl.</i> , very many.	
Quiescērē, quiēv,	to rest, be quiet.	( <i>quiescent</i> ).
Rōgarē, av,	to ask, to entreat.	
Vivērē, vix,	to live	( <i>vivid</i> ).

## 245. Exercises.

(Construe ūt and the subjunctive by the infinitive.)

- (a) 1. Lēgit ut discat. 2. Lēgit\* ut discat. Lēgit ut disceret (242). 3. Edit ut vivat. 4. Edit ut vivēret.

---

\* See 243, REM. 3.

5. Servi veniunt ut portas claudant. 6. Veniat servus ut portas urbis claudat. 7. Caium rogat ut veniat.

8. Venit ut copias compăret. 9. Romae plurimi vivunt ut edant. 10. Cantent puellae. 11. Quiescant servi. 12. Veniat Caius ut epistolam sua manu scribat. 13. Venērat Caius ut Balbi animum donis placāret.

(6) 1. He has come to read (241) your letter. 2. They came to read your book. 3. They will come to accuse the judge of theft. 4. The boy will come to give his sister a garland.

5. Let the slaves shut the gates. 6. Do not let your dog bite the boy. 7. They had come to raise forces. 8. The enemy will think *little* of your forces. 9. He had come to surround the girl's head with a beautiful garland. 10. Let boys prize wisdom *very highly*.

## LESSON XLV.

### *Persons of Verbs.—Indicative Mood.—First Conjugation.*

246. It will be remembered that verbs have *three persons* (12): these are distinguished from each other by certain terminations called *Personal Endings*.

247. The three persons may be formed in the perfect indicative (which is somewhat irregular) by changing *it*, of the third person singular, into the following

#### PERSONAL ENDINGS.

<i>Singular.</i>			<i>Plural.</i>		
1st Pers.	2d Pers.	3d Pers.	1st Pers.	2d Pers.	3d Pers.
I,	istī,	it.	imūs,	istīs,	ērunt (or ērē).



248. In all the tenses\* of the indicative and subjunctive moods, except the perfect indicative, the three persons may be formed by changing *t* of the third singular into the following

## PERSONAL ENDINGS.

<i>Singular.</i>			<i>Plural.</i>		
1st Pers.	2d Pers.	3d Pers.	1st Pers.	2d Pers.	3d Pers.
m, ō,	s,	t.	mūs,	tis,	nt.

a) The ending *o*, for the first person singular, belongs to the *indicative present, future perfect*, and, in the first and second conjugations, to the *future*. The vowel which stands before *t* in the third person is dropped before *o* in the first person, except in the present of the second and fourth conjugations (and in a few verbs of the third); e. g.,

	<i>3d Person.</i>	<i>1st Person.</i>
Pres. 1st Conj.	Amāt, <i>he loves,</i>	āmō (ā dropped), <i>I love.</i>
" 2d "	Mōnēt, <i>he advises,</i>	mōnēō (ē not dropped), <i>I advise.</i>
" 3d "	Rēgīt, <i>he rules,</i>	rēgō (ī dropped), <i>I rule.</i>
" 4th "	Audīt, <i>he hears,</i>	audiō (ī not dropped), <i>I hear.</i>

b) The ending *m*, for the first person singular, belongs to the *indicative imperfect, pluperfect*, and, in the third and fourth conjugations, to the *future*, and to the *subjunctive* throughout all its tenses. In the future of the third and fourth conjugations, the vowel *ē*, which stands before *t* in the third person, is changed into *ā* before *m* in the first person; e. g.,

	3d Person.	1st Person.
Imperf.	Amabāt, <i>he was loving,</i>	āmabām, <i>I was loving.</i>
Pluperf.	Amavērāt, <i>he had loved,</i>	āmavērām, <i>I had loved.</i>
Fut. 3d Conj.	Rēgēt, <i>he will rule,</i>	rēgām, <i>I will rule.</i>
" 4th "	Audiēt, <i>he will hear,</i>	audiām, <i>I will hear.</i>

---

\* We of course speak only of the *active voice*, as the *passive* has not yet been noticed.

c) In the *present* and *future* tenses of the *indicative*, if *i* stands before *t* in the third singular, it is changed into *iu* in the third plural, in the fourth conjugation, and into *u* in the other conjugations; e. g.,

*Singular.**Plural.*

Fut. 1st Conj. Amabit, <i>he will love,</i>	amabunt, <i>they will love.</i>
" 2d " Monabit, <i>he will advise,</i>	monabunt, <i>they will advise.</i>
Pres. 3d " Regit, <i>he rules,</i>	regunt, <i>they rule.</i>
" 4th " Audit, <i>he hears,</i>	audiunt, <i>they hear.</i>

249. The vowel before the personal endings *mūs* and *tīs*, is *long* in the imperfect and pluperfect of the indicative, and in all the tenses of the subjunctive, except the perfect, in which it is common\* (*long* or *short*).

250. Paradigm of the Indicative Mood—First Conjugation.

Amārē, <i>to love</i> : 1st root, <i>ām</i> ; 2d, <i>āmāv</i> .	
PRESENT (1st root).	
<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
1. Am-ō, <i>I love.</i>	1. Am-amūs, <i>we love.</i>
2. Am-as, <i>thou lovest.</i>	2. Am-afis, <i>ye or you love.</i>
3. Am-āt, <i>he loves.</i>	3. Am-ant, <i>they love.</i>
IMPERFECT (1st root).	
Am-abām, <i>I was loving.</i>	Am-abamūs, <i>we were loving.</i>
Am-abas, <i>thou wast loving.</i>	Am-abafis, <i>ye or you were loving.</i>
Am-abāt, <i>he was loving.</i>	Am-abant, <i>they were loving.</i>
FUTURE (1st root).	
Am-abō, <i>I shall love.</i>	Am-abimūs, <i>we shall love.</i>
Am-abis, <i>thou wilt love.</i>	Am-abifis, <i>ye or you will love.</i>
Am-abit, <i>he will love.</i>	Am-abunt, <i>they will love.</i>

\* The vowel is also generally considered common before these endings in the *future perfect*; the old grammarians, however, make it *long*.

## PARADIGM—continued.

PERFECT (2d root).	
Amāv-i, <i>I loved or have loved.</i>	Amāv-īmūs, <i>we loved or have loved.</i>
Amāv-istī, <i>thou lovedst or hast loved.</i>	Amāv-istīs, <i>ye or you loved or have loved.</i>
Amāv-it, <i>he loved or has loved.</i>	Amāv-ērunt (ērē), <i>they loved or have loved.</i>
PLUPERFECT (2d root).	
Amāv-ērām, <i>I had loved.</i>	Amāv-ērāmūs, <i>we had loved.</i>
Amāv-ērās, <i>thou hadst loved.</i>	Amāv-ērāsīs, <i>ye or you had loved.</i>
Amāv-ērāt, <i>he had loved.</i>	Amāv-ērant, <i>they had loved.</i>
FUTURE PERFECT (2d root).	
Amāv-erō, <i>I shall have loved.</i>	Amāv-erīmūs, <i>we shall have loved.</i>
Amāv-erīs, <i>thou wilt have loved.</i>	Amāv-erīsīs, <i>ye or you will have loved.</i>
Amāv-erit, <i>he will have loved.</i>	Amāv-erint, <i>they will have loved.</i>

## 251. VOCABULARY

Ad ( <i>prep. with acc.</i> ),	to.	
Ducērē, dux,	to lead	(duke).
Hesternūs, ā, ūm,	of yesterday.	
Incolūmīs, ē,	safe, uninjured.	
Lēgatūs, ī,	ambassador	(legate).
Mittērē, mīs,	to send.	(mission).
Praemittērē,	to send before.	
Primūs ā, ūm,	first	(prime).

## 252. Exercises.

(a) 1. Violābas legem. 2. Violavisti leges. 3. Balbum vocāvi. 4. Hesterno die Balbum vocavīmus. 5. Urbem servāvi. 6. Cives incolūmes servavīmus. 7. Caium, summo ingenio (213) virum, ambītus accusaverātis. 8. Balbum capītis damnabītis.

9. Legātos ad Caesārem mittunt. 10. Prima luce omnem equitātum praemīsīt. 11. Christiānus nemīnem violābit. 12. Nemīnem violavisti. 13. Multos annos regnābis. 14. Balbus parvo (181) contentus est. 15. Servus multa laude dignus est.

(b) 1. You have kept your word. 2. I will not break my word. 3. You (*pl.*) have violated the laws of the state. 4. You (*pl.*) prize money very highly. 5. We shall condemn avarice. 6. I have never accused the queen. 7. We shall accuse the priest of treachery.

8. They appeased the anger of Caesar. 9. We will appease your anger. 10. Caesar thought very highly of his army. 11. We will send ambassadors to the king. 12. It is the duty of a Christian<sup>7</sup> to keep his word. 13. It is the part of a wise man to be content with little.

## LESSON XLVI

*Indicative Mood.—Four Conjugations.—Personal Pronouns.*

253. PARADIGM of the Indicative Mood.

PRESENT (1st root), <i>am, is, &amp;c., loving.</i>				
	<i>Conj. I.</i>	<i>Conj. II.</i>	<i>Conj. III.</i>	<i>Conj. IV.</i>
S. 1.	Am-ō,	Mōn-eō,	Rēg-ō,	Aud-iō,
2.	Am-as,	Mōn-es,	Rēg-is,	Aud-is,
3.	Am-āt;	Mōn-ēt;	Rēg-īt;	Aud-īt;
P. 1.	Am-amūs,	Mōn-emūs,	Rēg-imūs,	Aud-imūs,
2.	Am-ātis,	Mōn-ētis,	Rēg-ītis,	Aud-ītis,
3.	Am-ant.	Mōn-ent.	Rēg-unt.	Aud-iunt.

## PARADIGM—continued.

IMPERFECT (1st root), *was, did.*

	Conj. I.	Conj. II.	Conj. III.	Conj. IV.
S. 1.	Am-abām,	Mōn-ebām,	Rēg-ebām,	Aud-iebām,
2.	Am-abas,	Mōn-ebas,	Rēg-ebas,	Aud-iebas,
3.	Am-abāt;	Mōn-ebāt;	Rēg-ebāt;	Aud-iebāt;
P. 1.	Am-abamūs,	Mōn-ebamus,	Rēg-ebamūs,	Aud-iebamūs,
2.	Am-abātis,	Mōn-ebātis,	Rēg-ebātis,	Aud-iebātis,
3.	Am-abant.	Mōn-ebant.	Rēg-ebant.	Aud-iebant.

FUTURE (1st root), *shall or will.*

S. 1.	Am-abō,	Mōn-ebō,	Rēg-ām,	Aud-iām,
2.	Am-abis,	Mōn-ebis,	Rēg-ēs,	Aud-ies,
3.	Am-abit;	Mōn-ebit;	Rēg-ēt;	Aud-iēt;
P. 1.	Am-abimūs,	Mōn-ebimūs,	Rēg-emūs,	Aud-iemūs,
2.	Am-abitis,	Mōn-ebitis,	Rēg-ētis,	Aud-iētis,
3.	Am-abunt.	Mōn-ebunt.	Rēg-ent.	Aud-ient.

PERFECT (2d root), *have.*

S. 1.	Amāv-i,	Mōnu-i,	Rex-i,	Audiv-i,
2.	Amāv-istī,	Mōnu-istī,	Rex-istī,	Audiv-istī,
3.	Amāv-it;	Mōnu-it;	Rex-it;	Audiv-it;
P. 1.	Amāv-imūs,	Mōnu-imūs,	Rex-imūs,	Audiv-imūs,
2.	Amāv-istis,	Mōnu-istis,	Rex-istis,	Audiv-istis,
3.	Amāv-erunt or ērē.	Mōnu-erunt or ērē.	Rex-erunt or ērē.	Audiv-erunt or ērē.

PLUPERFECT (2d root), *had.*

S. 1.	Amāv-ērām,	Mōnu-ērām,	Rex-ērām,	Audiv-ērām,
2.	Amāv-eras,	Mōnu-eras,	Rex-eras,	Audiv-eras,
3.	Amāv-erāt;	Mōnu-erāt;	Rex-erāt;	Audiv-erāt;
P. 1.	Amāv-erāmus,	Mōnu-erāmus,	Rex-erāmus,	Audiv-erāmus,
2.	Amāv-erātis,	Mōnu-erātis,	Rex-erātis,	Audiv-erātis,
3.	Amāv-erant.	Mōnu-erant.	Rex-erant.	Audiv-erant.

FUTURE PERFECT (2d root), *shall or will have.*

S. 1.	Amāv-erō,	Mōnu-erō,	Rex-erō,	Audiv-erō,
2.	Amāv-eris,	Mōnu-eris,	Rex-eris,	Audiv-eris,
3.	Amāv-erit;	Mōnu-erit;	Rex-erit;	Audiv-erit;
P. 1.	Amāv-erimūs,	Mōnu-erimūs,	Rex-erimūs,	Audiv-erimūs,
2.	Amāv-eritis,	Mōnu-eritis,	Rex-eritis,	Audiv-eritis,
3.	Amāv-erint.	Mōnu-erint.	Rex-erint.	Audiv-erint.

## PRONOUNS.

254. *Pronouns* are words which supply the place of nouns; as, *ěgō*, I; *tū*, thou, &c.

255. Pronouns are divided into two classes; viz.,

- 1) *Substantive Pronouns*; as, *ěgō*, *tū*, &c.
- 2) *Adjective Pronouns*; as, *hīc*, this; *illē*, that.

256. Substantive Pronouns are three in number, viz.: *ěgō*, I (*which is of course of the first person*); *tū*, thou (*second person*); and *suī*, of himself (*third person*). These from their signification are often called *Personal Pronouns*.

257. Substantive Pronouns are declined as follows:

SINGULAR.				
1st Person.		2d Person.		3d Person.
N.	Egō, I.	Tū, thou.		{ Suī, of himself, herself, itself.
G.	Meī, of me.	Tuī, of thee.		
D.	Mihī, to or for me.	Tibī, to or for thee.		{ Sibī, to himself, &c.
A.	Mē, me.	Tē, thee.		
V.		Tū, O thou.		Sē, himself.
A.	Mē, with, &c. me.	Tē, with thee.		
FLURAL.				
N.	Nōs, we.	Vōs, ye or you.		{ Suī, of themselves.
G.	Nostrū, } of us.	Vestrū, } of you.		
	or Nostri,	or Vestri,		{ Sibī, to themselves.
D.	Nōbīs, to us.	Vōbīs, to you.		
A.	Nōs, us.	Vōs, you.		Sē, themselves.
V.		Vōs, O ye or you.		
A.	Nōbīs, with us.	Vōbīs, with you.		Sē, with themselves.

258. As the ending of the verb shows the person of its subject, the nominative of pronouns is seldom expressed as the subject, except for the sake of *emphasis* or *contrast*.

## 259. VOCABULARY.

Agĕrĕ, eg,	to drive, to lead, to do.	
Dĕ ( <i>prep. with abl.</i> ),	from, concerning.	
Dedĕrĕ, dĕdid,	to surrender.	
Dĕmonstrĕrĕ, av,	to show, to demonstrate	( <i>demonstration</i> ).
Egĕ,	I.	
Errĕrĕ, av,	to err	( <i>error</i> ).
Expōnĕrĕ, expōsū,	to set forth, to explain	( <i>expose</i> ).
Fĕcĕrĕ, (fĕ), fĕc,	to make, to do, to act.	
Gratĭā, ae,	gratitude, favor, <i>pl.</i> thanks.	
Gratĭas āgĕrĕ,	to give thanks.	
Itĕr, itinĕria, n.	journey, route	( <i>itinerant</i> ).
Judicĕrĕ, av,	to judge	( <i>judicature</i> ).
Occltĕrĕ, av,	to conceal	( <i>occultation</i> ).
Pōscĕrĕ, pōpose,	to demand.	
Rĕs, rĕi,	thing, affair, subject.	
Sĕd,	but.	
Sensū, ūs,	feeling, perception	( <i>sense</i> ).
Tu.	thou, you.	

## 260. Exercises.

(a) 1. Rem omnem exposui. 2. Errāvi. 3. Ego de meo sensu judico. 4. Ego misi viros: pueros tu misisti. 5. Hesterno die Balbum ad me vocāvi. 6. Vos judicavistis. 7. Nos judicabimus. 8. Mihi gratias egistis.

9. Caius itinĕra nostra servābat. 10. Fidem suam inviti servavērunt. 11. Agricōlae est laborāre. 12. Caius, ut demonstrāvimus, itinĕra nostra servābat. 13. Caesar servos poposcit. 14. Nos servos non poposcimus.

(b) 1. We have read your letters. 2. You were playing, but I was writing. 3. He has given me a beautiful book. 4. He will give you (*to you*) thanks. 5. We shall thank you. 6. I had called the boy to me.

7. Yesterday you called the girls to you. 8. We have never opened your letters.

9. I have kept my word. 10. You have never broken your word. 11. They have accused you of theft. 12. The judge has condemned us to death (215). 13. We will not accuse you of treachery. 14. We shall not remain in the city.

## LESSON XLVII.

### *Subjunctive Mood.—Four Conjugations.*

#### 261. PARADIGM of the Subjunctive Mood.

PRESENT (1st root), <i>may</i> or <i>can</i> .			
<i>Conj. I.</i>	<i>Conj. II.</i>	<i>Conj. III.</i>	<i>Conj. IV.</i>
Am-ēm,	Mön-eām,	Rëg-ām,	Aud-iām,
Am-ēs,	Mön-eās,	Rëg-as,	Aud-ias,
Am-ēt;	Mön-eāt;	Rëg-āt;	Aud-iāt;
Am-ēmūs,	Mön-eāmūs,	Rëg-amūs,	Aud-iamūs,
Am-ētis,	Mön-eātis,	Rëg-atīs,	Aud-iafīs,
Am-ent.	Mön-eant.	Rëg-ant.	Aud-iant.
IMPERFECT (1st root), <i>might</i> , <i>could</i> , <i>would</i> , or <i>should</i> .			
Am-arēm,	Mön-erēm,	Rëg-ërēm,	Aud-irēm,
Am-arēs,	Mön-erēs,	Rëg-ërēs,	Aud-irēs,
Am-arēt;	Mön-erēt;	Rëg-ërēt;	Aud-irēt;
Am-arēmūs,	Mön-erēmūs,	Rëg-ërēmūs,	Aud-irēmūs,
Am-arētīs,	Mön-erētīs,	Rëg-ërētīs,	Aud-irētīs,
Am-arent,	Mön-erent.	Rëg-erent.	Aud-irent.
PERFECT (2d root), <i>may have</i> .			
Amav-ërim,	Mönu-ërim,	Rex-ërim,	Audiv-ërim,
Amav-ëris,	Mönu-ëris,	Rex-ëris,	Audiv-ëris,
Amav-ërit;	Mönu-ërit;	Rex-ërit;	Audiv-ërit;
Amav-ërimūs,	Mönu-ërimūs,	Rex-ërimūs,	Audiv-ërimūs,
Amav-ëritīs,	Mönu-ëritīs,	Rex-ëritīs,	Audiv-ëritīs,
Amav-ërint.	Mönu-ërint.	Rex-ërint.	Audiv-ërint.



## PARADIGM—continued.

PLUPERFECT (2d root), <i>might, could, would, or should have.</i>			
Conj. I.	Conj. II.	Conj. III.	Conj. IV.
Amāv-issēm,	Mōnu-issēm,	Rex-issēm,	Audiv-issēm,
Amāv-issēs,	Mōnu-issēs,	Rex-issēs,	Audiv-issēs,
Amāv-issēt;	Mōnu-issēt;	Rex-issēt;	Audiv-issēt;
Amāv-issēmūs,	Mōnu-issēmūs,	Rex-issēmūs,	Audiv-issēmūs,
Amāv-issētīs,	Mōnu-issētīs,	Rex-issētīs,	Audiv-issētīs,
Amāv-issent.	Mōnu-issent.	Rex-issent.	Audiv-issent.

REM.—It will be observed that throughout the subjunctive the 1st person sing. ends in *m*.

262. The subjunctive with *ūt* is used to express a result; e. g.,

Tantūm est frīgūs ūt nix nōn liquescāt.

The cold is so great that the snow does not melt.

263. The subjunctive with *ūt*, denoting result, generally depends upon a proposition which contains some word signifying *so, such, so great, &c.*; thus, in the above example, it depends upon *tantūm* (*so great, or such*).

264. Hence, in turning English into Latin, *that* after *so, such, so great, &c.*, must be translated by *ūt*, and the verb which follows must be put in the subjunctive. (See example above.)

265. When the subjunctive depends upon a verb in the *present, perfect definite, or future*, it must be put in the *present* tense, unless it represents its action as *completed* at the time denoted by the principal verb; and then it must be in the *perfect*; e. g.,

1. Tantă est puērī industriă ūt multă discăt.

The boy's industry is so great that he learns much.

## 2. Nesciō quid dixērīt.

I do not know what he has said.

REM.—In the first example, the subjunctive *dixēt* (learns) is in the *present* tense, because the time of its action is the same as that of *est* (*pres.*) on which it depends, and in the second example *dixērīt* (he has said) is in the *perfect*, because it represents its action as completed at the time denoted by *nesciō* (i. e. *pres.*).

266. When the subjunctive depends upon a verb in the *imperfect*, *perfect indefinite*, or *pluperfect*, it must be put in the *imperfect* tense, unless it represents its action as completed at the time denoted by the principal verb, and then it must be in the *pluperfect*, e. g.,

## 1. Tantă ărat puēri industriă ūt multă discēre.

The boy's industry *was* so great that he *learned* much.

## 2. Nescīvī quid dixissēt.

I *did* not know what he *had* said.

REM.—The imperf. *discēre* represents its action as *not completed*, while the pluperfect *dixissēt* represents its action as *completed*.

266. A few adjectives in Latin are often used merely to specify some particular part of the nouns to which they belong; e. g.,

In summō { on the highest mountain (*Lat. Id.*).

montē, { on the top of the mountain (*Eng. Id.*).

In mediis { in the middle waters (*Lat. Id.*).

ăquīs, { in the middle (or midst) of the waters  
(*Eng. Id.*).

## 268. VOCABULARY.

Alpes, Alpiūm,

Conservăre, av,

Frangăre, frag,

Alps.

to preserve

to break.

(*conservative*).

Frigūs, ōris,	cold	( <i>frigid</i> ).
Ibī,	there.	
Liquescēre, licū,	to melt	( <i>liquid</i> ).
Mēdiūs, ī, ūm,	middle, midst of, middle of (267).	
Narē, av,	to swim.	
Nondūm,	not yet.	
Piscis, is, m.,	fish.	
Summūs, ū, ūm,	highest, top (267)	( <i>summit</i> ).
Tantūs, ū, ūm,	so great.	

## 269. Exercises.

(a) 1. Venit ut me audiat. 2. Veni ut vos audiam. 3. Venērunt ut nos audiant. 4. Venērunt ut te audirent. 5. Ne violētis fidem. 6. In summo monte tantum est frigus ut nix ibi nunquam liquescat.

7. In summis Alpibus tantum erat frigus ut nix ibi nunquam liquesceret. 8. Venit ut patriam auro vendat. 9. Venisti ut patriam auro vendēres. 10. Avis in summa arbore cantābat. 11. Multum voluptātis cepēram.

(b) 1. The cold is so great that the snow does not melt (265). 2. The cold has been so great that the snow has not yet melted (265). 3. The cold was so great on the top of the mountain that the snow did not melt there (266). 4. The cold was so great on the top of the Alps that the snow did not melt there (266). 5. I have come to learn. 6. You have come to play.

7. Let him keep his word. 8. Do not break your word. 9. Do not sell your country for gold. 10. On the top<sup>10</sup> of the mountain the snow never melts. 11. On the top of the Alps the snow never melts. 12. The fish is swimming in the middle<sup>10</sup> of the water.

## LESSON XLVIII

*Indicative and Subjunctive Moods, continued.—Verbs in io of the Third Conjugation.—Demonstrative Pronouns.*

270. A FEW verbs of the third conjugation are inflected (i. e. form their tenses, numbers, and persons) in the present, imperfect, and future indicative, and in the present subjunctive, like verbs of the fourth conjugation. The following is an example.

REM. In the present, first and second persons plural, the *i* in the penult is short; as, *cāptimūs, cāptistis*.

271. Paradigm of Verbs in *iō* of the Third Conjugation.

*Căpĕrĕ, to take; 1st root, căp; 2d, cĕp.*

## INDICATIVE.

## PRESENT.

<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
Căp-iō, <i>I take.</i>	Cap-īmūs, <i>we take.</i>
Căp-is, <i>thou takest.</i>	Cap-ītīs, <i>ye or you take.</i>
Căp-it, <i>he takes.</i>	Cap-iunt, <i>they take.</i>

## IMPERFECT.

Căp-iĕbām, <i>I was taking.</i>	Căp-iĕbamūs, <i>we were taking.</i>
Căp-iĕbas, <i>thou wast taking.</i>	Căp-iĕbatīs, <i>ye or you were taking.</i>
Căp-iĕbāt, <i>he was taking.</i>	Căp-iĕbant, <i>they were taking.</i>

## FUTURE.

Căp-iām, <i>I shall take.</i>	Căp-iēmūs, <i>we shall take.</i>
Căp-iēs, <i>thou wilt take.</i>	Căp-iētīs, <i>ye or you will take.</i>
Căp-iēt, <i>he will take.</i>	Căp-ient, <i>they will take.</i>

## SUBJUNCTIVE.

## PRESENT.

Căp-iām, <i>I may take.</i>	Căp-iamūs, <i>we may take.</i>
Căp-ias, <i>thou mayest take.</i>	Căp-iatīs, <i>ye or you may take.</i>
Căp-iat, <i>he may take.</i>	Căp-iant, <i>they may take.</i>

REM.—The remaining parts of the indicative and subjunctive moods, in verbs in *iō*, are entirely regular.

272. It has been stated (255) that pronouns are divided into two classes, viz., *Substantive Pronouns* and *Adjective Pronouns*.

273. Adjective pronouns are so called, because they are sometimes used as *pronouns to supply the place of nouns*, and sometimes as *adjectives to qualify nouns*. These are divided into several classes.

274. *Demonstrative Pronouns*, so called because they point out or specify the objects to which they refer, are *hic, illē, istē, is*, and *their compounds*, and are declined as follows:

1. <i>Hic, this.</i>					
<i>Singular.</i>			<i>Plural.</i>		
<i>M.</i>	<i>F.</i>	<i>N.</i>	<i>M.</i>	<i>F.</i>	<i>N.</i>
N. <i>Hic,</i>	<i>haec,</i>	<i>hōc.</i>	<i>Hi,</i>	<i>hae,</i>	<i>haec.</i>
G. <i>Hujūs,</i>	<i>hujūs,</i>	<i>hujūs.</i>	<i>Hōrūm,</i>	<i>harūm,</i>	<i>hōrūm.</i>
D. <i>Huic,</i>	<i>huic,</i>	<i>huic.</i>	<i>Hīs,</i>	<i>hīs,</i>	<i>hīs.</i>
A. <i>Hunc,</i>	<i>hanc,</i>	<i>hōc.</i>	<i>Hōs,</i>	<i>has,</i>	<i>haec.</i>
V.					
A. <i>Hōc,</i>	<i>hac,</i>	<i>hōc.</i>	<i>Hīs,</i>	<i>hīs,</i>	<i>hīs.</i>
2. <i>Illē, he or that.</i>					
<i>Singular.</i>			<i>Plural.</i>		
<i>M.</i>	<i>F.</i>	<i>N.</i>	<i>M.</i>	<i>F.</i>	<i>N.</i>
N. <i>Illē,</i>	<i>illā,</i>	<i>illūd.</i>	<i>Illī,</i>	<i>illae,</i>	<i>illā.</i>
G. <i>Illūs,</i>	<i>illūs,</i>	<i>illūs.</i>	<i>Illorūm,</i>	<i>illarūm,</i>	<i>illorūm.</i>
D. <i>Illī,</i>	<i>illī,</i>	<i>illī.</i>	<i>Illīs,</i>	<i>illīs,</i>	<i>illīs.</i>
A. <i>Illūm,</i>	<i>illām,</i>	<i>illūd.</i>	<i>Illōs,</i>	<i>illās,</i>	<i>illā.</i>
V.					
A. <i>Illō,</i>	<i>illā,</i>	<i>illō.</i>	<i>Illīs,</i>	<i>illīs,</i>	<i>illīs.</i>
3. <i>Istē, that.</i>					
<i>Istē, that,</i> is declined like <i>illē</i> . It usually refers to objects which are present to the person addressed, and sometimes expresses contempt.					

## PARADIGMS—continued.

4. *Is, he or that.*(Less specific than *illū*.)

<i>Singular.</i>			<i>Plural.</i>		
<i>M.</i>	<i>F.</i>	<i>N.</i>	<i>M.</i>	<i>F.</i>	<i>N.</i>
N. <i>Is,</i>	<i>eā,</i>	<i>id.</i>	<i>Il,</i>	<i>eae,</i>	<i>eā.</i>
G. <i>Ejus,</i>	<i>ejūs,</i>	<i>ejūs.</i>	<i>Eōrūm,</i>	<i>eārūm,</i>	<i>eōrūm.</i>
D. <i>Ei,</i>	<i>ei,</i>	<i>ei.</i>	<i>Iis or eis,</i>	<i>iis or eis,</i>	<i>iis or eis.</i>
A. <i>Eūm,</i>	<i>eām,</i>	<i>id.</i>	<i>Eōs,</i>	<i>eās,</i>	<i>eā.</i>
V.					
A. <i>Eō,</i>	<i>eā,</i>	<i>eō.</i>	<i>Iis or eis,</i>	<i>iis or eis,</i>	<i>iis or eis.</i>

5. *Idēm, the same.*(Formed by annexing *dēm* to *is*.)

<i>Singular.</i>			<i>Plural.</i>		
<i>M.</i>	<i>F.</i>	<i>N.</i>	<i>M.</i>	<i>F.</i>	<i>N.</i>
N. <i>Idēm,</i>	<i>eādēm,</i>	<i>idēm.</i>	<i>Iidēm,</i>	<i>eaedēm,</i>	<i>eādēm.</i>
G. <i>Ejusdēm,</i>	<i>ejusdēm,</i>	<i>ejusdēm.</i>	<i>Eorundēm,</i>	<i>earundēm,</i>	<i>eorundēm.</i>
D. <i>Eidēm,</i>	<i>eidēm,</i>	<i>eidēm.</i>	<i>Eisdēm, or</i>	<i>eisdēm, or</i>	<i>eisdēm, or</i>
			<i>Iisdēm,</i>	<i>iisdēm,</i>	<i>iisdēm.</i>
A. <i>Eundēm,</i>	<i>eandēm,</i>	<i>idēm.</i>	<i>Eōsdēm,</i>	<i>easdēm,</i>	<i>eādēm.</i>
V.					
A. <i>Eōdēm,</i>	<i>eadēm,</i>	<i>eōdēm.</i>	<i>Eisdēm, or</i>	<i>eisdēm, or</i>	<i>eisdēm, or</i>
			<i>Iisdēm,</i>	<i>iisdēm,</i>	<i>iisdēm.</i>

## 275. VOCABULARY.

Ab ( <i>prep. with abl.</i> ),	from.
Castrā, ōrūm ( <i>plur.</i> ),	camp.
Cēlērītēr,	quickly.
Clementiā, ae,	mildness, clemency
Confūgērē ( <i>id</i> ), confug,	to flee for refuge.
Cūm ( <i>prep. with abl.</i> ),	with.
Dimittērē, dimis,	dismissa.
Ex ( <i>prep. with abl.</i> ),	from.
Impētūs, ūs,	attack ( <i>impetus</i> ).
Impēratā, ōrūm,	commanda.
Lōcūs, i,	place, position ( <i>local</i> ).
Mōvērē, mōv,	to move, to put in motion.

Postērā, ūm (*mas. not used*), next, following.

Postŭlarē, av, to demand.

Promittērē, prŏmis, to promise.

Promōverē, prŏmōv, to move forward, to advance.

Vērō, indeed, truly.

### 276. Exercises.

(a) 1. Postēro die castra ex eo loco movent. 2. Idem facit Caesar. 3. Idem faciēbant. 4. Ego vero istud non postŭlo. 5. Veni ut legērem. 6. Haec promistis. 7. Eōdem die castra promōvit.

8. Hi primi (205) cum gladiis impētum fecērunt. 9. Illi imperāta celerīter fecērunt. 10. Ibi me non occidisti. 11. Eum ab se dimittit. 12. Venisti ut eum vidēres. 13. Hunc capītis damnābunt. 14. Illos prodiōnis invīti accusaverātis.

(b) 1. I will give you this book. 2. We prize these beautiful books very highly. 3. They will think little of those beautiful books. 4. You have condemned this man to death. 5. I will entreat him not to do (that he may not do) this.

6. I have unwillingly condemned him to death. 7. We will not accuse you of treachery. 8. You have accused him of bribery. 9. We entreated him not to accuse his son. 10. We did not make the attack. 11. They asked us to make an attack.

## LESSON XLIX.

*Indicative and Subjunctive Moods, continued.—Intensive Pronoun.*

277. THE *Intensive Pronoun*, *ipsē*, himself, is so called because it is used to render an object *emphatic*;

it is also called an *adjunctive* pronoun, because it is usually joined to a noun, or to some other pronoun; as, *Rōmūlūs ipsē*, Romulus himself; *tū ipsē*, you yourself.

278. *Ipsē*, when joined to a noun or pronoun, may sometimes be translated by *very*; as, *hōc ipsūm*, this *very* thing.

279. *Ipsē* is declined as follows:

<i>Singular.</i>			<i>Plural.</i>		
<i>M.</i>	<i>F.</i>	<i>N.</i>	<i>M.</i>	<i>F.</i>	<i>N.</i>
N. <i>Ipsē</i> ,	<i>ipsā</i> ,	<i>ipsūm</i> .	<i>Ipsī</i> ,	<i>ipsae</i> ,	<i>ipsā</i> .
G. <i>Ipsīūs</i> ,	<i>ipsīūs</i> ,	<i>ipsīūs</i> .	<i>Ipsōrūm</i> ,	<i>ipsārūm</i> ,	<i>ipsōrūm</i> .
D. <i>Ipsī</i> ,	<i>ipsī</i> ,	<i>ipsī</i> .	<i>Ipsīs</i> ,	<i>ipsīs</i> ,	<i>ipsīs</i> .
A. <i>Ipsūm</i> ,	<i>ipsām</i> ,	<i>ipsām</i> .	<i>Ipsōs</i> ,	<i>ipsās</i> ,	<i>ipsā</i> .
V.					
A. <i>Ipsō</i> ,	<i>ipsā</i> ,	<i>ipsō</i> .	<i>Ipsīs</i> ,	<i>ipsīs</i> ,	<i>ipsīs</i> .

REM.—The substantive pronouns are rendered *intensive* by annexing the syllable *mēt*; as, *egōmēt*, I myself. In the substantive pronoun of the third person, *eīs* is used *intensively* in the accusative and ablative of both numbers.

## 280. VOCABULARY.

Accēdērē, access,	to approach	(access).
At,	but, yet.	
Fortūnā, ae,	fortune.	
Fūgā, ae,	flight.	
Gēnūs, gēnērīs,	kind, nature.	
Justūs, ā, ūm,	just, fair.	
Nūmērūs, ī,	number	(numerous).
Occultārē, āv,	to conceal	(occult).
Respondērē, respond,	to answer	(respond).
Usquē,	as far as; usque ad, even to.	

## 281. Exercises.

(a) 1. Ipse fuga mortem vitavērat. 2. Ipse ad castra hostium accessit. 3. Ipsi usque ad castra hostium



accessérant. 4. Caius sese occultābat. 5. Servi nostri sese occultābunt. 6. Ipse dixit. 7. Hoc ipsum justum est. 8. At te eādem tua fortūna servāvit. 9. Caesar haec promisit. 10. Ad haec legāti respondērunt.

(b) 1. He himself accused the son of the king. 2. We shall accuse the king himself. 3. You yourself gave me this book. 4. They will read this very (*ipsē*) book. 5. We ourselves will go to see the queen. 6. They have gone to see the queen herself.

7. You promised this. 8. We will ourselves do the same. 9. You have said nothing of (*de*) the nature of the war. 10. We shall say nothing of the war itself. 11. They had come to condemn me to death.

## LESSON L.

*Indicative and Subjunctive Moods, continued.—Relative and Interrogative Pronouns.*

282. THE *Relative Pronoun*, *quī*, who, is so called, because it always relates to some noun or pronoun, expressed or understood, called its antecedent. It is declined as follows :

<i>Singular.</i>			<i>Plural.</i>		
<i>M.</i>	<i>F.</i>	<i>N.</i>	<i>M.</i>	<i>F.</i>	<i>N.</i>
N. Qui,	quae,	quōd.	Qui,	quae,	quae.
G. Cujūs,	cujūs,	cujūs.	Quōrūm,	quārūm,	quōrūm.
D. Cui,	cui,	cui.	Quibūs,	quibūs,	quibūs.
A. Quēm,	quā,	quōd.	Quos,	quās,	quae.
V.					
A. Quō,	quā,	quō.	Quibūs,	quibūs,	quibūs.

283. RULE OF SYNTAX.—The relative agrees with its antecedent in *gender* and *number*; as, *Puer* qui scribit, *the boy who writes*.

REM.—*Qui* is in the masculine singular, to agree with its antecedent *puer*; but it is in the *nominative* because it is the subject of *scribit*, and not because its antecedent is in the nominative.

284. The *Interrogative Pronouns*, *quīs* and *quī*, are so called because they are used in asking questions. *Quī* (which? what?) is used *adjectively*, and is declined like the relative. *Quīs* (who? which? what?) is generally used *substantively*, and is declined like the relative, except the forms *quīs*, *quīd*, as follows:

<i>Singular.</i>			<i>Plural.</i>		
<i>M.</i>	<i>F.</i>	<i>N.</i>	<i>M.</i>	<i>F.</i>	<i>N.</i>
N. Quīs,	quae,	quīd.	Qui,	quae,	quae.
G. Cujūs,	cujūs,	cujūs.	Quorū,	quarū,	quorū.
D. Cui,	cui,	cui.	Quībūs,	quībūs,	quībūs.
A. Quēm,	quām,	quīd.	Quos,	quās,	quae.
V.					
A. Quō,	quā,	quō.	Quībūs,	quībūs,	quībūs.

## 285. VOCABULARY.

Ampliūs ( <i>comp. adv. from ample</i> ),	more, further.
Cogitarē, av,	to think, to think about.
Cognoscērē, cognōv,	to ascertain.
Córām,	openly, in person.
Exspectārē, av,	to await, expect.
Nuntiūs, I,	messenger.
Parvūs, ā, ūm,	little, small.
Perspicērē, perspex,	to perceive, to see
Planē,	plainly.
Vocārē, av,	to call.

286. *Exercises.*

(a) 1. Quis nos vocābit? 2. Quid dixisti? 3. Quid cogitas? 4. Quid times? 5. Quis tibi hunc librum dedit? 6. Eādem quae ex nuntiis cognovērat, coram perspīcit. 7. In qua urbe vivimus? 8. Illi, quod nemo fecerat, fecerunt. 9. Quid est quod amplius expectes? 10. Quam urbem habemus? 11. Quis Caium proditionis (214) accūsat? 12. Quem ambītus accusavisti? 13. Carthagīne invītus manēbo. 14. Bienium Romae invīti manēbant. 15. Summam prudentiam simulatiōne stultitiae texistis.

(b) 1. Whom do you love? 2. I see the slave whom you punished. 3. Who has sold his country for gold? 4. Who gave the boy this beautiful book? 5. Who will show me the way? 6. I will show you the house which my father built.

7. Which book were you reading? 8. I was reading the book which you gave me. 9. We all read to learn (that we may learn). 10. You have remained at Rome many years. 11. How much time you have lost!

---

LESSON LI.

*Indicative and Subjunctive Moods, continued.—Interrogative Particles.*

287. *Nē* and *nūm* are interrogative particles; and when a question has no interrogative pronoun (284) or interrogative adverb, one of these particles must be used.

288. If *ně* is used, it must *follow* and be joined to some other word; and, if there is a *not* in the sentence, it must be joined to the *nōn* (not), making *nonnē*; e. g.,

1. *Scrībīt nē Caiūs*? Is Caius writing?
2. *Nonnē scrībīt*? Is not he writing?
3. *Nūm scrībīt Caiūs*? Is Caius writing? [No.]

**REM.**—A question with *nē* and without *nōn* asks for information (Ex. 1), with *nōn* expects the answer *yes* (Ex. 2), and with *nūm* expects the answer *no* (Ex. 3); thus, *Nūm scrībīt Caiūs*, means, *Caius is not writing, is he?*

## 289. VOCABULARY.\*

<i>Aspergērē</i> , aspers, <i>sprinkle</i> .	accus., <i>to, into, against</i> ; with
<i>Arā</i> , ae, <i>altar</i> .	abl., <i>in</i> .
<i>Auctumnūs</i> , I, <i>autumn</i> .	<i>Nidūs</i> , I, <i>nest</i> .
<i>Construērē</i> , construx, <i>to build, construct</i> .	<i>Pēriculōsūs</i> , ā, ūm, <i>dangerous</i> .
<i>Immergērē</i> , immers, <i>to plunge into</i> .	<i>Sanguis</i> , inis, <i>m., blood</i> .
<i>In</i> ( <i>prep. with accus. or abl.</i> ), with	<i>Sēmēn</i> , inis, <i>seed</i> .
	<i>Spargērē</i> , spars, <i>to scatter, to sow</i> .
	<i>Victimā</i> , ae, <i>victim</i> .

## 290. Exercises.

(In construing, omit the *nē* or *nūm*, but make the sentence a question.)

- (a) 1. *Scripsitne Caius*?† 2. *Num scripserātis*? 3. *Num rex portas urbis sua manu claudet*? 4. *Quid rides*?

\* It has been thought unnecessary longer to insert *key-words* in the Vocabularies, but it is hoped the pupil will still continue to accustom himself to associate with his Latin at least some of the more common English words which have been derived from it.

† In construing a question, the auxiliary verb (*does, do, did, has, have*) must be put before the subject; as, *Scripsitne puer*, *Has the boy written?* or, *Did the boy write?*

5. Caius se in flumen immersit. 6. Periculōsum est hiāme se in flumen immergēre. 7. Puer se in flumen immergat. 8. *Agricolārum est* semīna auctumno spargēre. 9. Nonnē in *summis Alpibus* tantum est frigus, ut nix ibi nunquam liquescat? 10. Sacerdos victimārum sanguīne aram aspersit. 11. Nonnē boni est pastōris tondēre oves, non deglubēre?

(b) 1. Does he live to eat? [No.] 2. Does not he eat to live? 3. The husbandman has scattered seeds. 4. Have not the husbandmen scattered seeds? 5. He has plunged the body into *the middle of the waters*. 6. Let fish swim in the *midst of the waters*. 7. They have come to condemn (239) you *to death*.<sup>9</sup> 8. Can he swim in the *middle of the waters*?<sup>10</sup> [No.] 9. The boy's industry is so great, that he can learn all things. 10. Has not a wolf bitten the sheep? 11. Are you shearing the sheep?

## LESSON LII.

*Indicative and Subjunctive Moods, continued.—Pronouns, Indefinite and Possessive.*

291. *Indefinite Pronouns* are so called because they do not definitely specify the objects to which they refer; e. g., *quidā*, a certain one; *aliquis*, some one; *quisquē*, every one; *si quis*, if any, &c.

292. The *indefinite pronouns* are compounds either of *quis* or *quī*, and are declined in nearly the same manner as the simple pronouns.

293. *Quidā*, compounded of *quī* and *dām*, is declined like *quī*, except in the neuter singular, where it

takes *quīd* (instead of *quōd*) when used *substantively* and in the accusative singular and genitive plural, where *m* before *d* is changed into *n*; as, *quendām* (not *quemdām*), *quōrundām* (not *quōrumdām*).

294. *Aliquīs*, compounded of *āliūs* and *quīs*, is declined like *quīs*, except in the neuter singular, nominative and accusative, where it has *āliquōd* adjective, and *āliquīd* substantive; and in the feminine singular and neuter plural, where it has *āliquā*. It is declined as follows:

SINGULAR.		
M.	F.	N.
N. Aliquīs,	āliquā,	āliquōd or āliquīd.
G. Alicujūs,	ālicujūs,	ālicujūs.
D. Alicui,	ālicui,	ālicui.
A. Aliquēm,	āliquām,	āliquōd or āliquīd.
V.		
A. Aliquō,	āliquā,	āliquō.
PLURAL.		
M.	F.	N.
N. Aliqui,	āliquae,	āliquā.
G. Aliquōrūm,	āliquārūm,	āliquōrūm.
D. Aliquībūs,	āliquībūs,	āliquībūs.
A. Aliquōs,	āliquas,	āliquā.
V.		
A. Aliquībūs,	āliquībūs,	āliquībūs.

295. The *Possessive Pronouns* (so called because they denote possession), *meūs, meā, meūm*; *tuūs, tuā, tuūm*; *suūs, suā, suūm*; *nostēr, nostrā, nostrūm*; *vestēr, vestrā, vestrūm*, are declined, as we have already seen (114, REM. 3), like adjectives of the first and second declension.

## 296. VOCABULARY

A (*prep. with abl.*), *from.*Argentum, *silver.*Conciliū, *council.*Continēre, *to restrain, confine.*Culpā, *fault.*Indicēre, *to declare (as war).*Infigēre, *to inflict.*Si, *if.*Ullus, *any.*Vulnūs, *wound.*

## 297. Exercises.

(a) 1. Aliquid temporis invitū amittes. 2. Non est tua ulla culpa, si te aliqui timuerunt. 3. Aliquis est in horto tuo. 4. Caesar suos a proelio continēbat. 5. Legatos ad Caesarem misit. 6. Legati ad conciliū venērunt. 7. Christianōrum est fidem suam servāre. 8. Turpe est patriae tuae leges violāre. 9. Rex urbi bellum indicet. 10. Anguis agricolae vulnus infligēbat. 11. Tanta est industria tua, ut multa discas. 12. Tanta fuit industria tua ut multa discerēs.

(b) 1. Some one has accused you of bribery. 2. They have accused certain persons of theft. 3. He will condemn some one to death. 4. We have lost some time. 5. The shepherd has sold his dog for gold. 6. It is the duty of a father to instruct his sons. 7. Who has accused you of theft? 8. No one has accused me of theft. 9. Some one has accused you of treachery. 10. Who has accused me of treachery? 11. The king himself has accused you of treachery.

## LESSON LIII.

Verb.—Essē.

298. THE verb *essē*, to be, is called a substantive verb, except when used as an auxiliary in the passive

voice (not yet examined) of other verbs. Its conjugation is quite irregular.

299. Paradigm of the verb *Essē*.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT (*am*).

<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
<i>Sūm, I am.</i>	<i>Sūmūs, we are.</i>
<i>Es, thou art.</i>	<i>Estis, you are.</i>
<i>Est, he is.</i>	<i>Sunt, they are.</i>

IMPERFECT (*was*).

<i>Erām, I was.</i>	<i>Erāmūs, we were.</i>
<i>Erās, thou wast.</i>	<i>Erātis, you were.</i>
<i>Erāt, he was.</i>	<i>Erant, they were.</i>

FUTURE (*shall or will be*).

<i>Erō, I shall be.</i>	<i>Erīmūs, we shall be.</i>
<i>Eris, thou wilt be.</i>	<i>Eritis, you will be.</i>
<i>Erit, he will be.</i>	<i>Erunt, they will be.</i>

PERFECT (*have been or was*).

<i>Fui, I have been.</i>	<i>Fuimūs, we have been.</i>
<i>Fuisti, thou hast been.</i>	<i>Fuistis, you have been.</i>
<i>Fuit, he has been.</i>	<i>Fuerunt, } they have been.</i>
	<i>Fuērē, }</i>

PLUPERFECT (*had been*).

<i>Fuērām, I had been.</i>	<i>Fuērāmūs, we had been.</i>
<i>Fuēras, thou hadst been.</i>	<i>Fuērātis, you had been.</i>
<i>Fuērāt, he had been.</i>	<i>Fuērant, they had been.</i>

FUTURE PERFECT (*shall or will have been*).

<i>Fuērō, I shall have been.</i>	<i>Fuērīmūs, we shall have been.</i>
<i>Fuēris, thou wilt have been.</i>	<i>Fuērītis, you will have been.</i>
<i>Fuērīt, he will have been.</i>	<i>Fuērint, they will have been.</i>



## PARADIGM—continued.

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PRESENT (*may or can be*).

<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
Sim, <i>I may be.</i>	Simūs, <i>we may be.</i>
Sis, <i>thou mayest be.</i>	Sītis, <i>you may be.</i>
Sit, <i>he may be.</i>	Sint, <i>they may be.</i>

IMPERFECT (*might, could, would, or should be*).

Essēm, <i>I might be.</i>	Essēmūs, <i>we might be.</i>
Essēs, <i>thou mightest be.</i>	Essētis, <i>you might be.</i>
Essēt, <i>he might be.</i>	Essent, <i>they might be.</i>

PERFECT (*may have been*).

Fuērim, <i>I may have been.</i>	Fuērimūs, <i>we may have been.</i>
Fuēris, <i>thou mayest have been.</i>	Fuērtis, <i>you may have been.</i>
Fuērit, <i>he may have been.</i>	Fuērint, <i>they may have been.</i>

PLUPERFECT (*might, could, would, or should have been*).

Fuissēm, <i>I might have been.</i>	Fuissēmūs, <i>we might have been.</i>
Fuissēs, <i>thou mightest have been.</i>	Fuissētis, <i>you might have been.</i>
Fuissēt, <i>he might have been.</i>	Fuissent, <i>they might have been.</i>

## IMPERATIVE MOOD.\*

Ea, <i>or estō, be thou.</i>	Estē <i>or estōtē, be ye.</i>
Estō, <i>let him be.</i>	Suntō, <i>let them be.</i>

## INFINITIVE MOOD.

PRESENT,	Essē, <i>to be.</i>
PERFECT,	Fuissē, <i>to have been.</i>
FUTURE,	Fūtūrūs (ā, ūm) essē, <i>to be about to be.</i>

## PARTICIPLE.

FUTURE,	Fūtūrūs, ā, ūm, <i>about to be.</i>
---------	-------------------------------------

\* The remaining forms are given here in order to complete the Paradigm of the verb *essē*, although the nature and use of the *imperative* and *infinitive* moods, and of the *participles*, have not yet been examined; a word of explanation will be sufficient for this place.

300. The *Imperative Mood* denotes a command, and of course is never used in the first person.

301. The *Infinitive Mood*, as we have already seen (9), represents simply the meaning of the verb, without person or number. It has three tenses, *present*, *perfect*, and *future*.

302. The *Participle* is that part of the verb which has the form and inflection of an adjective; thus, the participle *futūrus*, *ā*, *ūm*, is declined like the adjective *bōnus*, *ā*, *ūm* (112).

### 303. VOCABULARY.

Absolvēre, absolvo, *to acquit*.

Admiratiō, ōnis, *admiration*.

Brēvis, ē, *short*.

Dignus, ā, ūm, *worthy*.

Ferrum, i, *iron*.

Hābitare, av, *to dwell, to inhabit*.

Hōnōr, ōris, *honor*

Incertus, ā, ūm, *uncertain*.

Indignus, ā, ūm, *unworthy*.

Mens, tis, *mind, reasoning faculty*.

Opus, ēris, *work*.

Tranquillus, ā, ūm, *calm, tranquil*.

Utilis, ē, *useful*.

### 304. Exercises.

(a) 1. Mens sapientis semper erit tranquilla. 2. Est tuum\* iter facere. 3. Puer in horto fuerat. 4. His honoribus (181) digni sitis. 5. Caius vita indignus est. 6. Ferrum et aurum sunt utilia. 7. Haec opēra sunt admiratiōne digna. 8. Vita est brevis et incerta. 9. Improbōrum\* est malos laudāre. 10. Venimus ut patriae tuae leges violarēmus. 11. Veniant servi ut portas urbis claudant. 12. Multos annos Romae habitaverātis.

(b) 1. The good will be happy. 2. May you be happy. 3. We all might have been happy. 4. It is

---

\* Est tuūm, it is yours; i. e., your duty.

my duty to keep the laws of my country. 5. May he ever be worthy of this honor. 6. He would have been unworthy of his father.

7. He had been king many years. 8. We will never praise the bad. 9. They will condemn us to death. 10. We will never accuse the good. 11. He had broken his arm at Athens. 12. Virtue is the highest wisdom. 13. We will acquit you of bribery (214.)

## LESSON LIV.

*Verb Essē, continued.—Comparison of Adjectives.*

305. ADJECTIVES in Latin, as in English, may express different degrees of the quality which they denote; e. g.,

Altūs,	altiōr,	altissimūs.
High,	higher,	highest.

REM.—In this example, *altūs* (high) is said to be in the *positive degree*; *altiōr* in the *comparative*; and *altissimūs*, in the *superlative*.

306. In Latin, adjectives are compared by adding to the root of the positive the following endings:

Comparative.			Superlative.		
M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
iōr,	iōr,	iūs.	issimūs,	issimā,	issimūm.
<i>Examples. Root.</i>			<i>Comparative. Superlative.</i>		
Altūs ( <i>high</i> ),	alt.		altiōr (iōr, iūs),	altissimūs (ā, ūm).	
Mitīs ( <i>mild</i> ),	mit.		mtiōr (iōr, iūs),	mtissimūs (ā, ūm).	

REM. 1.—Adjectives in *ōr* add *rimūs* (ā, ūm) to the positive, to form the superlative; e. g.,

Pulchēr, pulchriōr, pulcherrimūs.

REM. 2.—A few adjectives in *īs* form the superlative by adding *issimūs* to the root of the positive; e. g.,

Faciġis ( <i>easy</i> ),	faċiljör,	faċillimta.
Diffiċilis ( <i>difficult</i> ),	diffiċiljör,	diffiċillimta.
Similis ( <i>like</i> ),	similjör,	simillimta.
Dissimilis ( <i>unlike</i> ),	dissimiljör,	dissimillimta.

**REM. 3.**—The following adjectives are quite irregular in their comparison, viz. :

Bõnūs ( <i>good</i> ),	mēliör,	optīmūs.
Mālūs ( <i>bad</i> ),	pejör,	pesīmūs.
Māgnūs ( <i>great</i> ),	majör,	maxīmūs.
Parvūs ( <i>little</i> ),	mīnör,	mīnīmūs.
Multūs ( <i>much</i> ),	plūs (pl. plūrēs, plūr).	plūrīmūs.

307. The conjunction *quām* is generally used with the comparative degree, unless one of the persons or things compared is the subject of the proposition, in which case *quām* is usually omitted, though sometimes used; e. g.,

- 1. Nihil est clēmentia dīvīniūs.**

**Nothing is more godlike than clemency.**

- 2. Eurōpă mīnōr est quām Asiā.**

Europe is smaller than Asia.

308. RULE OF SYNTAX.—The comparative degree without *quā̃m* is followed by the ablative.

**REM. 1.**—*Clementia* in the first example is in the ablative by this rule.

**REMARK 2.**—If *quām* is expressed, the following noun will be in the same case as that which precedes: thus, *Asiā*, which follows *quām* in the second example, is in the same case as *Europā*, which precedes.

309. The conjunction *quā*m before a superlative renders it intensive; e. g.,

Quām plūrīmī, { *Eng. Id.* As many as possible.  
                           { *Lat. Id.* As the most.

**Quām maximūs,**  $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{Eng. Id.} \\ \text{Lat. Id.} \end{array} \right. \left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{As great as possible.} \\ \text{The greatest possible} \\ \text{As the greatest.} \end{array} \right.$

REM.—The superlative may often be best translated by *very* instead of *most*; as, *mons altissimū*, a very high mountain.

### 310. VOCABULARY.

*Amplius*, ā, ūm, *extensive, great*.

*Argentum*, i, *silver*.

*Cēlēbēr*, bris, brē, *celebrated*.

*Cicēro*, ōnis, *Cicero*.

*Divinū*, ā, ūm, *divine*.

*Fūtūrū*, ā, ūm, *future*.

*Grāvīa*, ē, *heavy*.

*Impendēre*, to *overhang*, to *threaten*.

*Ignoratiō*, ōnis, *ignorance*.

*Mālūm*, i, *an evil*.

*Prētiosū*, ā, ūm, *valuable*.

*Quām*, *than*.

*Quām maximū*, ā, ūm, *as great as possible*.

*Rātiō*, ōnis, *reason*.

*Scientiā*, ae, *knowledge*.

*Turrīa*, is, *tower*.

### 311. Exercises.

(a) 1. *Aurum gravius est argento.* 2. *Ignoratio futurorum malorum utilior est quam scientia.* 3. *Difficillimum est iram placare.* 4. *In summis montibus<sup>1</sup> acerrimum est frigus.*

5. *Veniunt ut copias comparent.* 6. *Venit ut quam maximas<sup>2</sup> copias compararet.* 7. *Turris est altior muro.* 8. *Quid est in homine ratione divinius?* 9. *Mons altissimus impendebat.* 10. *Cicero erat orator celeberrimus.* 11. *Romani ampliores copias exspectabant.*

(b) 1. *Gold is very heavy.* 2. *Gold is more valuable than silver.* 3. *Wisdom is more valuable than gold and silver.* 4. *You are building a very high wall.* 5. *You have your wall higher than your tower.* 6. *We shall raise very large forces.* 7. *You have raised larger forces than the king himself.*

8. *We have come to raise as large forces as possible.<sup>3</sup>* 9. *Let them raise as large forces as possible.* 10. *It is<sup>4</sup> very easy to keep one's word.* 11. *It is easier to keep one's word than to appease anger.* 12. *Who was more celebrated than Cicero?* 13. *He was a very celebrated orator.*

## LESSON LV

*Compounds of Essě.—Comparison of Adverbs.—Numeral Adjectives.*

312. THE compounds of *essě* (except *possě*, to be able, which is irregular, and will be noticed hereafter) are conjugated like the simple *essě*. *prōdessě*, however (compounded of *prō*, for, and *essě*, to be), inserts *d* after *prō* in those parts which in the simple verb begin with *e*; as,

*Pres.* Prōsūm, prōdēs, prōdest, prōsūmūs, prōdestīs, prōsunt, &c.

313. The compounds of *essě* (except *possě*) are followed by the dative, as they take *only* an indirect object (82 and 643, 2); e. g.,

Mihĭ prōfuĭt.

It profited me (*did good to me*).

**REM.**—Here it is plain that *mihĭ* (to me) is not a *direct*, but only an *indirect* object.

314. Most adverbs are derived from adjectives, and are dependent upon them for their comparison: the comparative of the adverb being the same as the neuter comparative of the adjective, and the superlative being formed from that of the adjective by changing the ending *ūs* into *ē*; as,

*Adj.* Altūs,      altiōr (iūs *neut.*),      altissīmūs.

*Adv.* Altē,      altiūs,      altissīmē.

## NUMERALS.

315. Numerals comprise,

(a) Numeral adjectives, consisting of three distinct classes; viz.,

- 1) *Cardinals*, which denote simply the *number* of objects; as, *ūnūs*, one; *duō*, two, &c.
- 2) *Ordinals*, which denote the *position* of any object in a *series*; as, *prīmūs*, first; *sēcundūs*, second.
- 3) *Distributives*, which denote the *number* of objects which are taken *at a time*; as, *singulī*, one by one; *binī*, two by two.

(b) Numeral adverbs; as, *sēmēl*, once; *bīs*, twice. (See Numerals, 583.)

316. RULE OF SYNTAX.—Adverbs modify verbs, adjectives, and other adverbs; e. g., *Milēs fortītēr pūgnāt*, *the soldier fights bravely*. *Haud difficīlis*, *not difficult*.

317. (a) The first three cardinals, *ūnūs*, *duō*, and *trēs*, are declined as follows:

1. Paradigm of *ūnūs*, *one*.

N. Unūs,	unā,	unū.	Unī,	unae,	unā.
G. Unūs,	unūs,	unūs.	Unōrum,	unarum,	unōrum.
D. Unī,	unī,	unī.	Unīs,	unīs,	unīs.
A. Unū,	unām,	unū.	Unōs,	unas,	unā.
V. Unē,	unā,	unū.			
A. Unō,	unā,	unō.	Unīs,	unīs,	unīs.

REM.—The plural of *unūs*, as a numeral, is used only with nouns which have no singular.

2. Paradigms of *duō*, *two*, and *trēs*, *three*.

N. Duō,	duae,	duō.	Trēs (m. & f.),	triā.
G. Duōrum,	duarum,	duōrum.	Trium,	triū.
D. Duobūs,	duabūs,	duobūs.	Tribūs,	tribūs.
A. Duos and } duō,	duas,	duō.	Trēs,	triā.
V. Duō,	duae,	duō.	Trēs,	triā.
A. Duobūs,	duabūs,	duobūs.	Tribūs,	tribūs.

**REM.**—*Trēs* is declined like the plural of *tristis* (153).

(b) Cardinal numbers, from four to one hundred, are indeclinable; those denoting hundreds are declined like the plural of *bōnūs* (112); e. g., *dūcentī*, ae, ā, *two hundred*.

318. Ordinals are declined like *bōnūs*. Distributives are declined like the plural of *bōnūs*.

319. Whenever the same noun belongs to both members of a comparison in Latin, it is generally expressed in the first and omitted in the second; in English, however, it is expressed in the first, and represented in the second by the pronoun *that* or *those*; e. g.,

*Māris sūpērficiēs majōr est quā́m terrae.*

The sea's surface is greater than (*that*\*) of the land.

**REM.**—Hence, in translating English into Latin, *that*, *those*, after *than*, should be omitted.

### 320. VOCABULARY.

*Concertārē*, av, *to contend, quarrel.*

*Continuūs*, ā, ūm, *successive.*

*Dēcēm*, *ten.*

*Dēcīmūs*, ā, ūm, *tenth.*

*Duō*, *duae*, *duō*, *two.*

*Intēressē*, *interfu*, *to be engaged in.*

*Mārē*, *is*, *sea.*

*Obessē*, *obfu*, *to be prejudicial to.*

*Omninō*, *altogether, in all.*

*Prōdessē*, *prōfu*, *to do good, to profit.*

*Prōducērē*, *prōdux*, *to lead forward or out.*

*Quartūs*, ā, ūm, *fourth.*

*Quinquē*, *five.*

*Sūpērficiēs*, *ei*, *surface.*

*Terrā*, ae, *earth.*

### 321. Exercises.

(a) 1. *Milītes fortīter pugnant.* 2. *Romāni fortius quam hostes pugnāvērunt.* 3. *Ex eo die dies continuos quinque Caesar pro castris suas copias produxit.* 4. *Erant omnīno itinēra duo.* 5. *Caesar quam max-*

\* Here *that* stands for *the surface*.



*imas* copias comparaverat. 6. Caius, vir summo ingenio praeditus, Romae habitat. 7. Servus meus proelio interfuit. 8. Fides plurimis profuit. 9. Christianorum est' avaritiam damnare. 10. Caius multis proeliis interfuerat. 11. Terrae superficies minor est quam maria. 12. Caesar decimam legionem misit.

(b) 1. They will fight bravely. 2. You fought more bravely than the Romans. 3. The king himself was engaged in the battle. 4. He fought very bravely. 5. Ten legions were engaged in the first battle. 6. The soldiers of the tenth legion fought more bravely than those<sup>a</sup> of the fourth. 7. Anger has often *been* *prejudicial* to states. 8. It is the part of a Christian to do good to as many as possible. 9. Caesar raised the greatest forces possible. 10. Many states relying on their strength will raise forces.

## LESSON LVI.

*Passive Voice.—Third Persons of Tenses for continued Action.*

322. A TRANSITIVE verb (72) may represent its subject,

- 1) As acting upon some object; as, *Pătēr filiūm dōcēt, the father teaches his son*; it is then said to be in the *Active Voice*.
- 2) As acted upon by some other person or thing; as, *Filiūs ā pătrē dōcētūr, the son is taught by his father*; it is then said to be in the *Passive Voice*.

**REM.**—The forms which have been used in the previous exercises all belong to the active voice: we shall now consider the formation and use of the passive.

323. The third persons (singular and plural) of the tenses for continued action (190), both in the indicative and subjunctive moods, are formed in the passive voice, by adding the ending *ūr* to the corresponding forms of the active.

a) But observe that the vowel before the *t* in the singular is long, except from *ū* in the third conjugation, and from *abū* and *ebū*.

324. The following table presents the formation of the third persons of the passive in the moods and tenses just mentioned.

INDICATIVE MOOD.			
PRESENT (1st root), <i>is, are loved, &amp;c.</i>			
Conj. I.	Conj. II.	Conj. III.	Conj. IV.
Am-āt,	Mön-ēt,	Ræg-it,	Aud-īt,
Am-atūr.	Mön-etūr.	Ræg-itūr.	Aud-itūr.
Am-ant,	Mön-ent,	Ræg-unt,	Aud-iunt,
Am-antūr.	Mön-entūr.	Ræg-untūr.	Aud-iuntūr.
IMPERFECT (1st root), <i>was, were loved, &amp;c.</i>			
Am-abāt,	Mön-ebāt,	Ræg-ebāt,	Aud-iebāt,
Am-abatūr.	Mön-ebatūr.	Ræg-ebatūr.	Aud-iebatūr.
Am-abant,	Mön-ebant,	Ræg-ebant,	Aud-iebant,
Am-abantūr.	Mön-ebantūr.	Ræg-ebantūr.	Aud-iebantūr.
FUTURE (1st root), <i>shall or will be loved.</i>			
Am-abīt,	Mön-ebīt,	Ræg-ēt,	Aud-iēt,
Am-abitūr.	Mön-ebitūr.	Ræg-etūr.	Aud-ietūr.
Am-abunt,	Mön-ebunt,	Ræg-ent,	Aud-ient,
Am-abuntūr.	Mön-ebuntūr.	Ræg-entūr.	Aud-ientūr.
SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.			
PRESENT (1st root), <i>may or can be loved.</i>			
Am-ēt,	Mön-eāt,	Ræg-āt,	Aud-iāt,
Am-etūr.	Mön-eatūr.	Ræg-atūr.	Aud-iatūr.
Am-ent,	Mön-eant,	Ræg-ant,	Aud-iant,
Am-entūr.	Mön-eantūr.	Ræg-antūr.	Aud-iantūr.

## PARADIGM—continued.

IMPERFECT (1st root), <i>might, could, &amp;c., be loved.</i>			
Am-arēt,	Mōn-ērēt,	Rēg-ērēt,	Aud-irēt,
Am-arētūr.	Mōn-ērētūr.	Rēg-ērētūr.	Aud-irētūr.
Am-arent,	Mōn-erent,	Rēg-erent,	Aud-irent,
Am-arentūr.	Mōn-erentūr.	Rēg-erentūr.	Aud-irentūr.

325. RULE OF SYNTAX.—Passive verbs are followed by the same cases as the active, except the direct object, which becomes the subject of the passive (322); e. g.,

*Act.* Illi Balbūm furtī accūsant.  
They accuse Balbus of theft.

*Pass.* Balbūs āb illīs furtī accūsātūr.  
Balbus is accused of theft by them.

REM.—Observe that the agent is put in the ablative with *āb* (ab illīs); *a*, however, is often used before a consonant.

## 326. VOCABULARY.

Cōlērē, <i>a</i> , to cultivate, to practise.	Rhēnūs, <i>i</i> , Rhine, a river.
Dēmonstrārē, <i>av</i> , to show.	Rēliquūs, <i>ā, ūm</i> , the rest, the other.
Interficērē ( <i>iō</i> ), interfēc, to kill, to slay.	Sex, <i>six</i> .
Mittērē, <i>mīa</i> , to send.	Sūprā, <i>above</i> .
Prō ( <i>prep. with abl.</i> ), for, before.	Tangērē, tētīg, to touch, reach.
	Unūs, <i>ā, ūm</i> , one, single, single one.

## 327. Exercises.

(a) 1. Caius filios docet. 2. Filii a Caio docentur. 3. Legātos ad Caesārem mittent. 4. Legāti ad Caesārem mittentur. 5. Mittantūr legāti. 6. Relīquas sex legiōnes pro castris in acie constituet. 7. Caium capītis damnābunt. 8. Caius capītis damnabītur. 9. Haec civitas Rhenum tangit. 10. Haec civitas Rhenum, ut supra demonstravīmus, tangit. 11. Virtus ab omnībus colātur.

- (b) 1. Balbus will kill Caius. 2. He will be killed by Balbus. 3. Caius accuses me of theft. 4. He is accused of theft by Caius. 5. Let him be accused of bribery. 6. Let them be condemned to death. 7. They are killed in the first battle. 8. Let not the king be condemned to death. 9. The law will be broken. 10. Will not the laws be broken by wicked (men)? 11. Let not the laws of the city be broken by us.

## LESSON LVII

### *Passive Voice.—Third Persons of Tenses for Completed Action.*

328. THE tenses for completed action in the passive voice are called *Compound Forms*, and consist of the perfect participle with certain parts of the verb *esse* (299). We must accordingly notice here the formation of this participle.

329. The perfect participle is formed from what is called the *third root*, by the addition of the ending *ūs* (ă, ūm), and is declined like *bōnūs*.

330. The third root is formed from the first,

- 1) In the first, second, and fourth conjugations by the addition of the respective endings, *āt*, *īt*, and *ūt*; e. g.,

Amārē,	ām,	āmāt.
Mōnērē,	mōn,	mōnīt.
Audīrē,	aud,	audīt.

- 2) In the third conjugation, by the addition of *t*, or sometimes *s* (especially to the *t*-sounds).

- a) Any *p*-sound before *t* is *p* (i. e., *pt* or *bt* becomes *pt*).  
 b) Any *k*-sound before *t* is *c* (i. e., *ct*, *gt*, or *quit* becomes *ct*).  
 c) *D*, and sometimes *g*, is dropped before *s* (see 208, c, and 211)

Scribĕrĕ, scrib, script (*b* changed to *p*).  
 Rĕgĕrĕ, rĕg, rect (*g* changed to *c*).  
 Claudĕrĕ, claud, claus (*d* dropped).

331. The third persons singular of the perfect, pluperfect, and future perfect of the passive indicative are formed respectively from the third singular of the present, imperfect, and future\* of the indicative of the verb *essĕ* and the perfect participle; and the plural is formed in the same way, by using the plural of the participle and verb.

332. The third persons of the perfect and pluperfect passive subjunctive, are formed by a similar combination of the perfect passive participle with the third persons of the present and imperfect† subjunctive of *essĕ*.

## PARADIGM.

Conj. I.	Conj. II.	Conj. III.	Conj. IV.
Amārĕ.	Mōnĕrĕ.	Rĕgĕrĕ.	Audirĕ.
1st root, <i>ām</i> ,	1st root, <i>mōn</i> ,	1st root, <i>rĕg</i> ,	1st root, <i>aud</i> ,
3d " <i>amāt</i> .	3d " <i>mōnīt</i> .	3d " <i>rect</i> .	3d " <i>audīt</i> .
INDICATIVE MOOD.			
PERFECT ( <i>has been or was loved, &amp;c.</i> ).			
S.   Amātūs est,	Mōnītūs est,	Rectūs est,	Audītūs est,
P.   Amāti sunt.	Mōnīti sunt.	Recti sunt.	Audīti sunt.

\* Instead of the present, imperfect, and future, the perfect, pluperfect, and future perfect are sometimes used.

† Instead of the present and imperfect, the perfect and pluperfect are sometimes used.

‡ These participles, which, it must be remembered, are declined like *bōnūs* (302), are always of the same gender and number as the subject of the verb, thus:

## PARADIGM—continued.

PLUPERFECT (*had been loved, &c.*).

S.   Amatūs ērat,	Mōnītūs ērat,	Rectūs ērat,	Auditūs ērat,
P.   Amatī erant.	Mōnītī erant.	Rectī erant.	Auditī erant.

FUTURE PERFECT (*shall or will have been loved, &c.*).

S.   Amatūs erit,	Mōnītūs erit,	Rectūs erit,	Auditūs erit,
P.   Amatī erunt.	Mōnītī erunt.	Rectī erunt.	Auditī erunt.

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PERFECT (*may have been loved, &c.*).

S.   Amatūs sīt,	Mōnītūs sīt,	Rectūs sīt,	Auditūs sīt,
P.   Amatī sint.	Mōnītī sint.	Rectī sint.	Auditī sint.

PLUPERFECT (*might have been loved, &c.*).

S.   Amatūs essēt,	Mōnītūs essēt,	Rectūs essēt,	Auditūs essēt,
P.   Amatī essent.	Mōnītī essent.	Rectī essent.	Auditī essent.

## 333. VOCABULARY.

Aestimārē, av, at, <i>to value, to prize.</i>	Interficērē (ið), fēc, fect, <i>to kill.</i>
Collōquiūm, i, <i>conference, meeting.</i>	Intērīm, <i>in the mean time, meanwhile.</i>
Conspicērē (ið), conspex, <i>con-</i> <i>spect, to see, discover.</i>	Lēnis, ē, <i>mild, merciful.</i>
Dēcernērē, dēcrēv, dēcrēt, <i>to de-</i> <i>cree.</i>	Litērae, arūm (pl.), <i>letter, epistle.</i>
Dicērē, dix, dict, <i>to say, speak,</i> <i>name.</i>	Mittērē, mīs, mīss, <i>to send.</i>
Fācērē (ið), fēc, fact, <i>to do, make,</i> <i>perform.</i>	Pārārē, av, at, <i>to prepare.</i>
Frangērē, frēg, fract, <i>to break, to</i> <i>violate.</i>	Quintūs, ā, ūm, <i>fifth.</i>
	Sēcundūs, ā, ūm, <i>second.</i>
	Sententiā, ae, <i>sentiment.</i>
	Supplicatið, onis, <i>thanksgiving.</i>
	Viginti, <i>twenty.</i>

Amatūs est, *he has been loved.*Amatā est, *she has been loved.*Amatūm est, *it has been loved.*Amatī sunt, *they (men) have been loved.*Amatae sunt, *they (women) have been loved.*Amatā sunt, *they (things) have been loved.*

334. *Exercises.*

(a) 1. Supplicatio decreta est. 2. Mors omnibus parata est. 3. Dies colloquio dictus erat ex eo die quintus. 4. Multa ab Caesare in eam sententiam dicta sunt. 5. Faciam id quod est lenius et utilius. 6. Mituntur ad Caesarem a Balbo literae. 7. Interim milites legionum duarum ab hostibus conspiciebantur. 8. Milites legionum duarum conspecti sunt.

(b) 1. A thanksgiving had been decreed to Caesar. 2. Twenty soldiers of the tenth legion had been killed in the second battle. 3. Money has ever been valued very highly. 4. Has not money always been valued very highly? 5. Were not the laws broken at Athens? 6. The laws had been broken at Rome. 7. We will appoint the tenth day for a conference. 8. Messengers had been sent to the king. 9. A soldier was sent to the king.

## LESSON LVIII.

*Indicative Mood of the Passive Voice.*

335. THE persons of the tenses for continued action in the indicative and subjunctive moods may be formed from the corresponding parts of the active, as follows:

- a) The first persons, by dropping the final consonant (when there is one), and adding *r*; e. g.,  
*Amō (act.)*,      *āmōr (pass. r added)*.  
*Amābām (act.)*, *āmābār (pass. m dropped, r added)*.
- b) The second persons, by changing *s* (sing.) into *rīs* (or *rē*), and *tīs* (plur.) into *minī*; e. g.,

*Amās (act.),* *ămārīs (or rē) (pass. s changed to rīs or rē),*  
*Amătīs (act.),* *ămămīnī (pass. tīs “ “ mīnī).*

c) The third persons, by adding *ūr* (323); e. g.,

*Amăt (act.),* *ămătūr (pass. ūr added).*  
*Amant (act.),* *ămantūr (pass. ūr added).*

336. The personal endings of the tenses for continued action, in the indicative and subjunctive moods, active and passive, are as follows:

<i>Singular.</i>				<i>Plural.</i>		
	1.	2.	3.	1.	2.	3.
Act.	ŏ, m,	s,	t,	mūs,	tīs,	nt,
Pass.	r.	rīs, rē.	tūr.	mūr.	mīnī.	ntūr.

337. The first and second persons of the passive may accordingly be formed directly from the third (as already obtained), by changing its ending into those of the first and second, and observing the same principles for vowel changes as apply to the active (248); e. g.,

	3d Pers.	1st Pers.	2d Pers.
<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Amătūr,</i>	<i>ămōr (vowel changed)</i>	<i>ămārīs (rē).</i>
<i>Plur.</i>	<i>Amantūr,</i>	<i>ămāmūr,</i>	<i>ămămīnī.</i>

338. The first and second persons of the tenses for completed action may be obtained directly from the third person, by simply changing the third person of the proper tense of *esse* into the first and second; e. g.,

<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Amătūs est,</i>	<i>ămătūs sūm,</i>	<i>ămătūs ēs.</i>
<i>Plur.</i>	<i>Amătī sunt,</i>	<i>ămătī sūmūs,</i>	<i>ămătī estīs.</i>



## 339. Paradigm of the Indicative Passive.

PRESENT (1st root), <i>am loved, &amp;c.</i>			
Conj. I.	Conj. II.	Conj. III.	Conj. IV.
Am-ör,	Mön-eör,	Rög-ör,	Aud-iör,
Am-äris (rë),	Mön-eris (rë),	Rög-eris (rë),	Aud-iris (rë),
Am-ätür ;	Mön-etür ;	Rög-itür ;	Aud-itür ;
Am-amür,	Mön-emür,	Rög-imür,	Aud-imür,
Am-amini,	Mön-emini,	Rög-imini,	Aud-imini,
Am-antür.	Mön-entür.	Rög-untür.	Aud-iuntür.
IMPERFECT (1st root), <i>was loved, &amp;c.</i>			
Am-abär,	Mön-ebär,	Rög-ebär,	Aud-iebär,
Am-abäris (rë),	Mön-ebäris (rë),	Rög-ebäris (rë),	Aud-iebäris (rë),
Am-abatür ;	Mön-ebatür ;	Rög-ebatür ;	Aud-iebatür ;
Am-abamür,	Mön-ebamür,	Rög-ebamür,	Aud-iebamür,
Am-abamini,	Mön-ebamini,	Rög-ebamini,	Aud-iebamini,
Am-abantür.	Mön-ebantür.	Rög-ebantür.	Aud-iebantür.
FUTURE (1st root), <i>shall or will be loved.</i>			
Am-abör,	Mön-ebör,	Rög-är,	Aud-iär,
Am-abäris (rë),	Mön-ebäris (rë),	Rög-eris (rë),	Aud-ieris (rë),
Am-abitür ;	Mön-ebitür ;	Rög-etür ;	Aud-ietür ;
Am-abimür,	Mön-ebimür,	Rög-emür,	Aud-iemür,
Am-abimini,	Mön-ebimini,	Rög-emini,	Aud-iemini,
Am-abuntür.	Mön-ebuntür.	Rög-entür.	Aud-ientür.
PERFECT (3d root, <i>perf. part. and süm*</i> ), <i>was or have been loved.</i>			
Amat-üs süm,*	Mönit-üs süm,	Rect-üs süm,	Audit-üs süm,
Amat-üs es,	Mönit-üs es,	Rect-üs es,	Audit-üs es,
Amat-üs est ;	Mönit-üs est ;	Rect-üs est ;	Audit-üs est ;
Amat-I sümüs,	Mönit-I sümüs,	Rect-I sümüs,	Audit-I sümüs,
Amat-I estis,	Mönit-I estis,	Rect-I estis,	Audit-I estis,
Amat-I sunt.	Mönit-I sunt.	Rect-I sunt.	Audit-I sunt.
PLUPERFECT (3d root, <i>perf. part. and eram†</i> ), <i>had been loved.</i>			
Amat-üs eram,†	Mönit-üs eram,	Rect-üs eram,	Audit-üs eram,
Amat-üs eras,	Mönit-üs eras,	Rect-üs eras,	Audit-üs eras,
Amat-üs erat ;	Mönit-üs erat ;	Rect-üs erat ;	Audit-üs erat ;
Amat-I eramüs,	Mönit-I eramüs,	Rect-I eramüs,	Audit-I eramüs,
Amat-I eratüs,	Mönit-I eratüs,	Rect-I eratüs,	Audit-I eratüs,
Amat-I erant.	Mönit-I erant.	Rect-I erant.	Audit-I erant.

\* Fui is sometimes used instead of süm (331, N.).

† Fuëram is sometimes used instead of eram (331, N.).

## PARADIGM—continued.

FUTURE PERFECT (3d root, *perf. part. and* *ērō\**), *shall or will have been loved, &c.*

Amat-ūs ērō,*	Mōnīt-ūs ērō,	Rect-ūs ērō,	Audit-ūs ērō,
Amat-ūs ēris,	Mōnīt-ūs ēris,	Rect-ūs ēris,	Audit-ūs ēris,
Amat-ūs ērit;	Mōnīt-ūs ērit;	Rect-ūs ērit;	Audit-ūs ērit;
Amat-I ērimūs,	Mōnīt-I ērimūs,	Rect-I ērimūs,	Audit-I ērimūs,
Amat-I ēritis,	Mōnīt-I ēritis,	Rect-I ēritis,	Audit-I ēritis,
Amat-I ērunt.	Mōnīt-I ērunt.	Rect-I ērunt.	Audit-I ērunt.

## 340. VOCABULARY.

Accūsarē, av, at, *to accuse.*

Admōnērē, u, it, *to admonish,*  
*warn.*

Bēnē, *well.*

Carthagīniēsis, is, *a Carthagi-*  
*nian.*

Clipeūs, i, *shield.*

Damnārē, av, at, *to condemn.*

Discērē, didic, *to learn.*

Donārē, av, at, *to give, present.*

Excītārē, av, at, *to excite, arouse.*

Fmīrē, iv, it, *to finish.*

Graeci, ōrūm, *the Greeks.*

Hastā, ae, *spear.*

Laudārē, av, at, *to praise.*

Mēsis, is, m., *month.*

Mutarē, av, at, *to change.*

Nōvembēr, brīs (abl. i), *November*

Pugnārē, av, at, *to fight.*

Punīrē, iv, it, *to punish.*

Sūpérārē, av, at, *to surpass, con-*  
*quer, to go over.*

## 341. Exercises.

(a) 1. Tempōra mutantur et nos mutāmur in illis.  
2. Finītur labor agricōlae mense Novembri. 3. Vos  
laudamīni, puēri qui bene didicistis. 4. Donābor clipeo  
et hasta, si bene pro patria pugnāvēro. 5. Admonebē-  
ris, ne iram excītes. 6. Graeci a Romānis superāti  
sunt. 7. Eōdem anno Carthagīnienses et Graeci a Ro-  
mānis superāti sunt. 8. Prodiōnis accusāti estis. 9.  
Ambītus accusāti sumus.

(b) 1. You will be punished. 2. Has he not been  
punished? 3. We have been admonished not to ac-

\* Fuērō is sometimes used instead of ērō (331, N.).

cuse the king. 4. Has the queen been condemned to death? (No.) 5. Who will be condemned to death? 6. Who have been accused of treason? 7. We shall be presented with two beautiful books. 8. Have you not been presented with a very fine dog? 9. Had not the Greeks been conquered by the Romans? 10. By whom were the Romans conquered? 11. We shall be conquered by the enemy.

## LESSON LIX.

### *Subjunctive Mood of the Passive Voice.*

#### 342. PARADIGM of the Subjunctive Passive.

PRESENT (1st root), <i>may or can be loved, &amp;c.</i>			
Conj. I.	Conj. II.	Conj. III.	Conj. IV.
Am-ēr,	Mōn-eār,	Rēg-ār,	Aud-iār,
Am-ērīs (rē),	Mōn-eārīs (rē),	Rēg-ārīs (rē),	Aud-iārīs (rē),
Am-ētūr;	Mōn-eātūr;	Rēg-atūr;	Aud-iatūr;
Am-ēmūr,	Mōn-eāmūr,	Rēg-amūr,	Aud-iamūr,
Am-ēminī,	Mōn-eāminī,	Rēg-āminī,	Aud-iaminī,
Am-entūr.	Mōn-eantūr.	Rēg-antūr.	Aud-iantūr.
IMPERFECT (1st root), <i>might, could, &amp;c., be loved, &amp;c.</i>			
Am-arēr,	Mōn-ērēr,	Rēg-ērēr,	Aud-irēr,
Am-arērīs (rē),	Mōn-ērērīs (rē),	Rēg-ērērīs (rē),	Aud-irērīs (rē),
Am-arētūr;	Mōn-erētūr;	Rēg-erētūr;	Aud-irētūr;
Am-arēmūr,	Mōn-erēmūr,	Rēg-erēmūr,	Aud-irēmūr,
Am-arēminī,	Mōn-erēminī,	Rēg-erēminī,	Aud-irēminī,
Am-arentūr.	Mōn-erentūr.	Rēg-erentūr.	Aud-irentūr.
PERFECT (3d root—perf. part. and sim or fuērīm), <i>may have been loved, &amp;c.</i>			
Amat-ūs sim,	Mōnīt-ūs sim	Rect-ūs sim,	Audīt-ūs sim,
Amat-ūs sis,	Mōnīt-ūs sis,	Rect-ūs sis,	Audīt-ūs sis,
Amat-ūs sit,	Mōnīt-ūs sit;	Rect-ūs sit;	Audīt-ūs sit;
Amat-I simūs,	Mōnīt-I simūs,	Rect-I simūs,	Audīt-I simūs,
Amat-I sitis,	Mōnīt-I sitis,	Rect-I sitis,	Audīt-I sitis,
Amat-I sint.	Mōnīt-I sint.	Rect-I sint.	Audīt-I sint.

## PARADIGM—continued.

PLUPERFECT (3d root— <i>perf. part. and</i> <i>essēm</i> or <i>fuissēm</i> ), <i>might have been loved, &amp;c.</i>			
Amat-ūs essēm,	Mōnīt-ūs essēm,	Rect-ūs essēm,	Audit-ūs essēm,
Amat-ūs essēs,	Mōnīt-ūs essēs,	Rect-ūs essēs,	Audit-ūs essēs,
Amat-ūs essēt;	Mōnīt-ūs essēt;	Rect-ūs essēt;	Audit-ūs essēt;
Amat-I essēmūs	Mōnīt-I essēmūs	Rect-I essēmūs	Audit-I essēmūs
Amat-I essētis,	Mōnīt-I essētis,	Rect-I essētis,	Audit-I essētis,
Amat-I essent.	Mōnīt-I essent.	Rect-I essent.	Audit-I essent.

343. RULE OF SYNTAX.—Verbs signifying *to separate from*, or *deprive of*, are followed by the *ablative* in addition to the *accusative* of the direct object; e. g.,

Mē lūcē prīvant.

They deprive me of light.

## 344. VOCABULARY.

Adulatiō, ōnis, *flattery.*

Contra (*prep. with acc.*), *against.*

Decipere (id), *dēcēp, decept, to deceive.*

Fraudare, av, at, *to defraud.*

Fugere (id), *fug, fugit, to flee.*

Grānum, i, *grain, grain of corn.*

Imprudens, tis, *inconsiderate, imprudent.*

Nēquidēm,\* *not even.*

Pauper, ēris, *a poor man.*

Perfugium, i, *refuge.*

Praebere, ū, it, *to furnish, offer.*

Praeparare, av, at, *to prepare.*

Princeps, principis, *chief, leader.*

Privare, av, at, *to deprive.*

Sancire, sanx, sanct, *to enact, confirm.*

Senectus, otis, *f. old age.*

Servare, av, at, *to observe, keep.*

Speciosus, ō, ūm, *plausible, specious.*

Tam, so.

Verbum, i, *word.*

Vivere, vix, vict, *to live.*

## 345. Exercises.

(a) 1. Non sum tam imprudens ut verbis speciosis decipiar.<sup>1</sup> 2. Bonae leges a principibus sanciantur. 3.

\* The emphatic word is generally written between the two parts of this word; thus, *nē grānō quidēm*, not even a grain.

Praeparētur animus contra omnia. 4. Praebeātur senectūti perfugium. 5. Ne me luce privētis. 6. Ne grano quidem uno paupēres fraudētis. 7. Paupēres ne grano quidem uno fraudentur. 8. Invitus<sup>s</sup> te furti accusaverat. 9. Caius, vir summo ingenio, Romae vivit.

(b) 1. Be not deceived 2. Let him not be deceived. 3. I was so imprudent as to be deceived (that I was deceived) by specious words. 4. You will not be so imprudent as to be deceived by flattery. 5. Let all good laws be observed by the citizens. 6. The boys fled that they might not be punished. 7. Do not defraud the poor. 8. Let not the poor be defrauded. 9. May they never be defrauded by you. 10. You shall never be defrauded of even a single grain by us.

## LESSON LX.

### *Imperative Mood — Active and Passive.*

346. THE *Imperative* mood expresses a *command*, an *exhortation*, or *entreaty*. It is used only in the present tense, and in the second and third persons.

347. If a negative accompanies the imperative, it must be expressed in Latin by *nē* (instead of *nōn*); e. g.,

*Nē peccātē, do not sin.*

REM.—It will be remembered that a command or exhortation may also be expressed by the present subjunctive (231).

348. The imperative is formed from the first root by the addition of the following endings:

ACTIVE.				
	Conj. I.	Conj. II.	Conj. III.	Conj. IV.
S. 2.	a or atō,	ē or etō,	ē or itō,	I or itō.
3.	atō,	etō,	itō,	itō.
P. 2.	atē, atotē,	etē, etotē,	itē, itotē,	itē, itotē.
3.	antō,	entō,	untō,	iuntō.
PASSIVE.				
S. 2.	arē or atōr,	ērē or etōr,	ērē or itōr,	Irē or itōr.
3.	atōr,	etōr,	itōr,	itōr.
P. 2.	amini,	ēmini,	imini,	imini.
3.	antōr,	entōr,	untōr,	iuntōr.

## 349. Paradigm of the Imperative Mood.

CONJUGATION I.	
<i>Active.</i>	<i>Passive.</i>
S. 2. Am-a or ām-atō, <i>love thou, do thou love.</i>	Am-arē or ām-atōr, <i>be thou loved.</i>
3. Am-atō, <i>let him love.</i>	Am-atōr, <i>let him be loved.</i>
P. 2. Am-ātē or ām-atotē, <i>love ye, do ye love.</i>	Am-amini, <i>be ye loved.</i>
3. Am-antō, <i>let them love.</i>	Am-antōr, <i>let them be loved.</i>
CONJUGATION II.	
S. 2. Mōn-ē or mōn-etō, <i>advise thou.</i>	Mōn-ērē or mōn-etōr, <i>be thou advised.</i>
3. Mōn-etō, <i>let him advise.</i>	Mōn-etōr, <i>let him be advised.</i>
P. 2. Mōn-ētē or mōn-etōtē, <i>advise ye</i>	Mōn-ēmini, <i>be ye advised.</i>
3. Mōn-entō, <i>let them advise.</i>	Mōn-entōr, <i>let them be advised.</i>
CONJUGATION III.	
S. 2. Rēg-ē or rēg-itō, <i>rule thou.</i>	Rēg-ērē or rēg-itōr, <i>be thou ruled.</i>
3. Rēg-itō, <i>let him rule.</i>	Rēg-itōr, <i>let him be ruled.</i>
P. 2. Rēg-itē or rēg-itōtē, <i>rule ye.</i>	Rēg-imini, <i>be ye ruled.</i>
3. Rēg-untō, <i>let them rule.</i>	Rēg-untōr, <i>let them be ruled.</i>
CONJUGATION IV.	
S. 2. Aud-I or aud-itō, <i>hear thou.</i>	Aud-Irē or aud-itōr, <i>be thou heard.</i>
3. Aud-itō, <i>let him hear.</i>	Aud-itōr, <i>let him be heard.</i>
P. 2. Aud-itē or aud-itōtē, <i>hear ye.</i>	Aud-imini, <i>be ye heard.</i>
3. Aud-iuntō, <i>let them hear.</i>	Aud-iuntōr, <i>let them be heard.</i>

REM.—The second forms of the imperative (*to, tote, nto, &c.*) are used in laws, rules, and other formal expressions of duty or permission.

### 350. VOCABULARY.

Ac, <i>and.</i>	Exorārē, av, at, <i>to supplicate.</i>
Américānus, ā, ūm, <i>American.</i>	Libēri, ōrūm ( <i>pl.</i> ), <i>children.</i>
Audirē. IV, it, <i>to hear, listen to.</i>	Nōmēn, īnis, <i>name.</i>
Castigarē, av, at, <i>to chastise.</i>	Perniciēs, ei, <i>destruction.</i>
Cōgitārē, av, at, <i>to think about.</i>	Pōpūlus, i, <i>people.</i>
Compescērē, compescu, <i>to restrain, repress.</i>	Quē ( <i>joined to the word u connects</i> ), <i>and.</i>
Conjux, ūgia, m. or f., <i>husband, wife, spouse.</i>	Ruērē, ru, ruit ( <i>or rūt</i> ), <i>to rush.</i>
Conservārē, av, at, <i>to preserve.</i>	Sālūs, utis, f., <i>safety.</i>
Consiliūm, i, <i>advice, instruction.</i>	Scribērē, scrips, script, <i>to write.</i>
Corrumpērē, corrup, corrupt, <i>to mislead, corrupt.</i>	Sēpēlirē, iv, sēpult, <i>to bury, inter.</i>
Dēfendērē, dēfend, dēfens, <i>to defend.</i>	Tondērē, tōtōnd, tons, <i>to shear, shave.</i>
Dēglubērē, deglups, deglupt, <i>to flay, to skin.</i>	Vestēr, trā, trūm, <i>your.</i>
	Vidērē, vid, vis, <i>to see.</i>

### 351. Exercises.

(a) 1. Caium ne accūsa. 2. Balbum ne accusāte. 3. Tonde oves: ne deglūbe. 4. Tondēte oves: ne deglubīte. 5. Audi, puer, consilia sapientium. 6. Audīte, pueri, consilia sapientium, et vidēte, ne in perniciem ruātis. 7. Exorāre, mi (115) pater, compesce iram. 8. Nemo in urbe sepelītor. 9. Lex erat his verbis scripta: "Nemo in urbe sepelītor." 10. Audi, mi fili (103, N.), ab imprōbis ne corrumpītor. 11. De vobis ac de libēris vestris cogitāte. 12. Conservāte vos, conjūges, libēros, fortunasque vestras. 13. Populi Romani nomen salutemque defendite.

(b) 1. Do not accuse me of theft. 2. Let him shear the sheep. 3. Let no one break the laws. 4. Let the laws be observed. 5. Do not chastise the slave. 6.

Let not the slaves be chastised. 7. Let him be buried in the city. 8. Defend (ye) the name and the safety of the American people. 9. Defend (ye) the American eagle. 10. Let the American eagle be defended by all. 11. Boys, listen to (hear) the instruction of your fathers. 12. Do not break your word.

## LESSON LXI.

### *Infinitive Mood.*

352. THE *Infinitive* mood (as already stated, 9) represents the simple meaning of the verb without reference to person or number.

353. The infinitive mood has in each voice three tenses; viz., the *present*, *perfect*, and *future*.

REM.—We must here give the formation of the *supine* and *future act. participle* (both of which we shall soon notice), as they are used in forming the future infinitive.

354. The *future active participle* and the *active supine* are formed from the third root; the former by the addition of *ūrūs* (ă, ūm); as, *ămăt* (3d root), *ămătūrūs* (ă, ūm); and the latter by the addition of *ŭm*; as, *ămăt*, *ămătŭm*.

355. The infinitives are formed as follows:

- 1) The present, from the first root by the addition of the endings:

	Conj. I.	Conj. II.	Conj. III.	Conj. IV.
Act.	ărě,	ěrě,	ěrě,	irě.
Pass.	ărī,	ērī,	ī,	irī.

- 2) The perfect active, from the second root by



the addition of the ending *issē*; and the *perfect passive* from the perfect participle and *essē*.

- 8) The future active, from the *future active participle* and *essē*; and the *future passive* from the *supine* and *īrī*.

### 356. Paradigm of the Infinitive Mood.

CONJ. I.			
	<i>Active.</i>		<i>Passive.</i>
Pres.	Am-āre, to love.	Am-ari,	to be loved.
Perf.	Amav-issē, to have loved.	Amāt-ūs essē,	to have been loved.
Fut.	Amāt-ūrūs essē, to be about to love.	Amāt-ūm irī,	to be about to be loved.
CONJ. II.			
Pres.	Mōn-erē, to advise.	Mōn-eri,	to be advised.
Perf.	Mōnu-issē, to have advised.	Mōnīt-ūs essē,	to have been advised.
Fut.	Mōnīt-ūrūs essē, to be about to advise.	Mōnīt-ūm irī,	to be about to be advised.
CONJ. III.			
Pres.	Rēg-ērē, to rule.	Rēg-i,	to be ruled.
Perf.	Rex-issē, to have ruled.	Rect-ūs essē,	to have been ruled.
Fut.	Rect-ūrūs essē, to be about to rule.	Rect-ūm irī,	to be about to be ruled.
CONJ. IV.			
Pres.	Aud-irē, to hear.	Aud-iri,	to be heard.
Perf.	Audiv-issē, to have heard.	Audit-ūs essē,	to have been heard.
Fut.	Audit-ūrūs essē, to be about to hear.	Audit-ūm irī,	to be about to be heard.

357. RULE OF SYNTAX.—The subject of an infinitive must be put in the accusative; e. g.,

Vidēt tē essē beātūm.

He sees that you are happy.

REM. 1.—The accusative *se* is the subject of *esse*.

REM. 2.—The use of the infinitive, as the subject of a finite verb, has been already considered (184).

358. RULE OF SYNTAX.—The infinitive, either alone or with other words connected with it, may depend upon another verb; e. g.,

1. Cūpīt sǎpĕrĕ.

He desires *to be wise*.

2. Spĕrāt sē victūrūm esse.

He hopes *that he shall live*.

REM. 1.—In most cases the infinitive is really the direct object of the verb on which it depends; thus *sǎpĕrĕ* (to be wise) is really the object desired. He desires (what?) *to be wise*.

REM. 2.—In the compound infinitives (i. e., those which are made up of two words) the participles must *agree* in gender, number, and case with the subject of those infinitives; but of course the *supine* remains *unaltered*. Thus, in the second example, *victūrūm* is in the accusative masculine singular, to agree with *sē*, the subject of the infinitive.

359. Two or more English sentences, joined by the conjunction *that*, are often made one Latin sentence, by leaving out the conjunction, and turning the following nominative into the accusative and the verb into the infinitive.

### 360. VOCABULARY.

Certūs, ō, ūm, *certain*.

Clēmēns, tis, *mild, merciful*.

Convertĕrĕ, convers, *to turn, convert*.

Cūpĕrĕ (īd), cūpiv (or i), cūpit, *to desire*.

Dividĕrĕ, divīs, divīs, *to divide*.

Dōcĕrĕ, u, doct, *to teach*.

Oculūs, i, *eye*.

Parā, partīs, part.

Peccārĕ, av, at, *to sin*.

Praedā, ae, booty.

Sǎpĕrĕ, iv, i, or u, *to be wise*.

Spĕrārĕ, av, at, *to hope*.

Timĕrĕ, ū, *to fear*.

Trēs, triā, *three*.

Vendĕrĕ, vendid, vendit, *to sell*.

361. *Exercises.*

(a) 1. Balbi est omnia in tres partes dividere. 2. Nunquam utile est peccare. 3. Omnes homines beati esse cupiunt. 4. Cupio me esse clementem. 5. Docemus pueros ut sapere discant. 6. Video in me omnium vestrum oculos esse conversos. 7. Sperant se victuros esse. 8. Certum est Balbum patriam auro vendidisse.

(b) 1. He is said to have divided the booty into ten parts. 2. They are said to have lived at Rome five years. 3. We desire to be happy. 4. You all desire to be happy. 5. He is said to have been very happy. 6. He says, that all eyes were turned upon him. 7. He sees that you are happy. 8. It is certain, that a Christian does not fear death. 9. It is certain, that the boy has heard a voice. 10. It is certain, that Balbus will value my labors *very highly*.<sup>2</sup> 11. It is certain, that the avaricious value money *very highly*. 12. It is certain, that Balbus will be condemned *to death*.

## LESSON LXII.

*Participles.—Ablative Absolute.*

362. THE participle is that part of the verb which has the form and inflection of an adjective.

363. A verb may have four participles, viz.: the *present* and *future* in the *active* voice, and the *perfect* and *future* in the *passive*.

364. The participles are formed as follows:

- 1) The present active in the four conjugations, by the addition of the respective endings:

- |      |      |      |       |
|------|------|------|-------|
| 1.   | 2.   | 3.   | 4.    |
| ans, | ens, | ens, | iens, |
- to the first root; as,  
*Amans* (loving), *mōnens*, *rēgens*, *audiens*.
- 2) The future active, from the third root, by the addition of the ending *ūrūs* (*ā*, *ūm*) (302); as,  
*Amātūrūs* (about to love), *mōnītūrūs*, *rectūrūs*, *audītūrūs*.
- 3) The perfect passive, from the third root, by the addition of the ending *ūs* (*ā*, *ūm*) (302); as,  
*Amātūs* (loved), *mōnītūs*, *rectūs*, *audītūs*.
- 4) The future passive in the four conjugations, by the addition of the respective endings :

- |        |        |        |         |
|--------|--------|--------|---------|
| 1.     | 2.     | 3.     | 4.      |
| andūs, | endūs, | endūs, | iendūs, |
- to the first root; as,

*Amandūs* (deserving to be loved), *mōnendūs*, *rēgendūs*, *audiendūs*.

365. The participle in *ns* answers to the English participle in *ing*.  
 The participle in *us* answers to the English participle in *ed*, *en*, *t*, &c.

The participle in *dus* must be translated by the *present infinitive passive*, as used with a substantive. (A termination *to be desired*; a crime *to be abhorred*.)

The participle in *rus* must be translated by '*about to* (write)'; or, '*going to* (write).'

366. RULE OF SYNTAX.—A noun and a participle standing grammatically independent of the rest of the sentence are put in the ablative (called *absolute*); e. g.,

Caesār, victīs hostībūs,	{	<i>Eng. Id.</i> , Caesar having conquered his enemies. <i>Lat. Id.</i> Caesar his enemies being conquered.
-----------------------------	---	---

367. The want of a participle for the perfect active is supplied by the *ablative absolute*, or by *quum* (*when*) with the *perfect* or *pluperfect* subjunctive. The *perfect* subjunctive must be used, if the other verb is in the *present* tense; e. g.,

Caesar having conquered his enemies, { Caesar, quum vīcissēt hostēs,  
Caesar, victis hostibus.

### 368. VOCABULARY.

Aequitas, atia, *equity, justice.*

Angustiae, arum (pl.), *a narrow pass, defile.*

Cānērē, cecin, *cant, to sing.*

Compellērē, compul, *compuls, to drive, compel.*

Constituērē, constitu, *constituit, to arrange, constitute.*

Deprēhendērē, deprēhend, *deprēhens, to seize, catch.*

Dēvincērē, devic, *devict, to conquer.*

Exclamārē, av, at, *to cry out, exclaim.*

Immergērē, immers, *immers, to plunge into, immerse.*

Ludērē, lus, lūs, *to play, to sport.*

Mānērē, mans, mans, *to remain.*

Quum, *when.*

Viōlārē, av, at, *to violate, to break.*

### 369. Exercises.

(a) 1. In via ludentem puerum vidi. 2. In via ludentes deprehendimus. 3. Caesar fugientes hostes in angustias compulit. 4. Fracto pueri brachio, Romae manēbit. 5. Violātis patriae legibus, vita indignus est. 6. Puer, quum manus in aquam immersisset, exclamāvit. 7. Caesar, quum devicisset hostes, summa aequitate res constituit.

(b) 1. Did you hear the nightingales singing in the grove? 2. I saw the fishes swimming on the surface (top) of the water.<sup>10</sup> 3. Did you see the girls playing in the garden? 4. Have you not seen the boys playing in the street? 5. Caius, having broken his arm, remained at Rome. 6. The slave, having killed his

master, was condemned. 7. They say that the slave has been condemned to death. 8. You are said to have been accused of treason. 9. Having violated the laws of the state, we shall all be punished.

## LESSON LXIII.

### *Gerunds and Supines.*

370. THE *Gerund* is that part of the verb which corresponds to the participial substantive in *ing* in English.

371. The gerund is really a verbal substantive of the neuter gender, used only in the genitive, dative, accusative, and ablative singular.

REM.—The infinitive supplies the place of the nominative of the gerund, as that is sometimes used as the subject of a verb (184).

372. The genitive of the gerund ends, in the four conjugations, respectively in

1.	2.	3.	4.
andī,	endī,	endī,	iendī.

*Amandī* (of loving), *mōnendī*, *rēgendī*, *audiendī*.

373. The gerund is declined in the parts in use precisely like a neuter noun of the second declension; e. g.,

<i>Gen.</i>	<i>Amandī,</i>	<i>of loving.</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>Amandō,</i>	<i>to or for loving.</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>Amandūm,</i>	<i>loving.</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>Amandō,</i>	<i>by loving.</i>

REM.—The gerund, being a part of the verb, of course governs the same case.

374. RULE OF SYNTAX.—The gerund is governed like a noun in the same case; e. g.,

Intēr lūdendūm.

(*During playing.*)

While they are playing.

375. The Latin verb has two *supines*; one in *ūm* and one in *ū*.

376. The *supines* are formed by adding the above endings to the third root; e. g.,

Amātūm (to love), mōnītūm, rectūm, audītūm.

Amātū (to be loved), mōnītū, rectū, audītū.

REM.—The supine in *ūm* is generally Englished by the present infinitive active, and that in *ū* by the present infinitive passive, though it may be translated by the active, if that gives better English. Both supines are really active; thus, *factūm* means *for doing*, and *factū* in *doing*.

377. RULE OF SYNTAX.—The supine in *ūm* follows verbs of motion, to express the purpose or object of that motion; e. g.,

Mittīt lēgātōs pācēm pētītūm.

He sends ambassadors *to sue for peace*.

378. RULE OF SYNTAX.—The supine in *ū* is used after adjectives signifying *good* or *bad*, *easy* or *difficult*, *agreeable* or *disagreeable*, &c.; e. g.,

Difficīlē est dictū.

It is difficult *to say*.

379. RULE OF SYNTAX.—Many adjectives signifying *desire*, *knowledge*, *skill*, *participation*, *recollection*, *fulness*,

and the *like*, together with their contraries, govern the genitive; e. g.,

·Cūpīdūs laudīs, *desirous of praise*.

### 380. VOCABULARY.

Aquari, at, *to bring water*.

Aquatūm (*sup.*), *to bring water*.

Auxiliū, i, *aid, help*.

Cūpīdūs, ā, ūm, *desirous, desirous of*.

Jucundūs, ā, ūm, *pleasant, delightful*.

Mirabilis, ē, *wonderful*.

Pabulāri, at, *to forage*.

Pabulātūm (*sup.*), *to forage*.

Pētērē, iv (i), it, *to seek, ask, sue for*.

Rōgārē, av, at, *to ask*.

Sumptūs, ūs, *expense*.

Sūpervacuūs, ā, ūm, *unnecessary*.

Vēnārī, at, *to hunt*.

Vēnatūm (*sup.*), *to hunt*.

Vitarē, av, at, *to avoid, shun*.

### 381. Exercises.

(a) 1. Cupīdi sunt docendi. 2. Num puēri ludendo discunt? 3. Puer cupīdus est discendi. 4. Misērunt legātos pacem petītum. 5. Legātos ad Caesārem mittunt rogātum auxiliū. 6. Jucundum est audītū. 7. Diffīcile est factū. 8. Mittantur legātī pacem petītum. 9. Quantum tempōris ludendo amisērunt! 10. Multum tempōris ludendo amittēmus.

(b) 1. He learns by teaching. 2. Have we not learned by teaching? 3. Is there not much pleasure in learning? 4. How much pleasure (there) is in learning! 5. There is much pleasure in teaching. 6. Do not boys learn while playing? 7. The boy has been sent *a hunting*. 8. Caesar has sent the fourth legion *to forage*. 9. Ambassadors have been sent *to ask* peace. 10. It is difficult *to say*. 11. It is wonderful *to tell*. 12. Has not Caesar sent the fourth legion *to bring water*?



## LESSON LXIV.

*Participle in dus.*

382. INSTEAD of a gerund governing its case, we may use a *participle in dus* agreeing with a noun; e. g.,

(*Eng.*) The intention of *writing* a letter.

(*Lat.*) Consiliūm *scribendi* epistolām.

(or) Consiliūm *scribendae* epistolae.\*

383. Thus, then, *epistolā scribendā* may be declined throughout.

*Sing.*

N. Epistōla scribenda, *a letter to be written.*

G. epistolae scribendae, *of writing a letter.*

D. epistolae scribendae, *to or for writing a letter.*

Acc. (ad) epistolam scribendam, *to write a letter (or for writing a letter).*

Abl. epistolā scribendā, *by writing a letter*

*Plur.*

N. epistolae scribendae, *letters to be written.*

G. epistolārum scribendarum, *of writing letters.*

D. epistolis scribendis, *to or for writing letters.*

Acc. (ad) epistolas scribendas, *to write letters (or for writing letters).*

Abl. epistolis scribendis, *by writing letters.*

## 384. VOCABULARY.

Adjumentum, I, *aid, help.*

Arripere (īd), arripu, arrept, *to snatch, seize.*

Athēnae, arum, *Athens, city of Greece.*

Augere, aux, auct, *to increase.*

---

\* The real meaning of 'consilium scribendae epistolae' is 'the design of (= about) a letter to be written.'

Cūpidiōr, ōis (*comp.*), *fonder*.  
 Elēgantiā, ae, *elegance*.  
 Emērē, em, empt, *to buy, purchase*.  
 Exercērē, exercu, exercīt, *to practise, exercise*.  
 Gērērē, gess, gest, *to carry on, to wage*.  
 Hāberē, ū, it, *to have, enjoy*.

Lēgērē, lēg, lect, *to read*.  
 Obtinērē, obtinu, obtent, *to obtain, acquire*.  
 Occasiō, ōnīa, *opportunity*.  
 Pēritūs, ā, ūm, *skilful, skilled in*.  
 Rēgērē, rex, reet, *to govern, rule*.  
 Stūdiōsūs, ā, ūm, *very fond*.

385. *Exercises.*

(a) 1. Balbus omnem occasiōnem *exercendae virtūtis* arripiēbat. 2. Multi cupidiōres sunt *emendōrum librōrum* quam *legendōrum*. 3. Caesar belli gerendi perītus fuit. 4. Omnis occasio *exercendae virtūtis* arripiātur. 5. Certum est, omnem occasiōnem *exercendae virtūtis* a Christiāno arripi. 6. Omnis dicendi *elegantia* augētur *legendis oratoribus* et *poētis*. 7. Homo magna habet *adjumenta* ad *obtinendam sapientiam*.

(b) 1. The boy is very fond of *writing letters*. 2. He was very fond of hearing the orator. 3. Seize every opportunity of *practising virtue*. 4. The Romans were fond of *waging war*. 5. Ambassadors are sent *to beg* for peace. 6. Ambassadors will be sent to sue for peace. 7. The law will be broken. 8. Will not the laws be broken by wicked (men)? 9. It is certain, that the laws are broken by the wicked at Rome and at Athens. 10. Let your word be kept. 11. Let the state be ruled by the wise.

## LESSON LXV.

*First Conjugation.*

## 386. VOCABULARY.\*

Adeo, so, in such a manner.

Cantarē, av, at, to sing.

Certamēn, inia, contest.

Crabrō, ōnis, wasp.

Intēr, between, during.

Intērambūlandūm, while walking.

Irritarē, av, at, to trouble, irritate.

Ornarē, av, at, to adorn.

Robustūa, ā, ūm, robust, strong.

Spōliarē, av, at, to rob of, despoil.

387. *Exercises.*

(a) 1. Sapientis est supervacuus sumptus vitāre. 2. Crabrōnem ne irrītes (232). 3. Crabrōnem ne irritāte (347). 4. Irritasne crabrōnes? 5. Nonne eam legem ipse violābas? 6. Inter ambulandum cantābant. 7. Hic miles est adeo robustus, ut nemo eum in certamīne superavērit. 8. Prata et agri pulcherrimis floribus ornantur. 9. Oculisne me, iudices, privabitis? 10. Violātis patriae legibus (366), mea me laude spoliātis. 11. Num mea laude spoliābor?

(b) 1. It is the duty of a Christian<sup>7</sup> to avoid unnecessary expense. 2. Did they not themselves violate those laws? 3. Let not the laws be violated by Christians. 4. We hope we shall never be accused. 5. Have you ever been accused? 6. Let your laws be kept. 7. Is it not certain that the laws are broken by the wicked? 8. Did they not condemn him to death? 9. Balbus is so strong that he has never been surpassed in a contest. 10. Have I not been deprived of my eyes?

---

\* Preparatory to this exercise, the pupil is expected to review thoroughly the Paradigm of the First Conjugation. See 588.

## LESSON LXVI.

*Second Conjugation.*

388. RULE OF SYNTAX.—Many verbs which signify *to ask, demand, or teach*, together with *cēlārē* (*to conceal*), take two objects, one of a person and another of a thing; e. g.,

Caesār frūmentūm Aeduōs flāgītābāt.

Caesar demanded corn of the Aedui.

## 389. VOCABULARY.\*

Divitiācūs, i, *Divitiacus*, man's name.

Impērārē, av, at, *to command*, give commands.

Jūbērē, juss, juss, *to direct*, order.

Mordērē, mōmord, mors, *to bite*.

Parērē, ū, it, *to obey*.

Propensūs, ū, ūm, *inclined to*.

Sanārē, av, at, *to cure, reform*.

Tācērē, ū, it, *to be silent, to pass over in silence*.

## 390. Exercises.

(a) 1. Hostes non timēmus. 2. Nonne respondēbis? 3. Docendo docēmur. 4. Ego multa tacui: multa sanāvi. 5. Ad docendum propensi sunt. 6. Pareat animus: non impēret. 7. Caesar Divitiācum ad se vocāri jubet. 8. Te haec docēbo. 9. Puēros haec docēbant. 10. Puēri haec docti sunt. 11. Canis puērum momordit. 12. Nonne oves totondistis?

(b) 1. Do you not fear the enemy? 2. Do not fear the enemy. 3. Who taught the boy this? 4. Did you teach those boys this? 5. Who sheared this sheep? 6. Let no one shear my sheep. 7. Did the dog bite you? 8. I have been bitten by your dog. 9. We

---

\* The pupil will, of course, review Paradigm. See 589.

have ourselves been taught by teaching. 10. Did you not laugh at your father?

## LESSON LXVII.

### *Third Conjugation.*

891. RULE OF SYNTAX.—After verbs of motion :

- 1) The place to which the motion is directed, if a town or small island, is put in the accusative without a preposition ; e. g.,

*Rōmām vēnīrē, to come to Rome.*

- 2) The place from which the motion proceeds, if a town or small island, is put in the ablative without a preposition ; e. g.,

*Rōmā vēnīrē, to come from Rome.*

REM.—Before other names of places the preposition is generally expressed.

(Review Paradigm 590.)

### 892. VOCABULARY.

*Agērē, ēg, act, to do, act.*

*Committērē, mīa, miss, to engage.*

*Cūrārē, av, at, to attend to, cause, &c.*

*Dārē, dēd, dāt, to give.*

*Equēs, itīs, horseman.*

*Gratiā, ae, favor ; pl., thanks.*

*Gratias āgērē, to give thanks, to thank.*

*Injuriā, ae, injury, wrong done.*

*Pons, tīs, m., bridge.*

*Responsū, i, answer, reply.*

*Tēgērē, tex, tect, to cover, conceal.*

*Unquām, ever.*

### 893. Exercises.

(a) 1. Caium Athēnas mittat. 2. Servum Athēnas miserat. 3. Mihi gratias egistis. 4. Sicut vixi, ut

nemo unquam me ullius injuriae accusaverit. 5. Pontem in flumine faciendum curavit. 6. Equites proelium committunt. 7. Hoc responso dato, equites proelium committunt. 8. Certum est, Caesarem belli gerendi peritum fuisse. 9. Legatos ad eum miserunt. 10. Omnis dicendi elegantia augetur legendis oratoribus (382).

(b) 1. He has sent an ambassador to Rome. 2. Ambassadors will be sent to sue for (377) peace. 3. Ambassadors have been sent to sue for peace. 4. He has never been sent to Athens. 5. He is said to have been very desirous of (379) learning. 6. They say that you are desirous of engaging battle. 7. They are said to be skilful in waging war. 8. Having made this reply they engage battle. 9. It is disgraceful to cover a fault with a lie.

## LESSON LXVIII.

### *Fourth Conjugation.*

(Review Paradigm 591.)

### 394. VOCABULARY.

Antea, *before.*

Captivus, a, um, *captive.*

Claudere, claus, claus, *to shut.*

Fundus, i, *estate, farm.*

Hannibal, alis, *Hannibal.*

Intra (*prep. with accus.*), *within.*

Italia, ae, *Italy.*

Praeceptum, i, *precept, instruction.*

Praesens, tis, *present.*

Succurrere, curr, curs, *to aid, succor.*

Tarentum, i, *Tarentum, a town in Italy.*

Vetustus, a, um, *old, ancient.*

### 395. Exercises.

(a) 1. Haec ex captivis audiverat. 2. Venit sacerdos ut aram sanguine aspergat. 3. Miles Tarentum

vēnit. 4. Hunc audiēbant antea, nunc praesentem vident. 5. Fundo in tres partes diviso, Romam vēnit. 6. Veni ut mihi succurras. 7. Hannibal, Alpibus superatis, in Italiam venit. 8. Lex erat Romanorum vetustissima, ne quis intra urbem sepelirētur.

(b) 1. Have not the boys been sent to bring water? 2. They have come to shut the gates of the city. 3. Will you come to shut the gates? 4. Let them come to shut the gates. 5. Let all come to hear the instructions of the wise. 6. Let the instructions of the wise be always heard. 7. By hearing the instructions of the wise we shall learn wisdom. 8. He has buried his father. 9. Has he buried him within the city? 10. Do not bury him within the city.

## LESSON LXIX.

### *Verbs with the Dative.—Indirect Object.*

396. THE use of the *indirect object* has been already illustrated; but as some verbs in Latin are followed by the dative (the case of the indirect object) where we use no preposition, and should therefore be led by the English to put the accusative, it may be well to notice a few instances of this. The verbs of this class are principally such as signify:

*To command or obey, please or displease, favor or injure, serve or resist, together with to indulge, spare, pardon, envy, believe, persuade.\**

\* See 643

REM. 1.—*Văcăre* (to have leisure) and *năbăre* (to marry, used of females), also take the dative.

REM. 2.—It will be readily perceived, in most cases, that the dative after the above verbs is really the *indirect* and not the *direct* object; thus, *impărăre* (to command) means to give a command *to*; *plăcere* (to please) to give pleasure *to*; and so of most, if not all, of the others.

### 397. VOCABULARY.

*Ars, artis, art.*

*Beate, happily.*

*Crêdere, crêdid, crêdit, to believe, put confidence in.*

*Cupîditas, atis, desire, passion.*

*Făverê, fav, faut, to favor.*

*Ignoscêre, nōv, nôt, to pardon.*

*Indulgerê, indulg, indult, to indulge.*

*Invidêre, vid, vis, to envy.*

*Nôcêre, nôcu, nôcit, to hurt.*

*Parcêre, pēperc, parcit, to spare.*

*Persuadêre, persuās, persuās, to persuade.*

*Rêsistêre, stit, stit, to resist.*

*Servirê, iv (i), it, to serve, be a slave to.*

*Stîdêre, u, to study, strive for.*

*Văcărê, av, at, to have leisure for.*

### 398. Exercises.

(a) 1. *Irae multos annos serviēras.* 2. *Regendis animi cupiditatibus studeāmus.* 3. *Caesar legendo libro vacābit.* 4. *Christiāni est patriae suae legibus parēre.* 5. *Ignosce mihi.* 6. *Nemo tibi credet.* 7. *Imprōbus patriae legibus non parēbit.* 8. *Num legibus parēbunt imprōbi, violāta fide?* 9. *Discant Christiāni animis suis imperāre.* 10. *Sapientia ars est bene beateque vivendi.*

(b) 1. *I would have favored Caius.* 2. *You would have resisted anger.* 3. *You (pl.) would have hurt nobody.* 4. *We would have indulged the desire.* 5. *I was hurting myself.* 6. *You were hurting me.* 7. *You had hurt Caius.* 8. *You had been-the-slave-of passion.* 9. *Do not be-the-slave-of passion.* 10. *You were sparing the enemies.* 11. *It is the duty of a Christian to envy nobody.* 12. *Do not envy the good.* 13.



It is pleasant to succor the miserable. 14. Nobody will believe the wicked. 15. Death spares nobody. 16. They had spared the gate of the city. 17. He spares himself in the winter. 18. He does not spare even himself. 19. You will never have persuaded me. 20. Let the Christian learn to command himself.

## LESSON LXX.

### *Deponent Verbs.*

399. A DEPONENT verb is one which has a *passive form*, but an *active meaning*.

400. *Deponent* verbs have all the four participles; e. g.,

- 1) Loquens, *speaking*; 2) locūtus, *having spoken*;
- 3) locutūrus, *about to speak*; 4) loquendus, *to be spoken*.

REM.—The past participle of a deponent verb is the participle of the *perfect active*, which other verbs do not have.

401. RULE OF SYNTAX.—The deponent verbs, *ūtōr*, *fruōr*, *fungōr*, *potiōr*, *vescōr*, *dignōr*, and their compounds, usually take the *ablative*; e. g.,

Vōluptatē fruītūr, *he enjoys pleasure*.

REM.—The ablative after the above is not strictly the object, but the *ablative of means*; thus, *to enjoy pleasure*, is *to be delighted with pleasure*.

402. RULE OF SYNTAX.—Verbs of *reminding*, *remembering*, *forgetting*, and *pitying*, usually take the *genitive* of the object remembered, forgotten, &c.; e. g.,

Rēmīniscōr bēnēficiū tuī, *I remember your kindness*.

REM.—Most of these verbs, except those signifying to pity, sometimes take the accusative instead of the genitive.

## 403. VOCABULARY.

Aliquandō, *some time or other.*  
 Beneficiū, *I, benefit.*  
 Flagitiū, *I, crime.*  
 Fungi, *funct, to discharge.*  
 Lōqui, *loēt, to speak.*  
 Mālē, *badly.*  
 Misēreri, *miserit, or misert, to pity.*  
 Oblivisci, *oblit, to forget.*

Odiū, *I, hatred.*  
 Officiū, *I, duty.*  
 Post (*prep. with accus.*), *after.*  
 Pōtiri, *pōtit, to get possession.*  
 Rēcordari, *at, to remember, to recall to mind.*  
 Sempiternū, *ā, ūm, eternal.*  
 Uti, *us, to use.*

## 404. Exercises.

(a) 1. Christianōrum est miserēri paup̄rum. 2. Homo imprōbus aliquando cum dolōre flagitiōrum suōrum recordabitur. 3. Multi beneficiis male utuntur. 4. Vincāmus odium, pacēque potiāmur. 5. Christiāni est injuriārum oblivisci. 6. Beātus est, qui omnibus vitāe officiis fungitur. 7. Elegantiam loquendi legis oratoribus et poētis auxerant.

(b) 1. Let the Christian discharge all the duties of life. 2. Let us use our horses. 3. The good after death will enjoy eternal life. 4. Will not the good after death enjoy eternal life? 5. Is the life that we now enjoy eternal? 6. Let boys learn to discharge all the duties of life. 7. Have you not spared the conquered? 8. Spare (*pl.*) the conquered. 9. Let us spare the conquered. 10. We will resist anger. 11. Will you not resist anger? 12. Let Caius, who sold

---

\* Participles as well as adjectives (117) are sometimes used substantively.

his country for gold, be condemned to death. 13. Let the wicked, who sold their country for gold, be accused of treason.

## LESSON LXXI.

### *Irregular Verbs.*

405. THE irregular verbs are those which deviate from the ordinary rules, not only in the formation of their roots, but also in the inflection of some of their tenses.

406. The irregular verb *possē* (to be able), compounded of *pōt* (*pōtīs*, able) and *essē* (to be), is conjugated like the simple *essē*, except,

- 1) *T* before *s* becomes *s*; as, *possūm* (*potsūm*).
- 2) The *f* in the second root is dropped; as, *pōtu* (*potfu*).
- 8) In the *present infinitive* and *imperfect subjunctive* there is a contraction; as, *possē* (for *pōtessē*), *possēm* (for *pōtessēm*).

### 407. Paradigm.

*Possē*, to be able; 2d root, *pōtu*.

#### INDICATIVE.

*Pres.* *Possūm*, *pōtēs*, *pōtest*, *possūmus*, *pōtestis*, *possunt*.

*Imp.* *pōtērām*; *Fut.* *pōtērō*; *Perf.* *pōtu-i*; *Pluperf.* *pōtu-ērām*;  
*Fut.* *pōtu-ērō*.

#### SUBJUNCTIVE.

*Pres.* *possim*; *Imp.* *possēm*; *Perf.* *pōtu-ērīm*; *Pluperf.* *pōtu-issēm*.

#### INFINITIVE.

*Pres.* *possē*; *Perf.* *pōtu-issē*.

#### PARTICIPLE.

*Pōtens* (used as an adjective, powerful).

408. The various forms of *posse* are often best translated by the auxiliaries, *can*, *could*, &c.; e. g.,

Egö făcěřě possūm, *I can do* (am able to do).

REM.—When a past tense of *posse* is thus translated by *could*, any present infinitive depending upon it must be translated by the English perfect; e. g.,

Egö făcěřě pōtui, *I could have done*.

409. The irregular verb *vellě*, *to will*, or *be willing*, and its compounds, *nollě*, *to be unwilling* (from *nōn* and *vellě*), and *mallě*, *to wish rather*, *to prefer* (from *māg* [*māgīs*, more] and *vellě*), are conjugated as in the following:

#### 410. Paradigms.

Vellě. 2d root, <i>vōlu</i> .	Nollě. 2d root, <i>nōlu</i> .	Mallě. 2d root, <i>malu</i> .
INDICATIVE.		
PRESENT.		
Vōļō, Vis, Vult; Vōļūmūs, Vultīs, Vōļunt.	Nōļō, Nonvis, Nonvult; Nōļūmūs, Nonvultīs, Nōļunt.	Malō, Mavis, Mavult; Malūmūs, Mavultīs, Malunt.
IMPERFECT.		
Vōļ-ēbām, bas, &c.	Nōļ-ēbām, bas, &c.	Mal-ēbām, bas, &c.
FUTURE.		
Vōļ-ām.	Nōļ-ām.	Mal-ām.
PERFECT.		
Vōlu-I.	Nōlu-I.	Malu-I.
PLUPERFECT.		
Vōlu-ērām.	Nōlu-ērām.	Malu-ērām.
FUTURE PERFECT.		
Vōlu-ērō.	Nōlu-ērō.	Malu-ērō.

## PARADIGMS—continued.

SUBJUNCTIVE.		
PRESENT.		
Vél-ím, is, &c.	Nól-ím, is, &c.	Mal-ím, is, &c.
IMPERFECT.		
Vell-ém, es, &c.	Noll-ém.	Mall-ém.
PERFECT.		
Völu-ërim.	Nölu-ërim.	Malu-ërim.
PLUPERFECT.		
Völu-issëm.	Nölu-issëm.	Malu-issëm.
IMPERATIVE.		
	Nól-i or itö, Nól-itë, itotë.	
INFINITIVE.		
Pres. Vellë.	Nollë.	Mallë.
Perf. Völu-issë.	Nölu-issë.	Malu-issë.
PARTICIPLES.		
Völens.	Nölens.	

## 411. VOCABULARY.

Animäl, alis, *animal*.  
 Corrigëre, correx, correct, to correct, reform.  
 Cör, cordis, *n., heart*.  
 Mallë, malü, to prefer wish rather.  
 Nollë, nölu, to be unwilling.  
 Nullüs, ä, üm (113, R.), no, not any.

Occidëre, occid, occis, to kill.  
 Possë, pötu, to be able.  
 Praetëritüs, ä, üm, past; praetëritä (*neut. pl.*), the past.  
 Pröbüs, ä, üm, honest, upright.  
 Scipiö, onis, Scipio, a distinguished Roman.  
 Sinë, without.  
 Vellë, völu, to wish.

## 412. Exercises.

(a) 1. Haec facëre possümus. 2. Haec facëre potüsti.  
 3. Multum discëre vult. 4. Nölui hoc facëre.

5. Praeterita mutāre non possūmus. 6. Nullum animal quod sanguinem habet, sine corde esse potest. 7. Discat ut possit docēre. 8. Num puēri regendae civitātis (382) perīti esse possunt? 9. Si vis beātus esse, animo impēra. 10. Probi semper vitam corrigere volunt. 11. Scipio dicēbat, malle se unum civem servare, quam mille hostes occidere.

(b) 1. Do you wish to change the past? 2. We do not wish to change the past. 3. You (*pl.*) cannot change the past. 4. We cannot shun death. 5. Let us learn, that we may be able to teach others. 6. They wish to be happy. 7. We all wish to be happy. 8. Could you not have seen the king? 9. We might have learned much. 10. We were unwilling to accuse you. 11. Were you not unwilling to accuse the king?

## LESSON LXXII.

### *Irregular Verbs, continued.*

413. THE irregular verb, *ferrē*, to bear, drops *e* between two *r*'s, as *ferrē* for *ferērē*, and *i* in the endings of the second and third sing. act., and of the third sing. pass. It borrows its second and third roots from other verbs.

### 414. Paradigm.

*Ferrē*, to bear; 2d root, *tūl*; 3d, *lāt*.

#### INDICATIVE.

##### PRESENT.

##### Active.

Fēr-ō, fer-a, fer-t, fēr-imūs,  
fer-tis, fēr-unt.

##### Passive.

Fēr-ōr, fer-ris, fer-tūr, fēr-imūr,  
fēr-imini, fēr-untūr.

## PARADIGM—continued.

## IMPERFECT.

<i>Active.</i>		<i>Passive.</i>
Fēr-ēbām, bās, &c.		Fēr-ēbār, bāris, &c.

## FUTURE.

Fēr-ām, es, &c.		Fēr-ār, eris, &c.
-----------------	--	-------------------

## PERFECT

Tūl-i, isti, &c.		Lat-ūs sūm, es, &c.
------------------	--	---------------------

## PLUPERFECT.

Tūl-ērām, as, &c.		Lat-ūs ērām, &c.
-------------------	--	------------------

## FUTURE PERFECT.

Tūl-ērō, &c.		Lat-ūs ērō, &c.
--------------	--	-----------------

## SUBJUNCTIVE.

## PRESENT.

Fēr-ām, as, &c.		Fēr-ār, aris, &c.
-----------------	--	-------------------

## IMPERFECT

Fer-rēm, rēs, &c.		Fer-rēr, rēris, &c.
-------------------	--	---------------------

## PERFECT.

Tūl-ērīm, &c.		Lat-ūs sim, &c.
---------------	--	-----------------

## PLUPERFECT.

Tūl-issēm.		Lat-ūs essēm, &c.
------------	--	-------------------

## IMPERATIVE.

Fēr, or fertō,		Fer-rē, or fer-tōr,
Fer-tō;		Fer-tōr;
Fer-tē, or fer-totē.		Fēr-imini,
Fēr-untō.		Fēr-untōr.

## INFINITIVE.

<i>Pres.</i> Fer-rē,		Fer-ri,
<i>Perf.</i> Tūl-isse,		Lat-ūs essē,
<i>Fut.</i> Lat-ūrūs essē.		Lat-ūm iri.

## PARADIGM—continued.

PARTICIPLES.			
<i>Active.</i>		<i>Passive.</i>	
<i>Pres.</i>	Fēr-ens,	<i>Perf.</i>	Lat-ūs (ā, ūm).
<i>Fut.</i>	Lat-ūrūs (ā, ūm).	<i>Fut.</i>	Fēr-endūs (ā, ūm).
GERUND.			
Fēr-endī, dō, dūm, dō.			
SUPINE.			
Lat-ūm.		Lat-n.	

REM.—The compounds of *ferrē* are conjugated like the simple verb.

415. The irregular verb, *fiērī*, *to become, be made*, is used as the passive of *fācērē*, and, in the tenses for completed action, has the regular forms of the passive of that verb.

## 416. Paradigm.

<i>Fiērī, to become, be made.</i>	
PRESENT.	
<i>Indicative.</i>	<i>Subjunctive.</i>
Fi-ō, fi-s, fi-t, &c.	Fi-ām, fi-as, fi-āt, &c.
IMPERFECT.	
Fi-ebām, ebas, &c.	Fi-erēm, eres, &c.
FUTURE.	
Fi-ām, es, &c.	
PERFECT.	
Fact-ūs sūm, &c.	Fact-ūs sīm, &c.
PLUPERFECT.	
Fact-ūs ērām, &c.	Fact-ūs essēm, &c.
FUTURE PERFECT.	
Fact-ūs erō, &c.	
IMPERATIVE.	
<i>Sing.</i> Fi, or fi-tō, Fi-tō.	<i>Plur.</i> Fitē, or fi-totē, Fi-untō.



## PARADIGM—continued.

## INFINITIVE.

*Pres. Fieri; Perf. Fact-ūs esse; Fut. Fact-ūm iri.*

## PARTICIPLES.

*Perf. Fact-ūs (ā, ūm); Fut. Fāciendūs (ā, ūm).*

## 417. VOCABULARY.

*Afferre, attul, allat, to bring, to bring to.*

*Auctor, oris, author.*

*Cālāmitas, atis, misfortune, calamity.*

*Creber, brā, brūm, frequent, numerous.*

*Ferre, tūl, lat, to carry, bear, endure.*

*Fieri, fact, to become, be made.*

*Inferre, intul, illat, to bring against, to wage.*

*Iterum, again.*

*Rēferre, rētul, rēlat, to bring back, to relate.*

*Rumōr, oris, report, rumor.*

*Tertiūs, ā, ūm, third.*

*Utilitas, atis, profit, advantage.*

## 418. Exercises.

(a) 1. Quid fers manu, mi fili? 2. Is labor utilis est qui auctōri laudem fert, aliis utilitātem. 3. Tertio die auxilium tulērunt. 4. Crebri ad eum rumōres afferbantur. 5. Dixit Gallos sibi bellum intulisse. 6. His responsis ad Caesārem relātis, itērum ad eum Caesar legātos mittit. 7. Brutus consul factus est.

(b) 1. He has been made king. 2. Do you wish to become king? (No.) 3. Many reports will be brought to you. 4. What reports have been brought to you? 5. Your father has become poor. 6. Shall you not bring us aid? 7. Do you not wish to carry aid to your brother? 8. Caesar waged many wars. 9. Caesar is said to have waged many wars. 10. He has endured many misfortunes. 11. Do you wish to wage war against your father? (No.) 12. We were unwilling to wage war against our country.

## LESSON LXXIII.

*Irregular Verbs, continued.*

419 THE irregular verb, *īrě*, *to go*, is regular in the parts from the first root.

## PARADIGM.

*Irě*, *to go*; 2d root, *īv*; 3d, *īt*.

## PRESENT.

<i>Indicative.</i>	<i>Subjunctive.</i>
<i>Eō</i> , <i>is</i> , <i>it</i> ; <i>īmūs</i> , <i>ītīs</i> , <i>eunt</i> .	<i>Eām</i> , <i>eās</i> , &c.

## IMPERFECT.

<i>Ibām</i> , <i>ibās</i> , &c.	<i>Irēm</i> , <i>irēa</i> , &c.
---------------------------------	---------------------------------

## FUTURE.

*Ibō*, *ibīs*, &c.

## PERFECT.

<i>Iv-i</i> , <i>iv-istī</i> , &c.	<i>Iv-ērīm</i> , <i>ērīs</i> , &c.
------------------------------------	------------------------------------

## PLUPERFECT.

<i>Iv-ērām</i> , <i>ērās</i> , &c.	<i>Iv-issēm</i> , <i>issēa</i> , &c.
------------------------------------	--------------------------------------

## FUTURE PERFECT.

*Iv-ērō*, *ērīs*, &c.

## IMPERATIVE.

<i>Sing.</i> <i>I</i> , or <i>itō</i> , <i>itō</i> .	<i>Plur.</i> <i>Itē</i> , or <i>itōtē</i> , <i>Euntō</i> .
---	---

## INFINITIVE.

*Pres.* *Irě*; *Perf.* *Iv-issē*; *Fut.* *Itūrūs*, *essē*.

## PARTICIPLES.

*Pres.* *Iens* (*gen.* *euntis*); *Fut.* *Itūrūs*, *ā*, *ūm*.

## GERUND.

*Eundi*, *dō*, *dūm*, *dō*.

## SUPINE.

*Itūm*, *ita*.

**REMARK.**—The compounds of *ire* are conjugated like the simple verb, but generally contract the perfect *ivē* into *it*, and most of them want the supine.

420. *Edĕrĕ*, to eat, is conjugated regularly as a verb of the third conjugation, but has also certain forms like those of *essĕ*. These are as follows;

<i>Regular.</i>		<i>Irregular.</i>
<i>Pres.</i>	<i>Edĕ</i> , &c.	<i>Es</i> , <i>est</i> , <i>estis</i> .
<i>Imperat.</i>	<i>Edĕ</i> , &c.	<i>Es</i> , <i>estĕ</i> , <i>estĕ</i> , <i>estotĕ</i> .
<i>Subj. Imp.</i>	<i>Edĕrĕm</i> , &c.	<i>Essĕm</i> , <i>essĕs</i> , &c.
<i>Infīn.</i>	<i>Edĕrĕ</i> .	<i>Essĕ</i> .

421. **RULE OF SYNTAX.**—The words *dŏmūs* and *rūs*, together with the genitives *hŭmī*, *bellī*, and *mīlītiæ*, are construed like names of towns (see 227); e. g.,

*Dŏmŭm rĕdiit*, he returned home.

#### 422. VOCABULARY.

<i>Abirĕ</i> , i, it, to go away, depart.	<i>Irĕ</i> , iv, it, to go.
<i>Dŏmī</i> (gen. of <i>dŏmūs</i> ), at home.	<i>Mīlītiæ</i> (gen. of <i>mīlītia</i> ), on service, in the field.
<i>Edĕrĕ</i> ( <i>essĕ</i> ), <i>ed</i> , <i>es</i> , to eat.	<i>Nĕc—nĕc</i> , neither—nor.
<i>Et—ĕt</i> , both—and.	<i>Rĕdirĕ</i> , i, it, to return.
<i>Evŏlarĕ</i> , <i>av</i> , <i>at</i> , to fly away, to flee.	<i>Rŭs</i> , <i>rŭis</i> , field, country.

#### 423. Exercises.

(a) 1. *Fracto puĕri brachio*, abijt. 2. *Fundo in tres partes divīso*, redijt Athenas. 3. *Puĕri venātum*<sup>18</sup> *ivērunt*. 4. *Est (edijt)* ut vivat. 5. *Nonne estis ut vivātis?* 6. *Abeat Romam*. 7. *Scriptis epistŏlis*, abiĕrunt. 8. *Balbus, quum manus in aquam immersisset*, abiit. 9. *Caius rus ex urbe evolavĕrit*. 10. *Caius nondum rure redijt*. 11. *Et Caesar et Balbus Romam rediĕrunt*. 12. *Vĕnit sacerdos*, ut aram florībus cingĕret.

(b) 1. *Cæsar* has not yet returned to Rome. 2. The

boys have gone a hunting.<sup>11</sup> 3. Do you wish to go a hunting? 4. They say he has gone a hunting. 5. He says that he wishes to go a hunting. 6. Do you not eat to live? 7. He says that he eats to live. 8. Balbus, having crowned the boy's head with a garland, went away. 9. Caesar, having conquered his enemies, will return to Rome. 10. They all wish to return to Rome. 11. Do you wish to return home? 12. Balbus is at his own house. 13. He was with me both at home and on service. 14. You have lived many years in the country.

---

## LESSON LXXIV.

### *Periphrastic Conjugations.*

424. THERE are two periphrastic conjugations formed respectively from the future participles in *rūs* and *dūs*, combined with the various tenses of the verb *esse*. The first periphrastic conjugation represents the action as *future*, or as one that is about to be done; e. g., *Scriptūrūs sūm*, *I am about to write*.

425. The second periphrastic conjugation expresses *duty* or *necessity*; e. g., *Virtūs cōlendā est*, *virtue must be cultivated*.

426. RULE OF SYNTAX.—The agent, or *person by whom*, is put in the *dative* with the *part. in dūs*; with other words it is generally governed in the *ablative* by *ā* or *āb*.

427. RULE OF SYNTAX.—Many adjectives are followed by the *dative* of the object to which the quality

is directed, or for which it exists; e. g., *Pax mihi grātissimā ērāt, peace was very acceptable to me.*

#### 428. VOCABULARY.

*Bibērē, bib, bibīt, to drink.*

*Delērē, ev, et, to destroy.*

*Ignārūs, ā, ūm, ignorant.*

*Inutīlis, ē, useless, unfit for.*

*Mārimūs, ā, ūm, marine, of the sea.*

*Prōpiōr, ūs (comp.), nearer.*

*Pūtārē, av, at, to think, regard.*

*Simplex, icīs, simple.*

*Subvēnīrē, vēm, vent, to go to the assistance of, to aid.*

#### 429. Exercises.

(a) 1. Tondendae sunt oves, non deglubendae. 2. Exercenda est virtus. 3. Nonnē claudendae sunt urbis portae? 4. Sapientia ars vivendi putanda est. 5. Puer Romam mittendus est. 6. Pauperībus qui ne grano quidem uno fraudandi sunt, subveniāmus. 7. Quid factūri estis? 8. Simplex cibus puēris utilissīmus est. 9. Luna terrae propior est quam sol. 10. Aqua marīna inutīlis est bibendo. 11. Inutīles sunt libri ignāro legendi.

(b) 1. They must be sent to Athens. 2. They must be sent into the country. 3. We must be taught by the wise. 4. The city must be destroyed. 5. The gates must be shut. 6. Must not virtue be learned? 7. Must not virtue be practised? 8. Every opportunity of practising virtue must be seized. 9. The poor must not be defrauded of even a single grain. 10. Has he not defrauded the poor? 11. Let not the poor be defrauded of a single grain. 12. Is not the moon nearer the earth than the sun?

## LESSON LXXV.

*Impersonal Verbs.*

430. IMPERSONAL verbs are such as are used only in the third person singular, and never take a personal subject (as *I, thou, he*). The subject in English is generally expressed by the pronoun *it*; e. g.,

Oportēt, *it behooves.*

Taedēt mē, *it disgusts me* (I am disgusted with).

431. Besides the verbs which are strictly impersonal, many others are often used *impersonally*; e. g.,

Constāt, *it is known.*

Juvāt, *it delights.*

432. The impersonal verb *licēt*, *it is lawful*, or is *allowed*, denotes *permission*, and may be translated by *may* and *might*; e. g.,

Licēt, *may* (it is allowed).

Licuīt, *might* (it was allowed).

Mihī irē licēt,	<i>I may go.</i>
Tibī irē licēt,	<i>You may go.</i>
Illī irē licēt,	<i>He may go.</i>
Nōbīs irē licēt,	<i>We may go.</i>
Vōbīs irē licēt,	<i>You may go.</i>
Illīs irē licēt,	<i>They may go.</i>
Mihī irē licuīt,	<i>I might have gone.</i>
Tibī irē licuīt,	<i>You might have gone.</i>

REM. 1.—The dative in these examples is the indirect object after *licēt*.

REM. 2.—The present infinitive must be translated by the English perfect after *licuīt*, *might*, as in the above examples. (See also 408, Rem.)

(*Eng.*) I may go. (*Lat. Id.*) It is allowe me to go.

(*Eng.*) I might have gone. (*Lat. Id.*) It was allowed me (*then*) to go.

433. The impersonal verb *oportet*, *it behooves*, denotes *duty* or *propriety*, and may be translated by *ought*; e. g.,

Mē irē oportet,	<i>I ought to go.</i>
Tē irē oportet, &c.	<i>You ought to go.</i>
Mē irē oportuit,	<i>I ought to have gone.</i>
Tē irē oportuit,	<i>You ought to have gone.</i>

REM. 1.—Observe that here, too, the present infinitive is to be translated by the perfect after a past tense.

REM. 2.—The infinitive after *oportet* takes a subject accusative.

## 434.

*English.**Latin Idiom.*

- |                                  |                            |
|----------------------------------|----------------------------|
| (a) I repent of my folly,        | It repents me of my folly. |
| I am vexed at my folly,          | It vexes me of my folly.   |
| I am ashamed of my folly,        | It shames me of my folly.  |
| I pity the poor,                 | It pities me of the poor.  |
| I am weary of life,              | It irks me of life.        |
| (b) Mē meae stultitiae poenitēt, | I repent of my folly.      |
| Mē meae stultitiae pigēt,        | I am vexed at my folly.    |
| Mē meae stultitiae pudēt,        | I am ashamed of my folly.  |
| Miserēt mē pauperū,              | I pity the poor.           |
| Taedēt mē vitae,                 | I am weary of life.        |

435. RULE OF SYNTAX.—The *impersonal* verbs of feeling, *miserēt*, *poenitēt*, *pudēt*, *taedēt*, and *pigēt*, take the accusative of the person, together with the genitive of the object which produces the feeling. (See examples above.)

## 436. VOCABULARY.

Adesse, *adfu*, to be present.

Amicitia, *ae*, friendship.

Constāt, *it is known*, is an admitted fact.

Diligens, *entis*, diligent.

Habitare, *av*, at, to inhabit, dwell.

Immortalis, *ē*, immortal.

Licet, *it is lawful*, is permitted.

Misêrêt, *one pities*; tui mē misê-  
rêt, *I pity you.*

Oportêt, *it behooves, one ought.*

Pigêt, *one is grieved at*; mē pigêt,  
*I am grieved.*

Poenitêt, *it repents, one repents.*

Praestât, *it is better.*

Rêcipêrê (id), *esp, cept, to re-  
ceive.*

Saepê, *often.*

Sônûs, *1, sound, noise.*

Tardûs, *â, ūm, slow.*

Vêlox, *ocis, swift.*

### 437. Exercises.

(a) 1. Constat sonum luce tardiōrem esse. 2. Saepe facere praestat quam loqui. 3. Nonne licet Romae habitare? 4. Nonne licuit Athēnis habitare? 5. Nunquam licet peccare. 6. Num licet Christiānis gloriae servire? 7. Puēros oportet diligentes esse. 8. Amicitiam immortālem esse oportet. 9. Tui me misêret; mei piget. 10. Sapientia semper eo contenta est quod adest. 11. Ne multa loquere. 12. Miserere nostri. 13. Natūra omnes propensi sumus ad discendum.

(b) 1. It is well known that light is swifter than sound. 2. Is it not well known that the moon is nearer the earth than the sun? 3. Is it not well known that sound is slower than light? 4. He repents of his folly. 5. I repented of my folly. 6. Ought not Christians to do good to *as many as possible*? 7. Ought not Balbus to have kept his word? 8. Ought not Caius to have been condemned to death? 9. I have received many letters from you. 10. The bird has flown away from my hands.

---

## LESSON LXXVI.

### *Impersonal Periphrastic.*

438. THE second periphrastic conjugation is often used impersonally; e. g.,



Mihī scribendū est,	<i>I must or should write.</i>
Tibi scribendū est,	<i>you must or should write.</i>
Illī scribendū est,	<i>he must or should write.</i>
Nobis scribendū est,	<i>we must or should write.</i>
Vobis scribendū est,	<i>you must or should write.</i>
Illis scribendū est,	<i>they must or should write.</i>

439. Here too the agent is put in the dative (see 426) when expressed. It is omitted.

- 1) When it means every body or people in general, though it may be translated by *we* or *you*; e. g.,

Edendū est, *we or you (every body) must eat.*

- 2) When the persons meant are not likely to be mistaken.

440. In the impersonal periphrastic construction, if the verb is one which governs a dative (396), its *agent* (the person by whom) must not be expressed; e. g.,

Crēdendū est Caiō.

We must believe Caius (*not*, Caius must believe).

REM.—If, in any instance, it is necessary to express the agent, it must either be done by means of the ablative with *a* or *ab*, or the form of the expression must be changed. The two datives would leave it doubtful *which* was the *agent*.

#### 441. VOCABULARY.

Etiam, *even.*

Laborare, *av, at, to labor, toil.*

Mētuēre, *u, to fear.*

Sēnex, sēnis, *an old man*; pl. *the aged.*

#### 442. Exercises.

(a) 1. Mihi discendum est. 2. Etiam senibus discendum est. 3. Improbis metuendum est. 4. Tibi evolandum est ex urbe. 5. Manendum est Romae. 6. Totam hiemem manendum est Carthagine. 7. Ambulandum est per urbem. 8. Laborandum est, ut discas. 9. Nonne laborandum est, ut discamus? 10.

Num semper ludendum est? 11. Nonne resistendum est irae? 12. Num credendum est imprōbis? 13. Nonne resistendum est anīmo? 14. Non omnes ad discendum propensi sunt. 15. Discendum est, ut possis docēre. 16. Edendum est, ut possīmus vivēre.

(b) 1. We must dwell *in the country*. 2. We must remain *at home*. 3. We must fly from the city (into) the country. 4. The unlearned must labor, that they may learn. 5. We must fight, that we may preserve our lives. 6. The girls must walk through the city. 7. True greatness of mind must be valued at-a-very-high-price. 8. We should spare the conquered. 9. We should resist anger. 10. Should we not resist anger? 11. We should obey the laws of our country. 12. We must not spare even Balbus. 13. We must pardon both Caius and Balbus. 14. We must not believe even Caesar himself. 15. Having written his letter, he will go a-hunting.

## LESSON LXXVII.

### *Impersonal Passive Verbs.—Prepositions.*

443. THOSE verbs which take no direct object in the active, can only be used *impersonally* in the passive; e. g.,

Mihī crēdītūr,	<i>I am believed.</i>
Tibī crēdītūr,	<i>Thou art believed.</i>
Illī crēdītūr,	<i>He is believed.</i>
Nōbīs crēdītūr,	<i>We are believed.</i>
Vōbīs crēdītūr,	<i>You are believed.</i>
Illīs crēdītūr,	<i>They are believed.</i>

444. Prepositions, as we have already seen (200), show the relation of objects to each other; e. g., in urbē hābitāt, *he dwells in the city.*

445. RULE OF SYNTAX.—The following twenty-six prepositions govern the accusative; viz., Ad, adversus, antē, apud, circā or circum, cīs or citrā, contrā, ergā, extrā, infrā, intēr, intrā, juxtā, ob, pēnēs, pēr, pōnē, post, praetēr, prōpē, proptēr, sēcundū, suprā, trans, ultrā, versus (*rare*).

446. RULE OF SYNTAX.—The following eleven prepositions govern the ablative; viz., A (āb or abs), absquē, cōrām, cū, dē, ē or ex, pālām, prae, prō, sīnē, tēnūs.

447. RULE OF SYNTAX.—The five prepositions, clām, in, sūb, subter, and supēr, take sometimes the accusative and sometimes the ablative.

REM.—*In* and *sūb* govern the accusative in answer to *whither* (i. e. after verbs of motion), and the ablative in answer to *where* (i. e. after verbs of rest). *Subter* generally takes the accusative. *Supēr* takes the accusative after verbs of motion and also when it signifies *upon*, and the ablative when it signifies *on* or *of* (as of a subject spoken or written about).

#### 448 VOCABULARY.

Cīs, *on this side.*

Coelū, *I, heaven, the heavens.*

Cōrām, *before, in the presence of.*

Ergā, *towards.*

Firmūs, ā, ūm, *firm, sure.*

Infrā, *below.*

Intrā, *within.*

Paucūs, ā, ūm, *few, little.*

Piētās, atis, *loyalty, faithfulness.*

Prae, *before, in comparison with.*

Suprā, *above.*

Terrā, ae, *the earth.*

#### 449. Exercises.

(a) 1. Vobis non credītur. 2. Bonis credītur. 3. Gloriae tuae invidētur. 4. Irae resistitur. 5. Pauci veniunt ad senectūtem. 6. Nulla est firma amicitia

inter malos. 7. Piētas erga patriam conservanda est. 8. Galli cis Rhenum habitant. 9. Intra muros habitabat. 10. Coram populo loquētur. 11. Argentum prae auro contemnitur. 12. Caecus de coloribus judicare non potest. 13. Supra nos coelum conspicimus; infra nos terram.

(b) 1. The good are always envied. 2. The wicked should never be believed. 3. The conquered must be spared. 4. We are envied. 5. They will be envied. 6. He was buried within the walls. 7. They wish to be buried on-this-side-of the Rhine. 8. Let us walk through the city. 9. They have returned from the city into the country. 10. Do you wish to go into the city? 11. My father will remain in the city the whole winter.

---

## LESSON LXXVIII.

### *Conjunctions.*

450. CONJUNCTIONS are merely *connectives*; as, *pāter et filiūs*, the *father* and *son*. Certain combinations of these require some attention.

451. *Et* followed by another *et*; *tūm* or *quūm* followed by *tūm*, are *both—and*.

452. *Nōn solum—sed etiām*, *not only—but also*.

453. *Tām—quām*,  $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{so—as; as—as.} \\ \text{as well—as.} \\ \text{both—and.} \end{array} \right.$

454. *Etiām*, *even, also*; *etiām atquē etiām*, *again and again*; *quōquē*, *also, too* (follows the word it belongs to).

455. Aut, *or*; aut—aut, vēl—vēl, *either—or*.  
 Sīvē—sīvē, seu—seu, *either—or, whether—or*.  
 456. Nēc—nēc, něquē—něquē, *neither—nor*.  
 Vēl, *or, sometimes even*; with superlatives, *very extremely, possible*.  
 457. At, sēd, autēm, vērūm, vērō, *but*.  
 Attāmēn, tāmēn, vēruntāmēn, *yet, but, but yet*.  
 458. Atquī, *but, now* (as used in reasoning).  
 459. Nām, namquē, ēnīm, *for*.  
 Ergō, *therefore, then*.  
 Igītūr, ideo, *therefore*.  
 Itāquē, *accordingly, and so, there-fore*.  
 Quārē, *wherefore*.

## 460. VOCABULARY. \*

Amphibium, I, <i>amphibious animal</i> .	Nasci, nat, <i>to be born</i> .
Audax, acis, <i>audacious, daring</i> .	Nimius, ā, ūm, <i>excessive, too much</i> .
Dēterrēre, u, it, <i>to deter</i> .	Pūdōr, ōris, <i>shame, sense of shame</i> .
Inceptum, I, <i>purpose, undertaking</i> .	Somnus, I, <i>sleep</i> .
Impēdirē, iv, it, <i>to impede, hinder</i> .	

## 461. Exercises.

(a) 1. Et discet puer et docēbit. 2. Et Romae vixi et Carthagine. 3. Lupus quum ovem tum canem mormordērat. 4. Ovem non solum totondit, sed etiam deglupsit. 5. Neo timīdus est, nec audax. 6. Nimius somnus neque anīmo, neque corpōri prodest. 7. Non deterreor ab incepto, sed pudōre impediōr. 8. Nihil labōras; ideo nihil habes. 9. Nemo tam pauper vivit, quam natus est. 10. Amphibia et in aqua et in terra vivunt.

(b) 1. We shall go both to Rome and to Carthage. 2. Will you also accuse me? 3. Will they even con

demn the king to death? [No.] 4. We must both learn and teach. 5. Do you not wish both to learn and to teach? 6. We might have condemned not only the father, but also the son. 7. He will either remain at Rome, or go to Athens. 8 Dogs as well as wolves sometimes bite sheep. 9. He sent his son to Rome, but was unwilling to go himself. 10. Caius has been accused of treason, but he will never be condemned. 11. He will not go a hunting, for he has buried his son

## LESSON LXXIX.

*Subjunctive Mood with ūt, nē, and quō.*

462. Ut with subj. { 1. *in order that, that, so that.*  
2. *the infin.* (expressing purpose).  
3. *as, with infinitive.*  
4. *granting that, although.*  
5. *that, after to fear that not.*

463. When ūt introduces a *purpose*, the subjunctive may be rendered by *may, might*; when it introduces a *consequence* (as after *so, such*), it may be rendered by the *indicative* or *infinitive*.

464. Ut with the indicative is *as, when, since, after, how*

465. Nē with subj. { 1. *lest, that not.*  
2. *not with the infinitive.*  
3. *not with the imperative.*  
4. *after to fear that.*

466. Nē with the imperative or subjunctive used imperatively, is simply *not*; as, *nē scribās*, or *nē scribē*, do not write.

467. After verbs of fearing, *ut* and *nē* appear to change meanings; *ut*, *that—not*; *nē*, *that* or *lest*.

468. After verbs of fearing, the *subjunctive present* must generally be rendered by the *future*; as, *vereor ut faciām*, I fear that I shall *not* do, *vereor nē faciām*, I fear that I shall do.

469. *Quō* with the subjunctive is used to express purpose in sentences containing a comparative degree; as, *mēdicō aliquid dandū est, quō sūt studiōsiōr*, something should be given to the physician, that he may be the more attentive.

For the use of tenses in the subjunctive, see 265 and 266.

#### 470. VOCABULARY.

Cāverē, cav, caut, to take care,  
be careful.

Cognītūs, ā, ūm, known.

Efficērē (īd), fēc, fect, to effect,  
accomplish.

Fāmēs, is, hunger.

Incognītūs, ā, ūm, unknown.

Mēdicūs, i, physician.

Mōnērē, mōnu, mōnīt, to advise,  
warn.

Multitūdō, inīa, multitude.

Nūmērārē, av, at, to number.

Quō, that, in order that.

Sātis (substantively), enough.

Stellā, ae, star.

Sustinērē, tīnu, tent, to sustain,  
to endure.

Vērērī, vērit, to fear.

#### 471. Exercises.

(a) 1. Multi alios laudant, ut ab aliis laudentur. 2. Stellārum tanta multitūdō est, ut numerārī non possint. 3. Mēdicis aliquid dandum est, quo sint studiōsiōres. 4. Cave ne incognīta pro cognītis habeas. 5. Ne tentes quod effici non possit. 6. Vereor, ne labōres tuos augeam. 7. Vereor ne brevi tempōre fames in urbe sit. 8. Timeo ut labōres tantos sustineas. 9. Avārus semper verētur, ut satis habeat. 10. Verebamīni ut pax firma esset.

(b) 1. The cold is so great that the snow will not melt. 2. He praised us, in-order-that he might be praised by us. 3. The multitude of men was so great that it could not be numbered. 4. The multitude is so great that it cannot be numbered. 5. He has come to aid you. 6. They have gone to Rome to aid their father. 7. I sent him home, that he might not be bitten by the dog. 8. He warned his sons not to break the laws. 9. We fear we shall increase your labors. 10. They feared that he would not be acquitted.

---

## LESSON LXXX.

*Subjunctive with quōmīnūs, quīn, and other Conjunctions.*

472. AFTER verbs of *hindering*, quōmīnūs is more common with the subjunctive than nē. It may generally be translated by *from*, the verb being turned into the participial substantive.

REM.—Quōmīnūs (quō and mīnūs) means literally, *by which the less*, or, *so that the less*; e. g.,

Caiō nīhīl obstat quōmīnūs sīt beātūs.

(*Nothing opposes Caius by which he should be the less happy.*)

Nothing prevents Caius from being happy.

- |                      |   |  |
|----------------------|---|--|
| 473. Quīn with subj. | { | <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. <i>but</i> (as used after negatives).</li> <li>2. <i>the relative with not.</i></li> <li>3. <i>as not with infinitive.</i></li> <li>4. <i>that after doubt, deny in negative sentences.</i></li> <li>5. <i>from or without with the participial substantive, after prevent, escape, &amp;c.</i></li> </ol> |
|----------------------|---|--|





me terrēbis, quomīnus illud faciam. 4. Sapiens nunquam dubitābit, quin immortalis sit animus. 5. Nemo est tam bonus ac providus, quin interdum peccet. 6. O si sapiens virtutem colat! 7. Utīnam hoc verum sit. 8. Sic agis, quāsi me ames.

(b) 1. Nothing prevents you from being happy. 2. Nothing prevents him from doing this. 3. Does any thing prevent you from doing this? 4. We have never doubted that the soul is immortal. 5. Do you doubt that the soul is immortal? 6. There is no one who does not think (473, 2) that you were engaged in the battle. 7. He never saw the shepherd without laughing at him (474, 4). 8. Would that all citizens would observe the laws.

---

## LESSON LXXXI.

### *Interrogative Sentences.*

479. ALL interrogatives take the indicative when the question is put *directly*; as, *nūm crēdīs*, do you believe?

480. *Nūm* and *nē* are merely interrogative particles, and are not construed in direct questions.

481. All interrogatives take the subjunctive when the question is put *indirectly* or *doubtfully*, especially when it depends upon another verb.

482. Double questions take two different constructions, viz.:

- 1) The first clause is introduced by *nūm*, *utrūm*, or *nē*, and the second by *an*.

- 2) The first clause has no interrogative word, and the second has *an* or *nē*.

## 483. VOCABULARY.

Enūmērārē, av, at, <i>to enumerate, to count up.</i>	Misēr, ērā, ērūm, <i>unhappy, miserable.</i>
Ignis, is, m., <i>fire, heat.</i>	Mortalis, ē, <i>mortal.</i>
Immobilis, ē, <i>immovable, fixed.</i>	Nescirē, iv, it, <i>to be ignorant, not to know.</i>
Lōcūplēs, etis, <i>rich.</i>	Olim, <i>formerly.</i>
Majōr, ūs, ōris ( <i>comp. of magnus</i> ), <i>larger, greater.</i>	Quaestiō, ōnis, <i>question.</i>
Minōr, ūs, ōris ( <i>comp. of parvus</i> ), <i>smaller.</i>	Rōtundūs, ā, ūm, <i>round.</i>
Mobilis, ē, <i>movable.</i>	Undē, <i>whence.</i>

## 484. Exercises.

(a) 1. Estne animus immortalis? 2. Visne miser esse? 3. Quis enumēret artium multitudinē? 4. Nescio, unde sol ignem habeat. 5. Quid dicam nescio. 6. Olim quaestio erat, num terra rotunda esset. 7. Utrum major est sol, an minor, quam terra? 8. Num sol mobilis, an immobilis? 9. Sumusne immortāles, an mortāles?

(b) 1. Who has come? 2. I do not know who has come. 3. Do not all men wish to live? 4. Do you fear that the king will be conquered? 5. Do you not fear that we shall be condemned to death? 6. What did he say? 7. We do not know what he said. 8. Are they rich or poor? 9. You do not know whether we are rich or poor. 10. Whence does the moon derive (*habēre*) her light? 11. He does not know whence the moon derives her light. 12. Who knows whence the sun derives his light?

## LESSON LXXXII.

*Conditional Sentences.—Subjunctive in Relative Clauses  
and with Quum.*

485. EVERY conditional sentence consists of two parts, *the condition and the consequence*; e. g.,

Sī quīd hābeāt, dābīt.

If he has any thing, he will give it.

REM.—Here *si quīd hābeāt* is the *condition*, and *dābīt* the *consequence*.

486. Conditional sentences are of three kinds:

- 1) Those which assume the *condition* to be *true*;

e. g.,

Sī quīd hābēt, dāt.

If he has any thing, he gives it.

- 2) Those which represent the condition as *possible*; e. g.,

Sī quīd hābeāt, dābīt.

If he has any thing, he will give it.

- 3) Those which represent the condition as *impossible*; e. g.,

1. Sī quīd hābērēt, dārēt.

If he had any thing, he would give it.

2. Sī quīd hābuissēt, dēdissēt.

If he had had any thing, he would have given it.

487. It must be observed:

- 1) That *the condition* is expressed in the first of the above classes by the *indicative*, in the second by the *subjunctive present* or *perfect*, and in the third by the *subjunctive imperfect* or *pluperfect*.

- 2) That *the consequence* is expressed in the first two of these classes by the *indicative* (or sometimes by the *imperative*), and in the third by the *subjunctive imperfect* or *pluperfect*.

488. The relative clause takes the subjunctive:

- 1) When it expresses a *purpose* or *result*; e. g.,

1. Lēgātōs mīsērunt, quī dicērent.

They sent ambassadors to say (*that they might say*).

2. Nēquē ēnīm tū īs ēs quī nesciās.

Nor indeed are you such an one as not to know (*who may not know*).

- 2) When it *defines* or *explains* some indefinite antecedent, whether affirmative or negative; e. g.

1. Sunt quī pūtent.

There are (some) who think, or some persons think.

2. Nēmō est, quī haud intēllīgāt.

There is no one who does not understand.

489. Quūm (cūm) takes the subjunctive when it introduces a *cause* or *reason*, or in any way shows the dependence of one event upon another; e. g.,

Quae cūm itā sint.

Since these things (*lit.* which things) are so.

490. Quum, as an adverb of time (*when*), takes the indicative; e. g.,

Itēr faciēbām quūm Balbūm vidēbām.

I was travelling *when* I saw Balbus.

The use of *quūm* with the *perfect* or *pluperfect subjunctive* to supply the place of a perfect active participle, has already been noticed (367).

## 491. VOCABULARY.

Consulĕrĕ, sŭlu, sult, *to consult, ask advice.*

Natiō, ōnis, *nation.*

Pertimescĕrĕ, tĭmu, *to fear greatly.*

Suaderĕ, suās, suās, *to advise.*

Sustinĕrĕ, tĭnu, tent, *to sustain, withstand.*

Vulnerārĕ, av, at, *to wound.*

## 492. Exercises.

(a) 1. Peccāvit, si id fecit. 2. Peccābit, si id faciat. 3. Peccārent, si id facĕrent. 4. Peccāvissent, si id fecissent. 5. Si vis beātus, impĕra anĭmo. 6. Si me consŭlis, suadeo. 7. Patriam auro, si potuisset, vendidisset. 8. Sunt qui rideant. 9. Erant qui saltavissent. 10. Caesar equitātum, qui sustinĕret hostĭum impĕtum, misit. 11. Nulla est enim natio quam pertimescāmus.

(b) 1. If he is alive (*lives*), he is now at Athens. 2. If he remains at Athens, he will learn much. 3. If he had gone to Rome, he would have been killed. 4. They would have sold their country, if they could. 5. If the king had been in the city, he would have pardoned you. 6. There were some who were wounded. 7. Since we cannot remain at Rome, we will go to Athens. 8. Caesar had sent two legions to attack (make an attack upon) the enemy.

## LESSON LXXXVII.

*Participles.*

493. PARTICIPLES assume an assertion which may be formally stated in a sentence whenever it is necessary or convenient to do so; thus, *puĕr rĭdens*, may be vari-

ously translated, according to the connection; as, *the boy who laughs, the boy when he laughs, &c.*

494. Participles may sometimes be translated by a relative clause; e. g.,

1. Puēr rīdens { *the boy who laughs.*  
                  { *the boy who was laughing.*
2. Puēr rīsūrūs, { *the boy who is going to laugh.*  
                      { *the boy who will laugh.*
3. Puēr āmātūs, *the boy who is (or was) loved.*
4. Puēr āmandūs, *the boy who ought to be loved.*

495. If no substantive is expressed, supply *man, men, he, she, or those, &c.*; e. g.,

1. Rīdentīs, *of him who laughs.*
2. Rīdentiūm, *of those who laugh.*

496. With a neuter plural participle, supply *things*; e. g.,

- Praeteritūrā, { *things that will pass away.*  
                      { *what will pass away.*

REM.—Participles, being parts of verbs, of course govern the same cases.

497. Participles may sometimes be translated by corresponding verbs with *when* or *while*; e. g.,

Rīdens, *when (or while) he is (or was) laughing.*

REM.—In a sentence with *when* or *while*, we often omit the auxiliary verb; e. g.,

Rīdens, *when laughing.*

498. If the participle stands alone, *he, they, a man, men, or one, &c.*, must be supplied as the subject of the verb; e. g.,

1. Rīdens, *when he (or one) is laughing.*
2. Rīdentēs, *when men (or they) are laughing.*

499. Participles may sometimes be translated by corresponding verbs with *if*; e. g.,

1. Rīdens, *if a man (he or one) laughs.*
2. Amātūs, *if a man (he or one) is loved.*

500. Participles may sometimes be translated by corresponding verbs with *because*, *for*, *since*, or by participial substantives with *from* or *through*.

501. Dūbītans, {
1. *because I doubt.*
  2. *for I doubt.*
  3. *since I doubt.*
  4. *from doubting.*
  5. *through doubting.*

## 502. VOCABULARY.

Adulātōr, orīs, *flatterer.*

Disjungērē, junx, junct, *to separate.*

Durārē, av, at, *to last.*

Expellērē, pūl, pula, *to expel, banish.*

Felicitās, atis, *happiness.*

Immensūs, ā, ūm, *immense.*

Innoxius, ā, ūm, *harmless.*

Intervallūm, i, *distance, space.*

Perfidia, ae, *perfidy.*

Perpētuo, *for ever.*

Pervēnirē, vēn, vent, *to arrive at, reach.*

Piūs, ā, ūm, *pious.*

Plācēre, plācu, plācīt, *to please.*

Rēvertērē, vert, vers, *to return, turn back.*

Sātiārē, av, at, *to satisfy.*

Vidērī, vīs, *to seem.*

Vitūpērārē, av, at, *to reprove, criticise.*

## 503. Exercises.

(a) 1. Sapiens bona semper placitūra laudat. 2. Pii homīnes ad felicitātem perpetuo duratūram pervenient. 3. Adulātor aut laudat vituperanda, aut vituperat laudanda. 4. Leōnes satiāti (497) innoxii sunt. 5. Equum emptūrus (499) cave ne decipiāris. 6. Roma expulsus Carthagine puēros docēbit. 7. Respondent



se perfidiam veritos (501) revertisse. 8. Stellae nobis parvae videntur, immenso intervallo a nobis disjunctae.

(b) 1. He who does wrong (494) is never happy. 2. Those who read this book will learn much. 3. There are some who think (488, 2) little of happiness which will not last. 4. The wise prize very highly the happiness which will last for ever. 5. They learned much while remaining at Rome (497). 6. If you love your parents (499), you will obey them. 7. We shall pardon him if condemned. 8. He fled from the city, because he had been accused of bribery (501).

## LESSON LXXXIV.

### *Participles—continued.*

504. PARTICIPLES may sometimes be translated by verbs with *though* or *although*; e. g.,

1. Rīdens, *though he laughs.*
2. Amātūs, *though he is (was; &c.) loved.*

505. We often omit the auxiliary verb after *though*, e. g.,

1. Rīdens, *though laughing.*
2. Amātūs, *though loved.*

506. Participles may sometimes be translated by verbs or participial nouns, with *after*; e. g.,

- |                   |   |  |
|-------------------|---|--|
| 1. Passūs (Act.), | { | 1. <i>after he has (had) suffered.</i>   |
|                   |   | 2. <i>after suffering.</i>               |
| 2. Amātūs,        | { | 1. <i>after he was (has been) loved.</i> |
|                   |   | 2. <i>after he had been loved.</i>       |
|                   |   | 3. <i>after having been loved.</i>       |

507. Participles may sometimes be translated by corresponding verbs followed by the conjunction *and*; e. g.

1. Rīdens exclāmāt.

*He laughs and exclaims* (lit. laughing he exclaims).

2. Rīdens exclāmāvīt.

*He laughed and exclaimed.*

REM.—In the above examples the participle is construed by the same tense as the accompanying verb; sometimes, however, a different tense must be used; e. g.,

Correptūm lēpōrēm lēcērāt.

*He has seized the hare and is mangling it.*

508. Participles with *nōn* may be translated by participial substantives depending upon the preposition *without*; e. g.,

1. Nōn rīdens, *without laughing.*

2. Nōn amātūs, { 1. *without being loved.*  
2. *without loving him.*

3. Vītūpērāt lībrōs nōn intellectōs.

*He censures books (not understood) without understanding them.*

509. Participles in the ablative absolute may be construed like participles in any other construction, the Latin substantive being translated either by the nominative or the objective; e. g.,

Tarquīniō rēgnantē, *when Tarquin was king.*

Tē sēdentē, *as you were sitting.*

Captā Tȳrō, *after Tyre was taken.*

510. Participles may often be translated by substantives of kindred meaning; e. g.,

*Lēgēs violātae, the violation of the laws (lit. the violated laws).*

*Vērē apprōpinquantē, on the approach of spring.*

### 511. VOCABULARY.

*Adventūs, ūs, approach.*

*Antē (prep. with accus.), before.*

*Apprōpinquārē, av, at, to approach.*

*Coenā, ae, supper, feast.*

*Cōgnoscērē, nōv, nīt, to ascertain.*

*Comprehendērē, hend, hens, to arrest, comprehend.*

*Intelligērē, lex, lect, to understand.*

*Ponērē, pōsu, pōsīt, to place.*

*Prōficiat, prōfect, to set out, to start.*

*Transīrē, ī, īt, to pass over.*

*Vēr, vērīs, n., spring.*

### 512. Exercises.

(a) 1. Ad coenam vocātus, nondum venit. 2. Multa transīmus ante oculos posīta. 3. Oculus, se non videns, alia videt. 4. Cum legionībus profectus celerīter adēro. 5. Comprehensum homīnem Romam ducēbant. 6. Non petens regnum accēpit. 7. Multi vitupērant libros non intellectos. 8. His responsis datis, itērū ad eum Caesar legātos mittit. 9. Cognīto Caesāris adventu, legātos ad eum mittunt.

(b) 1. He will not be condemned, although he has been accused of treason. 2. Although invited to the feast, they will not come. 3. They were accused and (507) condemned. 4. He will receive the government without seeking it (508). 5. We censure these boys without knowing them. 6. They were put to death without having been condemned. 7. Having ascertained the approach of our army, the enemy fled. 8. Birds will return on the approach of spring.

## LESSON LXXXV.

*Derivation of Nouns.*

513. WORDS may be formed in two ways; viz.,

- 1) By *derivation*, i. e., by the addition of certain endings to the roots of other words; e. g., *moerōr*, sadness, formed by the addition of *ōr* to *moer*, the root of *moerēř*, to be sad.
- 2) By *composition*, i. e., by the union of two or more words, or their roots; e. g., *běněvōlens*, benevolent, well-wishing, from *běně*, well, and *vōlens*, wishing.

514. Nouns may be derived from other nouns, and from adjectives and verbs.

515. The endings, *lūs*, *lā*, *lūm*, added to the root of nouns, with a connecting vowel (sometimes *ī* or *ō*, but generally *u*, which sometimes takes *c* before it), form *diminutives*; e. g., *hortūlūs* (*hortus*), a little garden.

516. The masculine endings, *īdēs* (or *īdēs*), *ādēs*, and *iādēs*, and the feminine *ās* and *īs*, added to the root of names of persons, form *patronymics* or *names of descent*; e. g., *Priāmīdēs* (*Priamus*), a son or descendant of *Priam*; *Tantālīs* (*Tantalus*), daughter of *Tantalus*.

517. *Atūs*, *ītās*, and *ūrā*, added to the root of nouns, denote *office*, *rank*, or *body of men*; e. g., *consūlātūs* (*consul*), consulship; *cīvītās* (*civis*), state, body of citizens.

518. *Lūm*, added to the root of nouns, denotes the *state* or *condition* of the objects expressed by the primitive; sometimes an *assemblage* of those objects; e. g., *servitūm* (*servus*), either servitude or domestics.

519. The endings, *ītās*, *iā*, *ītā*, *ītūd*, and *tūs* (gen.

*tūtis*), added to the root of adjectives, form *abstract* nouns; e. g., *bōnītās* (bonus), goodness; *diligentiā* (diligens), diligence; *multitūdō* (multus), multitude; *virtūs* (vir), virtue, manliness.

520. The endings, *ā* and *ō*, added to the first root of verbs, and *ōr* (fem. *rix*) to the third, denote the *agent* or *person who*; e. g., *scribā* (scribere), a scribe; *bībo* (bibere), a drunkard; *victōr* (vincere), a conqueror.

521. *Or* and *iūm*, added to the first root, and *iō*, *ūs*, and *ūrā* to the third, denote the *action* or *state* expressed by the verb; e. g., *pāvōr* (pavere), fear; *gaudium* (gaudere), joy; *actiō* (agere, act), an action, &c.

522. *Idō* and *igō*, added to the first root, denote the *abstract* of the primitive; e. g., *cūpīdō* (cupere), desire.

523. *Mēn* and *mentūm*, added to the first root, denote the *thing done*, *that by which it is done*, or *that which does*; e. g., *tegmen* (tegere), a covering; *flūmen* (fluere), a stream, river.

524. *Um*, added to the third root, denotes the *action* of the verb, or the *means* or *result* of it; e. g., *tectum* (tegere), roof, covering; *scriptum* (scribere), a writing.

## 525. VOCABULARY.

Adjūvarē, jāv. jūt, *to aid, help.*  
 Adventūs, ūs (advenire), *approach, arrival.*  
 Circumdārē, dēd, dāt, *to surround.*  
 Civitas, atis (civis), *state.*  
 Diligentiā, ae (diligens), *diligence.*  
 Fūgarē, av at, *to put to flight.*  
 Hortulūs, † (hortus), *a little garden.*

Impēratōr, oris (imperare), *commander.*  
 Multitūdō, inis (multus), *multitude.*  
 Nuntiārē, av, at, *to announce, report.*  
 Pastōr, oris (pascere), *shepherd.*  
 Sēnatūs, ūs (senex), *senate.*

526. *Exercises.*

(a) 1. Hortūli nostri multos flores habent. 2. Imperātor quam maxīmas copias comparāvit. 3. Dili-gentia tua labōrem patris adjūvit. 4. Hic nuntius ad-ventum tuum nuntiavērat. 5. Cicerōnem magna po-pūli multitūdo circumdēdit. 6. Pastor fugāvit lupum qui ovem unam momordērat.

(b) 1. Have you seen the shepherd's dog? 2. We went to see the boy's little garden. 3. Let them not come into the senate. 4. He has announced the arrival of the king. 5. Did you not announce the arrival of the leaders? 6. Caesar said that he would put to flight the forces of the enemy. 7. The commander has sent messengers to Rome. 8. The leaders will collect as large forces as possible. 9. The laws of the state have been violated by the commander.

## LESSON LXXXVI.

*Derivation of Adjectives.*

527. ADJECTIVES may be derived from nouns and verbs.

528. The endings, *ālīs*, *ārīs*, *īcūs*, *īlīs*, and *iūs*, added to the root of nouns — *of*, *belonging to*, *related to*; e. g., *rēgālīs* (rex), regal; *pōpūlārīs* (populus), popular; *cīvīlīs* (civis), civil, &c.

529. *Aceūs*, *iciūs*, *eūs*, and *inūs*, denote the *material*; the first two sometimes *origin*, and the last two some-times *similarity*; e. g., *pātriciūs* (pater), patrician; *au-reūs* (aurum), golden, &c.

530. *Csus* and *lentus* (often with connecting vowel *u*), denote *fulness, abundance*; e. g., *āquōsus* (aqua), watery; *lūtulentus* (lutum), full of mud.

531. *Āeūs*, *ānūs* (*iānūs*), *iēnsis*, and *īnūs*, added to the root of proper names of places, denote *native of, occupant of*; e. g., *Rōmānūs* (Roma), a Roman; *Athēniēnsis* (Athenae), an Athenian, &c.

532. *Ariūs* (generally used substantively), denotes *occupation, sometimes pertaining to*; e. g., *consiliāriūs* (consilium), counselling, or a counsellor.

533. *Atūs*, *ītūs*, and *ūtūs* — *furnished with, &c.*; e. g., *aurātūs* (aurum), gilt; *turrītūs* (turris), turreted, &c.

534. *Stūs* — *being in, having in one's self*; e. g., *rōbustūs* (robur), robust.

535. Adjectives may be derived from verbs by the use of the following endings:

- 1) *Ax* — *having a propensity* to perform the action of the verb; e. g., *ēdax* (edēre), voracious.
- 2) *Bundūs* and *cundūs* — the *strengthened* meaning of the present participle used adjectively; e. g., *mīrābundūs* (mirāri), full of admiration, &c.
- 3) *Idūs* (and sometimes *uūs*) — the *quality* indicated by the verb; e. g., *algīdus* (algēre), cold.
- 4) *Ilīs* and *bīlīs* — *capable of being, easy to be*; e. g., *dōcīlīs* (docēre), easy to be taught, docile; *crēdībīlīs* (credēre), capable of being believed, credible.

## 536. VOCABULARY.

Anulūs, *l*, a ring.

Athēniēnsis, ē (Athēnae), Athenian.

Carthagīniēnsis, ē (Carthago), Carthaginian.

Civilis, ē (civis), civil.

Fallax, acis (fallēre), false, deceptive.

Fabulōsus, ā, ūm (fabūla), fabulous.

Gallīcūs, ā, ūm (Gallia), *Gallie*,  
*pertaining to Gaul.*

Incredībilis, ē (in and credere),  
*incredible.*

Narrāre, av, at, to *-elate.*

Narratīō, ōnis (narrare), *narrative, story.*

Octō, *eight.*

Pōpūlaris, ē (popūlus), *popular.*

Socrātes, is, *Socrates*, a celebra-  
*ted Athenian philosopher*

Spēciosūs, ā, ūm (species), *spe-*  
*cious, plausible.*

Vincirē, vinx, vinct, *to bind.*

### 537. Exercises.

(a) 1. Haec narratio est fabulōsa. 2. Non sum tam imprūdens, ut verbis speciōsis decipiar. 3. Spe fallāci decepti estis; cavēte ne itērum decipiamini. 4. Quis credat illud quod incredibīle est? 5. Caesar octo libris bellum Gallīcum, tribus civīle narrāvit. 6. Athenienses Socrātis damnāti (506) pedem ferro vinxērunt.

(b) 1. Many have been deceived by false hopes. 2. Let us not be deceived by false words. 3. These narratives are incredible. 4. He has given his sister two gold rings. 5. The Romans waged many wars. 6. The Carthaginians were conquered by the Romans. 7. The Athenians condemned Socrates to death. 8. They cannot deceive the judge by specious words. 9. The senator wishes to be popular. 10. They are waging a civil war.

## LESSON LXXXVII.

### *Derivation of Verbs and Adverbs.*

538. VERBS may be derived from nouns and adjectives, and from other verbs.

539. Verbs derived from nouns and adjectives are generally called *denominatives*.



540. Transitive denominatives end in *ārē* (dep. *ārī*) or *īrē*; e. g., *cūrārē* (cura), to take care of; *fīnīrē* (finis), to finish.

541. Intransitive denominatives end in *ērē* or *scērē*; e. g., *flōrērē* (flos), to bloom; *mātūrescērē* (maturus), to become ripe.

REM.—The ending *scērē* is joined to the root by means of a connecting vowel; *e* is the connecting vowel in the above example.

542. Verbs derived from other verbs comprise four distinct classes, viz.: *frequentatives*, *inchoatives*, *desideratives*, and *diminutives*.

543. Frequentatives denote *repeated* or *continued* action, and are formed by the addition of *ārē* or *ūtārē* to the third root, except in the first conjugation, where they add *ūtārē* to the first root; e. g., *hābītārē* (habēre), to inhabit; *vōlītārē* (volāre), to fly often, to flit.

544. Inchoatives denote the *beginning* or, *increase* of an action, and are formed by the addition of *scērē* to the first root with a connecting vowel; e. g., *clārescērē* (clārēre), to grow bright, or clear.

545. Desideratives denote a *desire* to do the action of the primitive, and are formed by adding *ūrērē* to the third root; e. g., *ēsūrērē* (edēre), to desire to eat.

546. Diminutives denote a *feeble* action, and are formed by adding *illārē* to the first root; e. g., *cantillārē* (cantāre), to sing in a feeble voice.

547. Derivative adverbs generally take one of the following endings, viz.:

- 1) When derived from nouns, *īm*, *ītūs*; e. g., *grēgātīm* (grex), in flocks; *fundītūs* (fundus), from the foundation.
- 2) When derived from adjectives, *ē*, *ē*, *o*, *ter* (com-

necting vowel *i* except after *n*); e. g., *vērē* (verus), truly; *fācīlē* (facilis), easily; *cītō* (citus), quickly; *fortītēr* (fortis), bravely.

- 3) When derived from verbs, *īm* added to the third root; e. g., *stātīm* (stare, stat), immediately.

### 548. VOCABULARY.

Cantārē, av, at (canēre), to sing.

Cūrārē, av, at (cura), to take care of.

[guard.

Custōdirē, iv, it (custos), to

Finirē, iv, it (finis), to finish.

Flōrescērē (flōrērē), to begin to bloom.

Fortītēr (fortis), bravely.

Germaniā, ae, Germany.

Hābitārē, av, at (habēre), to inhabit, dwell.

Lūdus, i, play, sport, pl. games.

Nuntiārē, av, at (nuntius), to announce, report.

Occultārē, av, at (occultēre), to hide, conceal.

Provinciā, ae (pro and vincēre), province.

Pugnārē, av, at (pugna), to fight.

Saevirē, iv or i, it (saevus), to rage, to be cruel.

Spectārē, av, at (spēcērē), to see, look at.

Stātīm (stare), immediately.

Tectūm, i (tegēre), a covering, roof, house.

Vigilārē, av, at (vigil), to watch, remain awake.

### 549. Exercises.

(a) 1. Labōrem nostrum finivīmus. 2. Canes tecta nostra custodivērunt. 3. Bellum saevit per Germaniam. 4. Dormivistīne, an vigilāsti? 5. Puellae in horto cantābant. 6. Corpōra nostra curaverāmus. 7. Puēri ludos spectavērunt. 8. Arbōres florescunt. 9. Hic ad summam gloriam florescēbat. 10. Decrevīmus habitāre in provincia. 11. Consilia sua occultavērunt. 12. Si te vidērit, statim curret ad te.

(b) 1. Have they announced your arrival? 2. Who will announce the arrival of the king? 3. Caesar sent

very large forces to guard the city. 4. They have gone into the country to witness the games. 5. They have finished the war. 6. We wish to finish the work. 7. The enemy are said to have fought bravely. 8. The flowers are beginning to bloom in our garden. 9. Do you wish to live (dwell) in the city? 10. We wish to live in the country.

## LESSON LXXXVIII.

### *Composition of Words.*

550. PREPOSITIONS often enter into composition with other words, as prefixes.

**REM.**—Many prepositions undergo no change of form on entering into composition, and merely impart to the simple word their own force. These, of course, require no special notice; others, however, present some peculiarities.

- 1) **A, ab, abs** — *away from*; e. g., *abstīnērē* (abs and tēnērē), to abstain from. In substantives and adjectives, it denotes *privation*; e. g., *amens* (ā and menē), without mind, mad.
- 2) **Ad** — *to* (*d* often assimilated before consonants, except *d, j, m,* and *v*); e. g., *accīpērē* (ad and cāpērē), to accept.
- 3) **Cōn (cūm)** — *with, together*, sometimes *completely* (*co* before *h* and *vowels*; *com* before *b, p,* and sometimes before a vowel; *n* assimilated before *l, m,* and *r*); e. g., *condūcērē* (con and dūcērē), to lead together, collect.
- 4) **Dē** — *from, down*; e. g., *dēdūcērē* (dē and dūcērē), to deduce. In substantives and adjectives, *privation*; e. g., *dēmens* (de and mens), mad.
- 5) **Ex** — *out of, thoroughly* (*e* before liquids and *b, d, g,* and *v*; *ef* before *f*); e. g., *expugnāre* (ex and pugnāre), to vanquish, storm.
- 6) **In** — *into, on, against* (*im* before *b* and *p*; *i* before *gn*; *n* assimilated before *l, m,* and *r*); e. g., *incurrērē* (in and currērē).

to attack. In adjectives, *not*; e. g., *indignus* (in and dignus), unworthy.

- 7) Ob — *against* (*b* assimilated before *c, f*, and usually *p*); e. g., *oppōnĕrĕ* (ob and ponĕrĕ), to place against, to oppose.
- 8) Prō — *for, forth* (*pro* before vowels); e. g., *prōpōnĕrĕ* (pro and ponĕrĕ), to set forth, propose.
- 9) Sūb — *under, from below, somewhat* (*b* assimilated before *c, f, g*, and sometimes *m, p*, and *r*; *sub* in a few words); e. g., *subjĕcĕrĕ* (sub and jacĕrĕ), to throw under, to subject.

551. The inseparable prepositions, *amb*, around, about; *dīs* or *dī*, asunder; *rĕ* (*rĕd* before vowels), back, again, away; *sĕ*, without, apart from; and *vĕ*, not, often occur as prefixes in compound words; e. g., *ambīrĕ* (amb and ire), to go round; *dispōnĕrĕ* (dis and ponĕrĕ), to put asunder, to distribute; *rĕdīrĕ* (red and ire), to return; *sĕdūcĕrĕ* (se and ducĕrĕ), to lead apart; *vĕsānūs* (ve and sanus), not sane, insane.

552. Adverbs are sometimes used as prefixes; e. g., *bĕnĕvōlens* (bene and volens), benevolent; *mālĕvōlens* (male and volens), wishing ill, malevolent.

553. Certain vowel-changes often take place in forming compound words; thus, *a, e* and *ae* are often changed into *i* (*a* sometimes into *e*); e. g., *accĭpĕrĕ* (ad and capĕrĕ), *abstĭnĕrĕ* (abs and tenĕrĕ), *occĭdĕrĕ* (ob and caedĕrĕ).

REM. 1.—Having examined the prefixes, we pass to notice a few terminations of frequent occurrence in compound words.

REM. 2.—When the first part of a compound is a noun, the connecting vowel is generally short *i*, as in *āgrĭcŏlā* (ager and colĕrĕ), a husbandman.

554. From *fācĕrĕ*, to do, are derived, (1) *fex*, agent; e. g., *artĭfex* (ars and facĕrĕ), an artist; (2) *fĭcĭūm*, corresponding substantive of thing; e. g., *artĭfĭcĭūm*, an art; (3) *fĭcūs*, he who does (*adjectively*); e. g., *bĕnĕfĭcūs*, beneficent.

555. From *căpěřě*, to take, are derived, (1) *cepa*, agent; e. g., *princeps* (primus and capěre), one who takes the first (place), a prince, a leader; (2) *căpiũm*, corresponding substantive of thing; e. g., *princăpiũm*, a beginning.

556. From *dăcěřě*, to speak, are derived, (1) *dex*, agent, one who speaks: e. g., *index*, an informer; (2) *dăciũm*, corresponding substantive of thing; e. g., *indăciũm*, a disclosure; (3) *dăcũs* (*adj.*), speaking; e. g., *măledăcũs*, slanderous.

557. From *căněřě*, to sing; *cěn*, agent; e. g., *tăbăcěn* (tuba and caněre), a trumpeter.

558. From *vellě*, to wish; *vőlens* and *vőlũs* (*adj.*), wishing; e. g., *běnevőlens* and *běnevőlũs* (bene and velle), benevolent.

559. From *fěřě* and *gěřěřě*, to bear; *fěr* and *gěr*, one who bears; e. g., *Lăcăfěr* (lux and ferre), Venus as morning star, the bearer of light; *armăgěr* (arma and gerěre), armor-bearer.

560. From *cőlěřě*, to cultivate; *cőlă*, one who cultivates, or dwells in; e. g., *ăgrăcőlă* (ager and colěre), a field-tiller, a husbandman.

### 561. VOCABULARY.

Adducěřě, dux, duct (ad and ducěre), to bring to.

Attingěřě, tīg, tact (ad and tangěre), to reach, attain.

Conděřě, did, dīt (con and dare), to found.

Convěnřě, věn, vent (con and venřě), to assemble, convene.

Expăgnarě, av, at (ex and pugnare), to take by storm.

Incertũs, ă, ũm (in and certus), uncertain.

Incőlă, ae, m. & f. (in and colěre), an inhabitant.

Invaděřě, văs, văs (in and vaděre), to go against, invade.

Ităliă, ae, Italy.

Obsěs, idis, m. & f., hostage.

Occiděřě, cid, cās (ob and caděre), to fall, set.

Occidēre, cid, cis (ob and cae-  
dēre), to kill.

Philōsōphūs, I, *philosopher*.

Possidēre, ēd, ess, to possess.

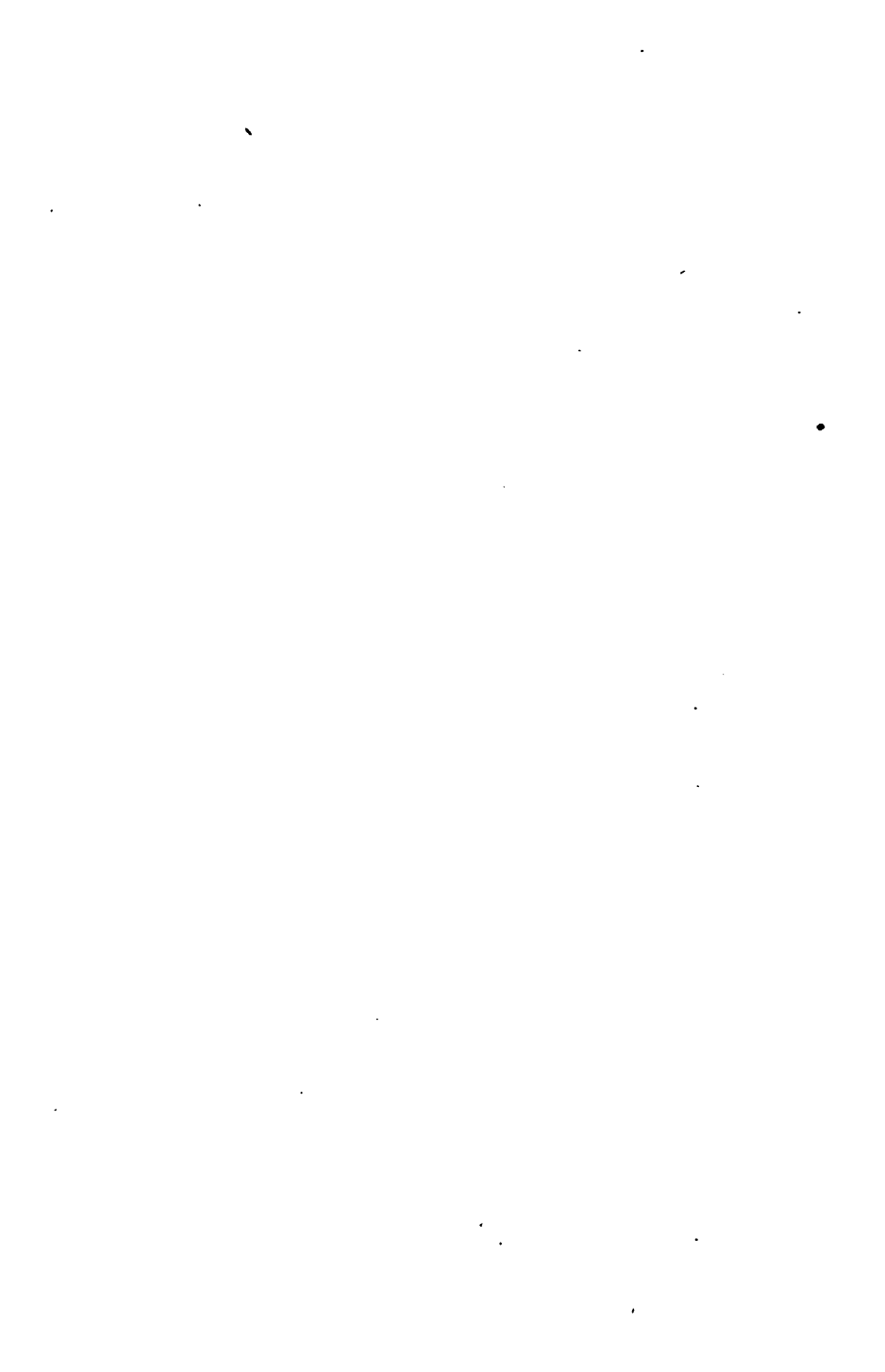
Princeps, ipīs (primus and  
capere), the first, a leader,  
chief.

Vērūm, I, *truth*.

### 562. Exercises.

(a) 1. Multi philosophi verum non attigerunt. 2. Rex portas urbis clausit hostibus invadentibus. 3. Has terras possidemus; illas expugnabimus. 4. Galli Romanam expugnaverunt. 5. Sol post montes illos in mare occidit. 6. Hic unus miles duos aut tres occidit. 7. Incolae ad eum legatos miserunt. 8. Caesar omnem senatum ad se convenire, principumque liberos obsides ad se adduci iussit. 9. Incertum est quo tempore Dido Carthaginem condiderit.

(b) 1. The commander will collect large forces and invade Italy. 2. After having waged war for many years, they took the city by storm. 3. Caesar had ordered all the inhabitants to assemble in his presence. 4. Let us put the invading enemy to flight. 5. Romulus is said to have founded Rome. 6. It is uncertain at what time Carthage was founded. 7. I do not know at what time he returned home. 8. They say that Caius was killed in the first battle.



## PARADIGMS.

---

### *Nouns.—Five Declensions.*

#### 563 ENDINGS of the Genitive Singular.

Dec. I.	Dec. II.	Dec. III.	Dec. IV.	Dec. V.
ae,	I,	is,	us	ŏl.*

REM.—Some Greek nouns are exceptions.

#### 564. Gender in Latin is,

- 1) Natural, when determined by sex, as in English ; as, *hōmō*, a man, *masc.* ; *mūliēr*, a woman, *fem.*
- 2) *Grammatical*, when not determined by sex ; as, *sermō*, a discourse, *masc.* ; *laurūs*, a laurel, *fem.*

#### 565. Natural Gender.

Masculine.	Feminine.	Common.
Names of males.	Names of females.	Names applicable to both sexes.

566. The grammatical gender of nouns is determined partly by their signification, but principally by their endings.

#### 567. Grammatical Gender, when not determined by nom. ending.

Masculine.	Feminine.	Neuter.
Most names of rivers, winds, and months.	Most names of countries, towns, islands, and trees.	Indeclinable nouns and clauses used as nouns.

REM.—Grammatical gender, as determined by the endings of nouns, will be noticed in connection with the several declensions.

#### 568. *First Declension.*

1. Characteristic *ae*.
2. Nominative endings : Latin *a* ; Greek *e*, *as*, and *es*.
3. Grammatical gender : *a* and *e*, *fem.* ; *as* and *es*, *masc.*

REM.—Cases coming under previous rules (565 and 567) are, of course, excepted.

\* In this ending *e* is long, except in *spēl*, *fidēl*, and *rēl*.



## 4. Case-endings.

	Nom.	Gen.	Dat.	Acc.	Voc.	Abl.
<i>Sing.</i>	ā,	ae,	ae,	ām,	ā,	ā.
<i>Plur.</i>	ae,	ārum,	is,	ās,	ae,	is.

REM.—The declension of Greek nouns presents some exceptions.

## 5. Paradigms.

1. *Mūsā, a muse.*

<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>
N. <i>Mūs-ā,</i>	<i>Mūs-ae.</i>
G. <i>Mūs-ae,</i>	<i>Mūs-ārum.</i>
D. <i>Mūs-ae,</i>	<i>Mūs-is.</i>
A. <i>Mūs-ām,</i>	<i>Mūs-ās.</i>
V. <i>Mūs-ā,</i>	<i>Mūs-ae.</i>
A. <i>Mūs-ā,</i>	<i>Mūs-is.</i>

2. *Epitōmē, an abridgment.*

<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>
N. <i>Epitōm-ē,</i>	<i>Epitōm-ae.</i>
G. <i>Epitōm-es,</i>	<i>Epitōm-ārum.</i>
D. <i>Epitōm-ae,</i>	<i>Epitōm-is.</i>
A. <i>Epitōm-en,</i>	<i>Epitōm-ās.</i>
V. <i>Epitōm-ē,</i>	<i>Epitōm-ae.</i>
A. <i>Epitōm-ē,</i>	<i>Epitōm-is.</i>

3. *Aenēās (a man's name).*

N. <i>Aenē-ās.</i>
G. <i>Aenē-ae.</i>
D. <i>Aenē-ae.</i>
A. <i>Aenē-ām (ān).</i>
V. <i>Aenē-ā.</i>
A. <i>Aenē-ā.</i>

4. *Anchisēs (a man's name).*

N. <i>Anchis-ēs.</i>
G. <i>Anchis-ae.</i>
D. <i>Anchis-ae.</i>
A. <i>Anchis-en.</i>
V. <i>Anchis-ē (ā).</i>
A. <i>Anchis-ē (ā).</i>

569. *Second Declension.*1. Characteristic *i*.2. Nominative endings: Latin, *er, ir, us, um*; Greek, *os* and *on*.3. Grammatical gender: *um* and *on*, neut.; the rest masculine, except,

1) *Alvūs, dōmūs, hūmūs*, and *vannūs*, which are *feminine*; *pēlāgūs* and *vīrūs*, *neuter*; and *vulgūs*, generally *neuter*, but sometimes masculine.

2) Such as come under previous rules.

## 4. Case-endings.

	Nom.	Gen.	Dat.	Acc.	Voc.	Abl.
<i>Sing.</i>	Nom. end.	<i>i,</i>	<i>ō,</i>	<i>ūm,</i>	<i>ē</i> (or like nom.),	<i>ī,</i>
<i>Plur.</i>	<i>i</i> ( <i>neut. ā</i> ),	<i>ōrum,</i>	<i>is,</i>	<i>os</i> ( <i>neut. ā</i> ),	<i>i</i> ( <i>neut. ā</i> ),	<i>is.</i>

REM.—A few Greek nouns are exceptions

## 5. Paradigms.

Servūs, <i>slave.</i>	Rēgnūm, <i>king- dom.</i>	Gēnēr, <i>son-in- law.</i>	Agēr, <i>field.</i>
-----------------------	-------------------------------	--------------------------------	---------------------

## SINGULAR.

Serv-ūs.	Rēgn-ūm.	Gēnēr.	Agēr.
Serv-I.	Rēgn-I.	Gēnēr-I.	Agr-I.
Serv-ō.	Rēgn-ō.	Gēnēr-ō.	Agr-ō.
Serv-ūm.	Rēgn-ūm.	Gēnēr-ūm.	Agr-ūm.
Serv-ē.	Rēgn-ūm.	Gēnēr.	Agēr.
Serv-ō.	Rēgn-ō.	Gēnēr-ō.	Agr-ō.

## FLURAL.

Serv-I.	Rēgn-ā.	Gēnēr-I.	Agr-I.
Serv-ōrūm.	Rēgn-ōrūm.	Gēnēr-ōrūm.	Agr-ōrūm.
Serv-Ia.	Rēgn-Ia.	Gēnēr-Ia.	Agr-Ia.
Serv-ōa.	Rēgn-ā.	Gēnēr-ōa.	Agr-ōa.
Serv-I.	Rēgn-ā.	Gēnēr-I.	Agr-I.
Serv-Ia.	Rēgn-Ia.	Gēnēr-Ia.	Agr-Ia.

REM.—VIR, a man, is declined like gēnēr.

## 6. Paradigms of Greek nouns.

1. Iliōn, <i>n. (name of a city).</i>	2. Dēlōs, <i>f. (name of an island).</i>
N. Ili-ōn.	N. Dēl-ōa.
G. Ili-I.	G. Dēl-I.
D. Ili-ō.	D. Dēl-ō.
A. Ili-ōn.	A. Dēl-ōn.
V. Ili-ōn.	V. Dēl-ē.
A. Ili-ō.	A. Dēl-ō.

## 570. Third Declension.

## 1. Characteristic ūs.

## 2. Nominative endings a, e, i, o, y, c, l, n, r, s, t, x.

## 3. Table of gender in the third declension.

Masculine.	Feminine.	Neuter.
er, or, os, es <i>increasing in gen. and o, except do, go, and io.</i>	do, go, io, as, is, ys, aus, s <i>impure, es not in- creasing in gen. and x.</i>	a, e, i, y, c, l, n, t, ar, ur, and us.

For exceptions, see 579.

## 4. Classification of nouns of the third declension, according to the formation of root from nominative ending.

Class I.]	Class II.	Class III.	Class IV.
Root like Nom.	Root adds a letter.	Root drops nom. ending.	Root changes nom. ending.

## 5. Masculine and feminine case-endings.

	Nom.	Gen.	Dat.	Acc.	Voc.	Abl.
<i>Sing.</i>	..	īa,	ī,	ēm, (īm),	..	ē (ī),
<i>Plur.</i>	ēs,	ūm (iīm),	ībūs,	ēs,	ēs,	ībūs.

REM. 1.—The inclosed endings *īm* and *ī* belong only to a few words.

REM. 2.—The ending *īam* of the genitive plural occurs in the following classes of nouns; viz.,

- 1) Neuters in *e*, *al*, and *ar*; as, *mārs, māriam; animal, animaliam*.
- 2) Nouns in *is* and *es* of Class III.; as, *hostis, hostiam; nābēs, nābiām*.
- 3) All monosyllables in *s* or *x* preceded by a consonant; as, *urbs, urbiam; ars, arciam*.
- 4) Nouns in *us* and *rs* (though in these *ām* is sometimes used); as, *ciens, clientiam; cohors, cohortiam*.

## 6. Neuter case-endings.

	Nom.	Gen.	Dat.	Acc.	Voc.	Abl.
<i>Sing.</i>	..	īa,	ī,	..	..	ē (ī),
<i>Plur.</i>	ā (iā),	ūm (iūm),	ībūs,	ā (iā),	ā (iā),	ībūs.

REM.—The inclosed endings belong to neuters in *e*, *al*, and *ar*.

571. CLASS I. comprises nouns in *c*,\* *l*, *n*, *r*, *t*, and *y*. These either have the root the same as the nominative singular, or form it (with a few exceptions) by one of the following slight vowel-changes:

- 1) Nouns in *tēr* and *bēr* generally drop *e* in the root: as, *pātēr*, a father; root, *pātr*.
- 2) Nouns in *ēr* generally change *ē* into *ī* in the root; as, *flūmēr*, a river; root, *flūmīn*.
- 3) Nouns in *ūt* change *ū* into *ī* in the root; as, *cāpūt*, a head; root, *cāpū*.

REM.—The quantity of the radical vowel is sometimes changed; this is the case in most nouns in *al* and *ar*, which generally lengthen the vowel in the root.

572. CLASS II. comprises nouns of the third declension in *a*, *o*, and a few in *i*. These form the root by adding a letter to the nominative singular.

- 1) Nouns in *a*, and a few in *i*, add *t*; as, *poēmā*, a poem; root, *poēmāt*: *hydrōmēlī*, mead; root, *hydrōmēlūt*.
- 2) Nouns in *o* add *n*; as, *leō*, a lion; root, *leōn*.

REM. 1.—*O* is long in the root.

REM. 2.—Nouns in *do* and *go* change *o* into *f*, before *n* in the root; as, *virgo*, a virgin; root, *virgin*.

---

\* There are only two nouns of this ending, one of which belongs to Class II.

573. CLASS III. comprises nouns of the third declension in *bs*, *ms*, *rs*, *x* (= *cs* or *gs*), *is*, *ys*, *e*, a few in *i*,\* and a few in *es*. They form the root by dropping the nominative ending.

- 1) Nouns in *bs*, *ms*, *ps*, and *ys*, drop *s*; *as*, *urbs*, a city; root, *urb*; *hiems*, winter; root, *hiēm*.
- 2) Nouns in *x* (= *cs* or *gs*) drop the *s* in *x*; *as*, *vox* (*cs*), a voice; root, *vōc*; *rex* (*gs*), a king; root, *rēg*.
- 3) Nouns in *is*, *e*, and a few in *es*, drop those endings; *as*, *hostis*, an enemy; root, *host*; *nubēs*, a cloud; root, *nūb*; *mārē*, a sea; root, *mār*.

574. CLASS IV. comprises nouns of the third declension in *as*, *os*, *us*, *ls*, *ns*, *rs*, and most of those in *es*. These form the root by changing *s* into *r*, *t*, or *d*.

- 1) Nouns in *as*, *ls*, *ns*, *rs*, and most of those in *es*, generally change *s* into *t*; *as*, *piētās*, piety; root, *piētāt*: *mons*, a mountain; root, *mont*: *ābiēs*, a fir-tree; root, *ābiēt*: *mīlēs*, a soldier; root, *mīlīt*. (See REM. 2, below.)

REM. 1.—Masculines in *as*, of Greek origin, insert *n* before *t* in the root; *as*, *elephas*, an elephant; root, *elephant*.

REM. 2.—Many nouns in *es* change *s* into *t*, before *t*, in the root; *as*, *mīlēs*; root, *mīlīt*.

- 2) Nouns in *os* and *us* generally change *s* into *r* or *t*; *as*, *flōs*, a flower; root, *flōr*: *sācerdōs*, a priest; root, *sācerdōt*: *virtūs*, virtue; root, *virtūt*: *gēnūs*, a kind; root, *gēnēr*: *tempūs*, time; root, *tempār*.

REM.—Most nouns in *us* change *s* into *r*, and *u* of the nominative becomes *i* or *ī* in the root, as in these examples.

#### 575. Paradigms.

Mūliēr, <i>f.</i> , a woman. (root, <i>same as nom.</i> [126].)	
Singular.	Plural.
N. Mūliēr,	Mūliēr-ēs.
G. Mūliēr-īs,	Mūliēr-ūm.
D. Mūliēr-ī,	Mūliēr-ībūs
A. Mūliēr-ēm,	Mūliēr-ēs.
V. Mūliēr,	Mūliēr-ēs.
A. Mūliēr-ē,	Mūliēr-ībūs.

Virgō, <i>f.</i> , a virgin. (root, <i>virgin</i> [131, 2. REM. 2].)	
Singular.	Plural.
N. Virgō,	Virgīn-ēs.
G. Virgīn-īs,	Virgīn-ūm.
D. Virgīn-ī,	Virgīn-ībūs.
A. Virgīn-ēm,	Virgīn-ēs.
V. Virgō,	Virgīn-ēs.
A. Virgīn-ē,	Virgīn-ībūs.

\* Nouns in *i* are of Greek origin; most of these are indeclinable; a few form the root by dropping *i*, and a few by adding *t* (572, 1).

**Rex (gs), m., a king.**  
(root, *rēg* [134, 2].)

Singular.	Plural
N. <i>Rex,</i>	<i>Rēg-ēs.</i>
G. <i>Rēg-īa,</i>	<i>Rēg-ūm.</i>
D. <i>Rēg-i,</i>	<i>Rēg-ībŭa.</i>
A. <i>Rēg-ēm,</i>	<i>Rēg-ēs.</i>
V. <i>Rex,</i>	<i>Rēg-ēs.</i>
A. <i>Rēg-ē,</i>	<i>Rēg-ībŭa.</i>

**Corpus, n., a body.**  
(root, *corpŏr* [137, 2].)

Singular.	Plural.
N. <i>Corpŭs,</i>	<i>Corpŏr-ē.</i>
G. <i>Corpŏr-īa,</i>	<i>Corpŏr-ūm.</i>
D. <i>Corpŏr-i,</i>	<i>Corpŏr-ībŭa.</i>
A. <i>Corpŭs,</i>	<i>Corpŏr-ē.</i>
V. <i>Corpŭs,</i>	<i>Corpŏr-ē.</i>
A. <i>Corpŏr-ē,</i>	<i>Corpŏr-ībŭa.</i>

#### GREEK NOUNS.

**Pēriclēs (a man's name).**

N. <i>Pēricl-ēs.</i>
G. <i>Pēricl-īa.</i>
D. <i>Pēricl-i.</i>
A. <i>Pēricl-ēm (ē).</i>
V. <i>Pēricl-ēs (ē).</i>
A. <i>Pēricl-ē.</i>

**Hērŏs, a hero.**

Singular.	Plural.
N. <i>Hērŏ-s,</i>	<i>Hērŏ-ēs.</i>
G. <i>Hērŏ-īa,</i>	<i>Hērŏ-ūm.</i>
D. <i>Hērŏ-i,</i>	<i>Hērŏ-ībŭa.</i>
A. <i>Hērŏ-ēm (ē),</i>	<i>Hērŏ-ēs (ēs).</i>
V. <i>Hērŏ-s,</i>	<i>Hērŏ-ēs.</i>
A. <i>Hērŏ-ē,</i>	<i>Hērŏ-ībŭa.</i>

#### 576. Fourth Declension.

1. Characteristic *ūs*.
2. Nominative endings: *us* and *u*.
3. Grammatical Gender: *u*, neuter; *us*, masculine; except

*Acūs*, a needle; *dŏmŭs*, a house; *mānŭs*, a hand; *idŭs*, the ides;  
*porticŭs*, a gallery; *tribŭs*, a tribe; which are feminine.

4. Masculine and feminine case-endings.

	Nom.	Gen.	Dat.	Accus.	Voc.	Abl.
<i>Sing.</i>	<i>ūs,</i>	<i>ūs,</i>	<i>uī,</i>	<i>ūm,</i>	<i>ūs,</i>	<i>ū.</i>
<i>Plur.</i>	<i>ūs,</i>	<i>uūm,</i>	<i>ībŭs (ībŭs*),</i>	<i>ūs,</i>	<i>ūs,</i>	<i>ībŭs (ībŭs*).</i>

5. Neuter case-endings.

	Nom.	Gen.	Dat.	Accus.	Voc.	Abl.
<i>Sing.</i>	<i>ū,</i>	<i>ūs,</i>	<i>ū,</i>	<i>ū,</i>	<i>ū,</i>	<i>ū.</i>
<i>Plur.</i>	<i>uā,</i>	<i>uūm,</i>	<i>ībŭs (ībŭs*),</i>	<i>uā,</i>	<i>uā,</i>	<i>ībŭs (ībŭs*).</i>

\* This ending is used only in a few words.

## 6. Paradigms.

Fructūs, <i>m.</i> , fruit. (root, fruct.)		Cornū, <i>n.</i> , a horn. (root, corn.)	
Singular.	Plural.	Singular.	Plural.
N. Fruct-ūs,	Fruct-ūs.	N. Corn-ū,	Corn-ū.
G. Fruct-ūs,	Fruct-ūum.	G. Corn-ūs,	Corn-ūum.
D. Fruct-ūi,	Fruct-ībūs.	D. Corn-ū,	Corn-ībūs.
A. Fruct-ūm,	Fruct-ūs.	A. Corn-ū,	Corn-ū.
V. Fruct-ūs,	Fruct-ūs.	V. Corn-ū,	Corn-ū.
A. Fruct-ū,	Fruct-ībūs.	A. Corn-ū,	Corn-ībūs.

## 577. Fifth Declension.

1. Characteristic *ei*.\*
2. Nominative ending: *es*.
3. Grammatical gender *feminine*, except *diēs*, a day (*m.* and *f.* in singular, and *m.* in plural), and *mēridiēs*, mid-day (*masc.*).
4. Case-endings.

	Nom.	Gen.	Dat.	Accus.	Voc.	Abl.
<i>Sing.</i>	ēs,	ei,*	ei,*	ēm,	ēs,	ē.
<i>Plur.</i>	ēs,	ērūm,	ēbūs,	ēs,	ēs,	ēbūs.

## 5. Paradigms.

Rēs, <i>f.</i> , a thing. (root, r.)		Diēs, <i>m.</i> and <i>f.</i> , a day. (root, di.)	
Singular.	Plural.	Singular.	Plural.
N. R-ēs,	R-ēs.	N. Di-ēs,	Di-ēs.
G. R-ēi,	R-ērūm.	G. Di-ēi,	Di-ērūm.
D. R-ēi,	R-ēbūs.	D. Di-ēi,	Di-ēbūs.
A. R-ēm,	R-ēs.	A. Di-ēm,	Di-ēs.
V. R-ēs,	R-ēs.	V. Di-ēs,	Di-ēs.
A. R-ē,	R-ēbūs.	A. Di-ē,	Di-ēbūs.

## 578. Case-endings of Substantives.

SINGULAR.									
	Dec. I. F.	Dec. II.		Dec. III.		Dec. IV.		Dec. V.	
		M.	N.	M. & F.	N.	M.	N.	F.	
N.	ūs.	ūs, ēr, īr,	ūm.	various.		ūs.	ū.	ēs.	
G.	ae.	ī.		īs.		ūs.		ēī.*	
D.	ae.	ō.		ī.		ūī.	ū.	ēī.*	
A.	ām.	ūm.		ēm (īm), like nom.	ūm.	ū.	ū.	ēm.	
V.	ūs.	ūs, ēr, īr,	ūm.	like nom.	ūs.	ū.	ū.	ēs.	
A.	ē.	ō.		ē (ī).	ū.	ū.		ē.	

\* In the ending of the gen. and dat. sing. *e* is long, except in *spēs* (where it is short), *fidei*, and *rei* (where it is common).

PLURAL.									
	Dec. I.	Dec. II.		Dec. III.		Dec. IV.		Dec. V.	
	F.	M.	N.	M. & F.	N.	M.	N.	F.	
N.	ae.	I.	ā.	ēs.	ī or iā.	ūs.	uā.	ēs.	
G.	arūm.	orūm.		ūm (iūm).		ūm.		erūm.	
D.	ia.	ia.		ibūs.		ibūs (ūbūs).		ebūs.	
A.	as.	os.	ā.	ēs.	ī or iā.	ūs.	uā.	ēs.	
V.	ae.	I.	ā.	ēs.	ī or iā.	ūs.	uā.	ēs.	
A.	ia.	ia.		ibūs.		ibūs (ūbūs).		ebūs.	

REM.—The above table presents the endings of all nouns in the Latin language, except a few derived from the Greek.

### 579. Table of Genders.

#### I. NATURAL GENDER.

Masculine.	Feminine.	Common.
Names of males.	Names of females.	Names applicable to both sexes.

#### II. GRAMMATICAL GENDER, independent of nominative ending.

Masculine.	Feminine.	Neuter.
Most names of rivers, winds, and months.	Most names of countries, towns, islands, and trees.	Indeclinable nouns, and clauses used as nouns.

#### III. GRAMMATICAL GENDER, as determined by nominative ending

	Masculine.	Feminine.	Neuter.
Dec. I.	as, es.	a, e.	
Dec. II.	er, us, os.*		um, on.
Dec. III.	er, or, os, es, increasing in gen., o except do, go, and io.	do, go, io, as, is, ys, aus, s impure, x, es not increasing in gen.	a, e, i, y, c, l, n, t, ar, ur, us.
Dec. IV.	us.		u.
Dec. V.		es.	

#### Principal Exceptions.†

##### SECOND DECLENSION.

Alvūs dōmūs, hūmūs, and vannūs, are *feminine*; pēlāgūs and vīrūs, *neuter*; vulgūs, generally *neuter*, sometimes *masculine*.

\* Nouns in *ir* have natural gender.

† This list of exceptions contains some whose gender is not grammatical. They are given here for convenience of reference.

## THIRD DECLENSION.

## 1) MASCULINES.

(*do* and *go*.) Cardŭ, cōmēdŭ, harpăgŭ, ordŭ, ūnēdŭ, ligŭ, and margŭ  
(the last sometimes *fem.*).

(*as*.) *As* and Greek nouns in *as* (gen. *antis*).

(*ia*.) Amnis, anguis, axis, cassia, cinis (or *f.*), collis, crinis, enala, fascis, finis (or *f.*), follis, funis, ignis, lapis, mensis, orbis, panis, piscis, postis, pulvis, sanguis, torris, unguis, vectis, and vermis.

(*s impure*.) Adeps, dens, fons, forceps (or *f.*), mona, pons, quadrans, and rudens.

(*x*.) Calix, codex, cortex, grex, pollex, thorax, and vertex.

(*l*.) Sal and sol.

(*n*.) Lien, pecten, ren, and many words of Greek origin.

(*ur*.) Furfur, turtur, and vultur.

(*us*.) Lepus and mus.

## 2) FEMININES.

(*or* and *os*.) Arbor, cōs, and dōs.

(*es increasing*.) Compēs, mercēs, mergēs, quies, requies, sēgēs, and tēgēs.

(*o*.) Cārŭ, echŭ, and Argŭ.

(*us*.) Grūs (*m.*), incūs, iuventūs, pālūs, pēctūs (ŭctis), sālūs, sēnectūs, servitūs, sūs (*m.*), tellūs, and virtūs.

## 3) NEUTERS.

(*er*.) Cādāvēr, itēr, tūbēr, ūbēr, vēr, verbēr, and names of plants in *er*.

(*or*.) Adŭr, aequŭr, cŭr, and marmŭr.

(*as* and *es*.) Fās, nēfās, vās, and aēs.

(*os*.) Os (ōris), ōs (ossis), and the Greek words, *chaŭs*, *ēpŭs*, *klŭs*, and *mēlŭs*.

## FOURTH DECLENSION.

Actūs, idūs, mātūs, porticūs, and tribūs, are feminine.

## FIFTH DECLENSION.

Diēs and mēridiēs are masculine, though the former is sometimes *fem. in sing.*

## 580. Adjectives.—First and second Declension.

## 1. Case-endings of adjectives of the first and second declension.



## CLASS III.

Felix, happy.

Singular.		Plural.	
M. & F.	N.	M. & F.	N.
N. Felix,	felix.	N. Felic-ēs,	felic-ī.
G. Felic-īa,	felic-īa.	G. Felic-īum,	felic-īum.
D. Felic-ī,	felic-ī.	D. Felic-ībūs.	felic-ībūs.
A. Felic-ēm,	felix.	A. Felic-ēs,	felic-ī.
V. Felix,	felix.	V. Felic-ēs,	felic-ī.
A. Felic-ō (ī),	felic-ō (ī).	A. Felic-ībūs,	felic-ībūs.

## 582. Comparison of Adjectives.

In Latin, adjectives are compared by adding to the root of the positive the following endings:

Comparative.			Superlative.		
M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
īor,	īor,	īūs.	issimūs,	issimā,	issimūm.
Examples.		Root.	Comparative.		Superlative.
Altūs (high),		alt.	altīor (īor, īūs),		altissimūs (ā, ūm).
Mitīs (mild),		mīt.	mītīor (īor, īūs),		mītissimūs (ā, ūm).

REM. 1.—Adjectives in *or* add *rimās* (ā, ūm) to the positive, to form the superlative; e. g.,

Pulchēr, pulchriōr, pulcherrimūs.

REM. 2.—A few adjectives in *is* form the superlative by adding *issimās* to the root of the positive; e. g.,

Fācilis (easy),	fāciliōr,	fācillimūs.
Difficilis (difficult),	difficiliōr,	difficillimūs.
Similis (like),	similiōr,	simillimūs.
Dissimilis (unlike),	dissimiliōr,	dissimillimūs.

REM. 3.—The following adjectives are quite irregular in their comparison, viz.:

Bōnūs (good),	mēliōr,	optimūs.
Mālūs (bad),	pejōr,	pestimūs.
Magnūs (great),	majōr,	maximūs.
Parvūs (little),	minōr,	minimūs.
Multūs (much),	plūs (pl. plūrēs, plūrī),	plurimūs.

## 583. Numerals.\*

	Cardinals.	Ordinals.	Distributives.	Adverbs.
1	Unūs, one.	Primūs, first.	Singūli, one by one.	Sēmēl, once.
2	Duō.	Sēcundūs.	Bini.	Bis.
3	Trēs.	Tertiūs.	Terni.	Tēr.

\* See Numerals, p. 145

4	Quattuor.	Quartūa.	Quaterni.	Quāter.
5	Quinquē.	Quintūa.	Quini.	Quinquāa.
6	Sex.	Sextūa.	Sēni.	Sexiāa.
7	Septēm.	Septimūa.	Septēni.	Septiāa.
8	Octō.	Octāvūa.	Octōni.	Octiāa.
9	Nōvēm.	Nōnūa.	Nōvēni.	Nōviāa.
10	Dēcēm.	Dēcimūa.	Dēni.	Dēciāa.

## 584. Substantive Pronouns.

SINGULAR.		
1st Person.	2d Person.	3d Person.
N. Ego, I.	Tu, thou.	{ Suī, of himself, her- self, itself.
G. Mei, of me.	Tui, of thee.	
D. Mihi, to or for me.	Tibi, to or for thee.	Sibi, to himself, &c.
A. Me, me.	Te, thee.	Se, himself.
V.	Tu, O thou.	Se, with himself.
A. Me, with, &c., me.	Te, with thee.	
PLURAL.		
N. Nos, we.	Vos, ye or you.	{ Suī, of themselves.
G. Nostrum, } of us. or Nostri, }	Vestrum or Vestri, }	
D. Nobis, to us.	Vobis, to you.	Sibi, to themselves.
A. Nos, us.	Vos, you.	Se, themselves.
V.	Vos, O ye or you.	Se, with themselves.
A. Nobis, with us.	Vobis, with you.	

## 585. Adjective Pronouns.

I. The *Possessive Pronouns* (so called because they denote possession), *meūs, meā, meūm*; *tuūs, tuā, tuūm*; *suūs, suā, suūm*; *nostrēr, nostrā, nostrūm*; *vestēr, vestrā, vestrūm*, are declined, as we have already seen (114, REM. 3), like adjectives of the first and second declension.

II. *Demonstrative Pronouns* (so called because they point out or specify the objects to which they refer), are *hic, illē, istē, is*, and their compounds, and are declined as follows:

Singular.			Plural.		
M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
N. Hic,	haec,	hōc.	Hī,	hae,	haec.
G. Hujūs,	hujūs,	hujūs.	Hōrūm,	hārūm,	hōrūm.
D. Huic,	huic,	huic.	Hīs,	his,	his.
A. Hunc,	hanc,	hōc.	Hōs,	hās,	haec.
V.					
A. Hōc,	hāc,	hōc.	Hīs,	hīs,	hīs.

## 2. Illē, he or that.

Singular.			Plural.		
M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
N. Illē,	illā,	illud.	illi,	illae,	illā.
G. illūs,	illūs,	illūs.	illōrum,	illarum,	illōrum.
D. illi,	illi,	illi.	illis,	illis,	illis.
A. illū,	illā,	illud.	illos,	illas,	illā.
V.					
A. illō,	illā,	illā.	illis,	illis,	illis.

## 3. Istē, that.

Istē, *that*, is declined like *illā*. It usually refers to objects which are present to the person addressed, and sometimes expresses contempt.

## 4. Is, he or that.

(Less specific than *illā*.)

Singular.			Plural.		
M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
N. Is,	eī,	id.	ii,	eae,	eā.
G. Ejūs,	ejūs,	ejūs.	Eōrum,	eārum,	eōrum.
D. Ei,	eī,	eī.	Iis or eīs,	iis or eīs,	iis or eīs.
A. Eū,	eām,	id.	Eōs,	eās,	eā.
V.					
A. Eō,	eā,	eō.	Iis or eīs,	iis or eīs,	iis or eīs.

## 5. Idēm, the same.

(Formed by annexing *dēm* to *is*.)

Singular.			Plural.		
M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
N. Idēm,	eādēm,	idēm.	Iidēm,	eaedēm,	eādēm.
G. Ejusdēm,	ejusdēm,	ejusdēm.	Eōrundēm,	eārundēm,	eōrundēm.
D. Eidēm,	eīdēm,	eīdēm.	Eisdēm, or Iisdēm,	eisdēm, or iisdēm,	eisdēm, or iisdēm.
A. Eundēm,	eandēm,	idēm.	Eōsdēm,	eāsdēm,	eādēm.
V.					
A. Eōdēm,	eādēm,	eōdēm.	Eisdēm, or Iisdēm,	eisdēm, or iisdēm.	eisdēm, or iisdēm.

III. The *Intensive Pronoun*, *ipsē*, himself, is so called because it is used to render an object *emphatic*. It is declined as follows:

Singular.			Plural.		
M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
N. Ipsē,	ipsā,	ipsū.	Ipsī,	ipsae,	ipsā.
G. Ipsius,	ipsius,	ipsius.	Ipsōrum,	ipsarum,	ipsōrum.
D. Ipsī,	ipsā,	ipsī.	Ipsīs,	ipsās,	ipsīs.
A. Ipsū,	ipsā,	ipsū.	Ipsos,	ipsas,	ipsos.
V.					
A. Ipsō,	ipsā,	ipsō.	Ipsīs,	ipsās,	ipsīs.

IV. The *Relative Pronoun*, *quī*, who, is so called because it always relates to some noun or pronoun, expressed or understood, called its antecedent. It is declined as follows:

Singular.			Plural.		
M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
N. Quī,	quae,	quōd.	Quī,	quae,	quae.
G. Cujūs,	cujūs,	cujūs.	Quōrum,	quarum,	quōrum.
D. Cui,	cui,	cui.	Quībūs,	quibus,	quībūs.
A. Quēm,	quā,	quōd.	Quos,	quas,	quos.
V.					
A. Quō,	quā,	quō.	Quībūs,	quibus,	quībūs.

V. The *Interrogative Pronouns*, *quīs* and *quī*, are so called because they are used in asking questions. *Quī* (which? what?) is used *adjectively*, and is declined like the relative. *Quīs* (who? which? what?) is generally used *substantively*, and is declined like the relative, except in the forms *quīs*, nom. masc., and *quid*, nom. and acc. neut.

VI. *Indefinite Pronouns* are so called because they do not definitely specify the objects to which they refer; e. g., *quidā*, a certain one; *aliquis*, some one; *quisquē*, every one; *siquis*, if any, &c. They are compounds either of *quīs* or *quī*, and are declined in nearly the same manner as the simple pronouns.

**REM.**—The compounds of *quīs* generally take *quid* in the neut. sing. when used *substantively*, and *quod* when used *adjectively*. Some of those compounds, as *aliquis*, *siquis*, take *quā* (not *quae*) in the fem. sing. and neut. plur.

### 586. Paradigm of the verb *Essē*.

#### INDICATIVE MOOD.

Singular.		Plural.	
PRESENT (am).			
Sūm,	I am.	Sūmūs,	we are.
Es,	thou art.	Estis,	you are.
Est,	he is.	Sunt,	they are.

IMPERFECT (*was*).

Singular.		Plural.
Erām, <i>I was.</i>		Erāmūs, <i>we were.</i>
Erās, <i>thou wast.</i>		Erātis, <i>you were.</i>
Erāt, <i>he was.</i>		Erant, <i>they were.</i>

FUTURE (*shall or will be*).

Erō, <i>I shall be.</i>	Erīmūs, <i>we shall be.</i>
Erīs, <i>thou wilt be.</i>	Erītis, <i>you will be.</i>
Erīt, <i>he will be.</i>	Erunt, <i>they will be.</i>

PERFECT (*have been or was*).

Fui, <i>I have been.</i>	Fuimūs, <i>we have been.</i>
Fuisti, <i>thou hast been.</i>	Fuistis, <i>you have been.</i>
Fuit, <i>he has been.</i>	Fuerunt, <i>they have been.</i>
	Fuere, <i>they have been.</i>

PLUPERFECT (*had been*).

Fuerām, <i>I had been.</i>	Fuerāmūs, <i>we had been.</i>
Fuerās, <i>thou hadst been.</i>	Fuerātis, <i>you had been.</i>
Fuerāt, <i>he had been.</i>	Fuerant, <i>they had been.</i>

FUTURE PERFECT (*shall or will have been*).

Fuerō, <i>I shall have been.</i>	Fuerimūs, <i>we shall have been.</i>
Fuerīs, <i>thou wilt have been.</i>	Fuerītis, <i>you will have been.</i>
Fuerīt, <i>he will have been.</i>	Fuerint, <i>they will have been.</i>

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PRESENT (*may or can be*).

Sim, <i>I may be.</i>	Simūs, <i>we may be.</i>
Sīs, <i>thou mayest be.</i>	Sītis, <i>you may be.</i>
Sit, <i>he may be.</i>	Sint, <i>they may be.</i>

IMPERFECT (*might, could, would, or should be*).

Essem, <i>I might be.</i>	Essemūs, <i>we might be.</i>
Esseās, <i>thou mightest be.</i>	Esseātis, <i>you might be.</i>
Esset, <i>he might be.</i>	Esent, <i>they might be.</i>

PERFECT (*may have been*).

Fuerim, <i>I may have been.</i>	Fuerimūs, <i>we may have been.</i>
Fuerīs, <i>thou mayest have been.</i>	Fuerītis, <i>you may have been.</i>
Fuerīt, <i>he may have been.</i>	Fuerint, <i>they may have been.</i>

PLUPERFECT (*might, could, would, or should have been*).

Fuissēm, <i>I might have been.</i>	Fuissēmūs, <i>we might have been.</i>
Fuissēs, <i>thou mightest have been.</i>	Fuissētis, <i>you might have been.</i>
Fuisset, <i>he might have been.</i>	Fuissent, <i>they might have been.</i>

## IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Singular.	Plural.
Ea, or estă, be thou.	Estă or estotă, be ye.
Estă, let him be.	Suntă, let them be.

## INFINITIVE MOOD.

PRESENT,	Essă, to be.
PERFECT,	Fuisse, to have been.
FUTURE,	Fütüris (ă, ūm) essă, to be about to be.

## PARTICIPLE.

FUTURE,	Fütüris, ă, ūm, about to be.
---------	------------------------------

## 587. Regular Verbs.—Four Conjugations.

## 1. Infinitive endings.

1.	2.	3.	4.
ără, .	ără,	ără,	ără.

## 2. Favorite vowels.

1.	2.	3.	4.
ă,	ă,	ă (î),	î

588. FIRST CONJUGATION (Inf. ending *ără*).

## 1. Regular endings of the 2d and 3d roots.

2.	3.
ăv,	ăt

## 2. Paradigm.

*Amară, to love*: 1st root, *ăm*; 2d, *ămăv*; 3d, *ămai*.

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

## PRESENT.

Active, <i>I love</i> .		Passive, <i>I am loved</i> .	
Singular.	Plural	Singular.	Plural
Am-ă,	Am-ămă,	Am-ăr,	Am-ămăr,
Am-ăa,	Am-ătă,	Am-ăris (ră),	Am-ămăni,
Am-ăt.	Am-ant.	Am-ătăr;	Am-antăr.

IMPERFECT, *was loving*; *was loved*.

Am-ăbăm,	Am-ăbămă,	Am-ăbăr,	Am-ăbămăr,
Am-ăbăa,	Am-ăbătă,	Am-ăbăris (ră),	Am-ăbămăni,
Am-ăbăt;	Am-ăbant.	Am-ăbătăr;	Am-ăbantăr.

*FUTURE, will love; will be loved.*

Singular	Plural	Singular.	Plural.
Am-ābŏ,	Am-ābimŭs,	Am-ābŏr,	Am-ābimŭr,
Am-ābīs,	Am-ābitis,	Am-ābēris (rē),	Am-ābimīnī,
Am-ābit;	Am-ābunt.	Am-ābitŭr;	Am-ābuntŭr.

*PERFECT, have loved; have been loved.*

Amāv-i,	Amāv-imŭs,	Amāt-ŭs sŭm,*	Amāt-i sŭmŭs,
Amāv-istī,	Amāv-istīs,	Amāt-ŭs ēs,	Amāt-i estīs,
Amāv-īt;	Amāv-erunt (erē).	Amāt-ŭs est;	Amāt-i sunt.

*PLUPERFECT, had loved; had been loved.*

Amāv-ērām,	Amāv-ērāmŭs,	Amāt-ŭs ērām,*	Amāt-i ērāmŭs,
Amāv-ērās,	Amāv-ērātīs,	Amāt-ŭs ērās,	Amāt-i ērātīs,
Amāv-ērāt;	Amāv-erant.	Amāt-ŭs ērāt;	Amāt-i erant.

*FUTURE PERFECT, will have loved; will have been loved.*

Amāv-ērŏ,	Amāv-ērīmŭs,	Amāt-ŭs ērŏ,*	Amāt-i ērīmŭs,
Amāv-ērīs,	Amāv-ērītīs,	Amāt-ŭs ērīs,	Amāt-i ērītīs,
Amāv-ērīt;	Amāv-erint.	Amāt-ŭs ērīt;	Amāt-i erunt.

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

*PRESENT, may love; may be loved.*

Am-ēm,	Am-ēmŭs,	Am-ēr,	Am-ēmŭr,
Am-ēs,	Am-ētīs,	Am-ērīs (rē),	Am-ēmīnī,
Am-ēt;	Am-ent.	Am-ētŭr;	Am-entŭr.

*IMPERFECT, might love; might be loved.*

Am-ārēm,	Am-ārēmŭs,	Am-ārēr,	Am-ārēmŭr,
Am-ārēs,	Am-ārētīs,	Am-ārērīs (rē),	Am-ārēmīnī,
Am-ārēt	Am-arent.	Am-ārētŭr;	Am-arentŭr.

*PERFECT, may have loved; may have been loved.*

Amāv-ērīm,	Amāv-ērīmŭs,	Amāt-ŭs sŭm,†	Amāt-i sŭmŭs,
Amāv-ērīs,	Amāv-ērītīs,	Amāt-ŭs sŭs,	Amāt-i sŭtīs,
Amāv-ērīt;	Amāv-erint.	Amāt-ŭs sŭt;	Amāt-i sint.

*PLUPERFECT, might have loved; might have been loved.*

Amāv-issēm,	Amāv-issēmŭs,	Amāt-ŭs essēm,†	Amāt-i essēmŭs,
Amāv-issēs,	Amāv-issētīs,	Amāt-ŭs essēs,	Amāt-i essētīs,
Amāv-issēt;	Amāv-issent.	Amāt-ŭs essēt;	Amāt-i essent.

\* See 331, N.

† See 332, N.

## IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Singular.	Plural.	Singular.	Plural.
Am-ā, <i>or</i> ām-ātā,	Am-ātā, <i>or</i> ām-ātōtā,	Am-ārē, <i>or</i> ām-ātōr,	Am-āmīn,
Am-ātā;	Am-antā	Am-ātōr;	Am-antōr.

## INFINITIVE MOOD.

Pres.	Am-ārē.	Am-ārī.
Pres.	Amāv-issā.	Amāt-ūs essā.
Fut.	Amāt-ūrūs essā.	Amāt-ūm irī.

## PARTICIPLES.

Pres.	Am-ans.	Pres.	Amāt-ūs.
Fut.	Amāt-ūrūs.	Fut.	Am-andūs.

## GERUND.

Am-andī, andō, andūm, andō.

## SUPINES.

Amāt-ūm. | Amāt-ū.

589. SECOND CONJUGATION (Inf. ending *ērē*).

1. Regular endings of the 2d and 3d roots

2. 3  
u (āv),\* īā.

2. Paradigm.

Mōnērē, *to advise*: 1st root, *mōn*; 2d, *mōnu*; 3d, *mōnū*.

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

## PRESENT.

Active, <i>I advise</i> .		Passive, <i>I am advised</i> .	
Singular	Plural.	Singular.	Plural.
Mōn-eā,	Mōn-ēmūs,	Mōn-eōr,	Mōn-ēmūr,
Mōn-ēs,	Mōn-ētūs,	Mōn-ērīs (rē),	Mōn-ēmīnī,
Mōn-ēt;	Mōn-ent.	Mōn-ētūr;	Mon-entūr.

IMPERFECT, *was advising*; *was advised*.

Mōn-ēhām,	Mōn-ēbāmūs,	Mōn-ēbār,	Mōn-ēbāmūr,
Mōn-ēbas,	Mōn-ēbātūs,	Mōn-ēbārīs (rē),	Mōn-ēbāmīnī,
Mōn-ēbāt;	Mōn-ēbant.	Mōn-ēbātūr;	Mōn-ēbantūr.

FUTURE, *shall advise*; *shall be advised*.

Mōn-ēbā,	Mōn-ēbīmūs,	Mōn-ēbōr,	Mōn-ēbīmūr,
Mōn-ēbīs,	Mōn-ēbītūs,	Mōn-ēbērīs (rē),	Mōn-ēbīmīnī,
Mōn-ēbīt;	Mōn-ēbunt.	Mōn-ēbītūr;	Mōn-ēbuntūr.

\* See 192, N



PERFECT, *have advised; have been advised.*

Singular.	Plural.	Singular.	Plural.
Mönu-i,	Mönu-īmūs,	Möñt-ūs sūm,*	Möñt-i sūmūs,
Mönu-istī,	Möñn-istīs,	Möñt-ūs ēs,	Möñt-i estīs,
Mönu-īt;	Mönu-ērunt (ērē).	Möñt-ūs est;	Möñt-i sunt.

PLUPERFECT, *had advised; had been advised.*

Mönu-ērām,	Mönu-ērāmūs,	Möñt-ūs ērām,*	Möñt-i ērāmūs,
Mönu-ērās,	Mönu-ērātīs,	Möñt-ūs ērās,	Möñt-i ērātīs,
Mönu-ērāt;	Mönu-ērant.	Möñt-ūs ērāt;	Möñt-i ērant.

FUTURE PERFECT, *shall have advised; shall have been advised.*

Mönu-ērō,	Mönu-ērīmūs,	Möñt-ūs ērō,*	Möñt-i ērīmūs,
Mönu-ērīs,	Mönu-ērītīs,	Möñt-ūs ērīs,	Möñt-i ērītīs,
Mönu-ērīt;	Mönu-ērint.	Möñt-ūs ērīt;	Möñt-i ērint.

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PRESENT, *may advise; may be advised.*

Mön-eām,	Mön-eāmūs,	Mön-eār,	Mön-eāmūr,
Mön-eās,	Mön-eātīs,	Mön-eārīs (rē),	Mön-eāmīnī,
Mön-eāt;	Mön-eant.	Mön-eātūr;	Mön-eantūr.

IMPERFECT, *might advise; might be advised.*

Mön-ērēm,	Mön-ērēmūs,	Mön-ērēr,	Mön-ērēmūr,
Mön-ērēs,	Mön-ērētīs,	Mön-ērērīs (rē),	Mön-ērēmīnī,
Mön-ērēt;	Mön-erent.	Mön-ērētūr;	Mön-erentūr.

PERFECT, *may have advised; may have been advised.*

Mönu-ērīm	Mönu-ērīmūs,	Möñt-ūs sūm,†	Möñt-i sūmūs,
Mönu-ērīs,	Mönu-ērītīs,	Möñt-ūs sīs,	Möñt-i sītīs,
Mönu-ērīt;	Mönu-erint.	Möñt-ūs sīt;	Möñt-i sint.

PLUPERFECT, *might have advised; might have been advised.*

Mönu-issēm,	Mönu-issēmūs,	Möñt-ūs essēm,†	Möñt-i essēmūs,
Mönu-issēs,	Mönu-issētīs,	Möñt-ūs essēs,	Möñt-i essētīs,
Mönu-issēt;	Mönu-issent.	Möñt-ūs essēt;	Möñt-i essent.

## IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Mön-ē,	Mön-ētē,	Mön-ērē,	Mön-ēmīnī,
or mön-ētē,	or mön-ētötē,	or mön-ētör,	
Mön-ētō;	Mön-entē.	Mön-etör;	Mön-entör.

\* See 331 N.

† See 332, N.

## INFINITIVE MOOD.

Pres. Mön-ärě.	Mön-eri
Perf. Mönu-issě.	Mönit-üs essě.
Fut. Mönit-ürüs essě.	Mönit-üm ri.

## PARTICIPLES.

Pres. Mön-ena.	Mönit-üa.
Fut. Mönit-ürüa.	Mön-endüa.

## GERUND.

Mön-endi, endö, endüm, endö.

## SUPINES.

Mönit-üm.	Mönit-a.
-----------	----------

## 590. THIRD CONJUGATION (Inf. ending ěřě).

## 1. Regular endings of the 2d and 3d roots.

2d, *a*, or *like 1st*; 3d, *t*, sometimes *a*.

## 2. Paradigm.

Rěgěřě, *to rule*: 1st root, *rěg*; 2d, *rex*; 3d, *rect*.

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

## PRESENT.

Act., <i>I rule.</i>		Pass., <i>I am ruled.</i>	
Singular.	Plural.	Singular.	Plural.
Rěg-ř,	Rěgřmüs,	Rěg-řr,	Rěg-řmür,
Rěg-řa,	Rěg-řüa,	Rěg-řris (řě),	Rěg-řminä,
Rěg-řt;	Rěg-řmt.	Rěg-řtür;	Rěg-řantür.

IMPERFECT, *was ruling*; *was ruled.*

Rěg-ěbäm,	Rěg-ěbämüs,	Rěg-ěbär,	Rěg-ěbämür,
Rěg-ěbäs,	Rěg-ěbätis,	Rěg-ěbäris (řě),	Rěg-ěbäminä,
Rěg-ěbät;	Rěg-ěbant.	Rěg-ěbätür;	Rěg-ěbantür.

FUTURE, *shall rule*; *shall be ruled.*

Rěg-äm,	Rěg-ämüs,	Rěg-är,	Rěg-ämür,
Rěg-äs,	Rěg-ätis,	Rěg-äris (řě),	Rěg-äminä,
Rěg-ät;	Rěg-ant.	Rěg-ätür;	Rěg-entür.

PERFECT, *have ruled; have been ruled.*

Singular.	Plural.	Singular.	Plural.
Rex-ī,	Rex-īmūs,	Rect-ūs sūm,*	Rect-ī sūmūs,
Rex-istī,	Rex-istūs,	Rect-ūs es,	Rect-ī estūs,
Rex-īt;	Rex-ērunt (ērē).	Rect-ūs est;	Rect-ī sunt.

PLUPERFECT, *had ruled; had been ruled.*

Rex-ērām,	Rex-ērāmūs,	Rect-ūs ērām,*	Rect-ī ērāmūs,
Rex-ērās,	Rex-ērātūs,	Rect-ūs ērās,	Rect-ī ērātūs,
Rex-ērāt;	Rex-ērānt.	Rect-ūs ērāt;	Rect-ī ērānt.

FUTURE PERFECT, *shall have ruled; shall have been ruled.*

Rex-ērō,	Rex-ērīmūs,	Rect-ūs ērō,*	Rect-ī ērīmūs,
Rex-ēris,	Rex-ērītūs,	Rect-ūs ēris,	Rect-ī ērītūs,
Rex-ērīt;	Rex-ērint.	Rect-ūs ērīt;	Rect-ī ērint.

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PRESENT, *may rule; may be ruled.*

Rēg-ām,	Rēg-āmūs,	Rēg-ār,	Rēg-āmūr,
Rēg-ās,	Rēg-ātūs,	Rēg-āris (rē),	Rēg-āmīnī,
Rēg-āt;	Rēg-ant.	Rēg-ātūr;	Rēg-antūr.

IMPERFECT, *might rule; might be ruled.*

Rēg-ērēm,	Rēg-ērēmūs,	Rēg-ērēr,	Rēg-ērēmūr,
Rēg-ērēs,	Rēg-ērētūs,	Rēg-ērēris (rē),	Rēg-ērēmīnī,
Rēg-ērēt;	Rēg-ērent.	Rēg-ērētūr,	Rēg-ērentūr.

PERFECT, *may have ruled; may have been ruled.*

Rex-ērīm,	Rex-ērīmūs,	Rect-ūs sīm,†	Rect-ī sīmūs,
Rex-ēris,	Rex-ērītūs,	Rect-ūs sis,	Rect-ī sītūs,
Rex-ērīt;	Rex-ērint.	Rect-ūs sīt;	Rect-ī sint.

PLUPERFECT, *might have ruled; might have been ruled.*

Rex-issēm,	Rex-issēmūs,	Rect-ūs essēm,†	Rect-ī essēmūs,
Rex-issēs,	Rex-issētūs,	Rect-ūs essēs,	Rect-ī essētūs,
Rex-issēt;	Rex-issent.	Rect-ūs essēt;	Rect-ī essent.

## IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Rēg-ē,	Rēg-ītē,	Rēg-ērē,	Rēg-īmīnī,
or rēg-ītō,	or rēg-ītōtē,	or rēg-ītōr,	
Rēg-ītē;	Rēg-untō.	Rēg-ītōr;	Rēg-untōr.

\* See 331, N.

† See 332, N.

## INFINITIVE MOOD.

<b>PRÆ.</b>	Ræg-ērē.		Ræg-I.
<b>PRÆP.</b>	Ræg-issē.		Rect-ūs eesē.
<b>FUT.</b>	Rect-ūrūs eesē.		Rect-ūm Iri.

## PARTICIPLES.

<b>PRÆ.</b>	Ræg-ena.		<b>PRÆP.</b>	Rect-ūs.
<b>FUT.</b>	Rect-ūrūs.		<b>FUT.</b>	Ræg-endūs.

## GERUND.

Ræg-endī, endō, endūm, endō.

## SUPINES.

Rect-ūm.		Rect-ū.
----------	--	---------

## 3. Paradigm of verbs in i ō of the third conjugation.

Căpĕrē, to take : 1st root, căp ; 2d, cĕp ; 3d, capt.

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

## PRESENT.

<i>Active.</i>		<i>Passive.</i>	
Singular.	Plural.	Singular.	Plural.
Căp-iŏ.	Căp-īmūs,	Căp-iŏr,	Căp-īmūr,
Căp-ia,	Căp-ītīs,	Căp-ērīs (rē),	Căp-īmīnī,
Căp-īt ;	Căp-iunt.	Căp-ītūr ;	Căp-iuntūr.

## IMPERFECT.

Căp-iebām,	Căp-iebāmūs,	Căp-iebār,	Căp-iebāmūr,
Căp-iebas,	Căp-iebatīs,	Căp-iebārīs (rē),	Căp-iebāmīnī,
Căp-iebāt ;	Căp-iebant.	Căp-iebātūr ;	Căp-iebantūr.

## FUTURE.

Căp-iām,	Căp-iēmūs,	Căp-iār,	Căp-iēmūr,
Căp-ies,	Căp-iētīs,	Căp-iārīs (rē),	Căp-iēmīnī,
Căp-iēt	Căp-ient.	Căp-iētūr ;	Căp-ientūr.

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

## PRESENT.

Căp-iām,	Căp-iāmūs,	Căp-iār,	Căp-iāmūr,
Căp-ias,	Căp-iatīs,	Căp-iārīs (rē),	Căp-iāmīnī,
Căp-iať	Căp-iant.	Căp-iaťūr ;	Căp-iantūr.

## IMPERATIVE MOOD.

2d Pl. Căp-iuntă. | 3d Pl. Căp-iuntor

## PARTICIPLES.

Pres. Căp-iena. | Fut. Căp-ientia.

## GERUND.

Căp-ienti, dō, &c.

 The other parts of verbs in i ō are entirely regular

591. FOURTH CONJUGATION (Inf. ending *irē*).

## 1. Regular endings of the 2d and 3d roots.

2d, *iv*; 3d, *it*.

## 2. Paradigm.

Audirē, to hear: 1st root, *aud*; 2d, *audiv*; 3d, *auditi*.

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

## PRESENT.

Act., I hear.		Pass., I am heard.	
Singular.	Plural.	Singular.	Plural.
Aud-iŏ,	Aud-imŭs,	Aud-iŏr,	Aud-imŭr,
Aud-is,	Aud-itŭs,	Aud-irŭs (rē),	Aud-imini,
Aud-it;	Aud-iunt.	Aud-ittŭr;	Aud-iuntŭr.

IMPERFECT, *was hearing*; *was heard*.

Aud-iebām,	Aud-iebāmŭs,	Aud-iebār,	Aud-iebāmŭr
Aud-iebās,	Aud-iebātŭs,	Aud-iebārŭs (rē),	Aud-iebāmīnī,
Aud-iebāt;	Aud-iebant.	Aud-iebātŭr;	Aud-iebantŭr.

FUTURE, *shall hear*; *shall be heard*.

Aud-iām,	Aud-iāmŭs,	Aud-iār,	Aud-iāmŭr,
Aud-ias,	Aud-iatŭs,	Aud-iarŭs (rē),	Aud-iāmīnī,
Aud-iēt;	Aud-ient.	Aud-iētŭr;	Aud-ientŭr.

PERFECT, *have heard*; *have been heard*.

Audiv-i,	Audiv-imŭs,	Audit-ŭs sŭm,*	Audit-i sŭmŭs,
Audiv-istī,	Audiv-istŭs,	Audit-ŭs ēs,	Audit-i estŭs,
Audiv-it;	Audiv-erunt (ērē).	Audit-ŭs est;	Audit-i sunt.

\* See 331, N.

PLUPERFECT, *had heard; had been heard.*

Audiv-ērām,	Audiv-ērāmūs,	Audit-ūs ērām,*	Audit-I ērāmūs,
Audiv-ērās,	Audiv-ērātūs,	Audit-ūs ērās,	Audit-I ērātūs,
Audiv-ērēt;	Audiv-ērant.	Audit-ūs ērēt;	Audit-I ērant

FUTURE PERFECT, *shall have heard; shall have been heard.*

Audiv-ērŃ,	Audiv-ērīmūs,	Audit-ūs ērŃ,*	Audit-I ērīmūs,
Audiv-ērīs,	Audiv-ērītūs,	Audit-ūs ērīs,	Audit-I ērītūs,
Audiv-ērīt;	Audiv-ērint.	Audit-ūs ērīt;	Audit-I ērint.

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PRESENT, *may hear; may be heard.*

Aud-iām,	Aud-iāmūs,	Aud-iār,	Aud-iāmūr,
Aud-iās,	Aud-iātūs,	Aud-iārīs (rē),	Aud-iāmīnī,
Aud-iāt;	Aud-iant.	Aud-iātūr;	Aud-iantūr.

IMPERFECT, *might hear; might be heard.*

Aud-trēm,	Aud-trēmūs,	Aud-trēr,	Aud-trēmūr,
Aud-trēs,	Aud-trētūs,	Aud-trērīs (rē),	Aud-trēmīnī,
Aud-trēt;	Aud-trent.	Aud-trētūr;	Aud-trentūr.

PERFECT, *may have heard; may have been heard.*

Audiv-ērīm,	Audiv-ērīmūs,	Audit-ūs sīm,†	Audit-I sīmūs,
Audiv-ērīs,	Audiv-ērītūs,	Audit-ūs sis,	Audit-I sītūs,
Audiv-ērīt;	Audiv-ērint.	Audit-ūs sīt;	Audit-I sint.

PLUPERFECT, *might have heard; might have been heard.*

Audiv-issēm,	Audiv-issēmūs,	Audit-ūs essēm,†	Audit-I essēmūs,
Audiv-issēs,	Audiv-issētūs,	Audit-ūs essēs,	Audit-I essētūs,
Audiv-issēt	Audiv-issent.	Audit-ūs essēt;	Audit-I essent.

## IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Aud-I,	Aud-itŃ,	Aud-trŃ,	Aud-imīnī,
or aud-itŃ,	or aud-itŃtŃ,	or aud-itŃr,	
Aud-itŃ;	Aud-iuntŃ.	Aud-itŃr;	Aud-iuntŃr.

## INFINITIVE MOOD.

Pres.	Aud-trŃ.	Aud-trī.
Pres.	Audiv-issŃ.	Audit-ūs essŃ.
Fut.	Audit-trūs essŃ.	Audit-Ńm trī.

\* See 331, N.

† See 332, N.

## PARTICIPLES.

Pres.	Audiens.		Pres.	Audit-ŭs.
Fut.	Audit-ŭrŭs.		Fut.	Audiendŭs.

## GERUND.

Audiendi, iendŏ, iendŭm, iendŏ.

## SUPINES.

Audit-ŭm.		Audit-ŭ.
-----------	--	----------

## 592. Formation of Second Root.

Conj. I.		Conj. II.		Conj. III.		Conj. IV.
----------	--	-----------	--	------------	--	-----------

## REGULAR.

ŏv.		u or ŏv.		s or like 1st root.		Iv
-----	--	----------	--	---------------------	--	----

## FIRST IRREGULARITY.

Radical vowel lengthened.		radical vowel lengthened.		radical vowel lengthened (and often changed).		radical vowel lengthened.
------------------------------	--	------------------------------	--	---	--	------------------------------

## SECOND IRREGULARITY.

Reduplication.		reduplication.		reduplication.	
----------------	--	----------------	--	----------------	--

## THIRD IRREGULARITY.

Analogy of 2d conj.		analogy of 3d conj.		analogy of 2d or 4th conj.		analogy of 2d or 3d conj.
------------------------	--	------------------------	--	-------------------------------	--	------------------------------

## 593. Deponent Verbs.

Deponent verbs are such as have a *passive form*, but an *active meaning*. They take, however, all the four participles; e. g.,

- 1) Lŏquens, *speaking*; 2) lŏcutŭs, *having spoken*; 3) lŏcŭtŭrŭs, *about to speak*; 4) lŏquendŭs, *to be spoken*.

REM.—The past participle of a deponent verb is the participle of the *perfect active*: which other verbs do not have.

## Irregular Verbs.

## 594. Paradigm of Possŏ,\* to be able.

2d root, pŏtu.

## INDICATIVE.

Pres. Possŭm, pŏtēs, pŏtest, possŭmŭs, pŏtestŭs, possunt.

Imp. pŏtērān; Fut. pŏtērŏ; Perf. pŏtu-i; Pluperf. pŏtu-ērān; Fut. Perf. pŏtu-ērŏ.

\* For the conjugation of the simple verb, *esse*, see 586.

## SUBJUNCTIVE.

*Pres.* possām; *Imp.* possēm; *Perf.* pōtu-ērīm; *Pluperf.* pōtu-issēm.

## INFINITIVE.

*Pres.* possē; *Perf.* pōtu-issē.

## PARTICIPLE.

*Pōtens* (used as an adjective, powerful).

595. Paradigms of *Vellē* (to be willing) and its compounds.

Vellē.	Nollē.	Mallē.
2d root, <i>vōlu</i> .	2d root, <i>nōlu</i> .	2d root, <i>malu</i> .

## INDICATIVE.

## PRESENT.

Vōlŭ,	Nōlŭ,	Malŭ,
Via,	Nonvia,	Māvia,
Vult;	Nonvult;	Māvult;
Vōlūmŭs,	Nōlūmŭs,	Malūmŭs,
Vultis,	Nonvultis,	Māvultis,
Vōlunt.	Nōlunt.	Malunt.

## IMPERFECT.

Vōl-ēbām, bās, &c.	Nōl-ēbām, bās, &c.	Mal-ēbām, bās, &c.
--------------------	--------------------	--------------------

## FUTURE.

Vōl-ām.	Nōl-ām.	Mal-ām.
---------	---------	---------

## PERFECT.

Vōlu-l.	Nōlu-l.	Malu-l.
---------	---------	---------

## PLUPERFECT.

Vōlu-ērām.	Nōlu-ērām.	Malu-ērām.
------------	------------	------------

## FUTURE PERFECT.

Vōlu-ērŭ.	Nōlu-ērŭ.	Malu-ērŭ.
-----------	-----------	-----------

## SUBJUNCTIVE.

## PRESENT.

Vēl-īm, is, &c.	Nōl-īm, is, &c.	Māl-īm, is, &c.
-----------------	-----------------	-----------------

## IMPERFECT.

Vell-ēm, es, &c.	Noll-ēm.	Mall-ēm.
------------------	----------	----------

## PERFECT.

Vōlu-ērīm.	Nōlu-ērīm.	Malu-ērīm.
------------	------------	------------

## PLUPERFECT.

Vōlu-issēm.	Nōlu-issēm.	Malu-issēm.
-------------	-------------	-------------



## IMPERATIVE.

Nól-i or itā.	Nól-itē or itōtā.
---------------	-------------------

## INFINITIVE.

PRES. Vellā.	Nollā.	Mallā.
PRES. Vōlu-issā.	Nōlu-issā.	Mālu-issā.

## PARTICIPLES.

Vōlena.	Nōlena.
---------	---------

596. Paradigm of *Ferrē*, to bear.2d root, *tūl*; 3d, *lul*.

## INDICATIVE.

## PRESENT.

<i>Active.</i>	<i>Passive.</i>
Fēr-ē, fer-a, fer-t, fēr-īmūs, fer-tis, fēr-unt.	Fēr-ēr, fer-ris, fer-tūr, fēr-īmūr, fēr-īmīnī, fēr-untūr.

## IMPERFECT.

Fēr-ebām, bās, &c.	Fēr-ebār, bāris, &c.
--------------------	----------------------

## FUTURE.

Fēr-ām, ēs, &c.	Fēr-ār, ārīs, &c.
-----------------	-------------------

## PERFECT.

Tūl-i, isti, &c.	Lāt-ūs sūm, ēs, &c.
------------------	---------------------

## PLUPERFECT.

Tūl-ērām, ēs, &c.	Lāt-ūs ērām, &c.
-------------------	------------------

## FUTURE PERFECT.

Tūl-ērō, &c.	Lāt-ūs ērō, &c.
--------------	-----------------

## SUBJUNCTIVE.

## PRESENT.

Fēr-ām, ēs, &c.	Fēr-ār, ārīs, &c.
-----------------	-------------------

## IMPERFECT.

Fer-rēm, rēs, &c.	Fer-rēr, rērīs, &c.
-------------------	---------------------

## PERFECT.

Tūl-ērīm, &c.	Lāt-ūs sīm, &c.
---------------	-----------------

## PLUPERFECT.

Tūl-issēm.	Lāt-ūs essēm, &c.
------------	-------------------

## IMPERATIVE.

<i>Active.</i>	<i>Passive.</i>
Fēr, or fērtā,	Fēr-rē, or fēr-tōr.
Fēr-tā;	Fēr-tōr;
Fēr-tē, or fēr-tōtē,	Fēr-imīnā,
Fēr-untā.	Fēr-untōr.

## INFINITIVE.

<i>Pres.</i> Fēr-rē,	Fēr-rī,
<i>Perf.</i> Tūl-isce,	Lāt-ūs esse,
<i>Plur.</i> Lāt-ūrūs esse.	Lāt-ūm ī.

## PARTICIPLES.

<i>Pres.</i> Fēr-ens,	<i>Perf.</i> Lāt-ūs (ā, ūm).
<i>Plur.</i> Lāt-ūrūs (ā, ūm).	<i>Plur.</i> Fēr-entūs (ā, ūm).

## GERUND.

Fēr-endī, dō, dūm, dā

## SUPINE.

Lāt-ūm.

Lāt-ū.

REM.—The compounds of *ferrē* are conjugated like the simple verb.597. Paradigm of *Fīrī*, to become, be made.

## PRESENT.

<i>Indicative.</i>	<i>Subjunctive.</i>
Fī, fīa, fīt, &c.	Fī-ām, fī-ās, fī-āt, &c.

## IMPERFECT.

Fī-ebām, ēbās, &c.	Fī-ērām, ērās, &c.
--------------------	--------------------

## FUTURE.

Fī-ām, ēs, &amp;c.

## PERFECT.

Fact-ūs sūm, &c.	Fact-ūs sūm, &c.
------------------	------------------

## PLUPERFECT.

Fact-ūs ērām, &c.	Fact-ūs esse, &c.
-------------------	-------------------

## FUTURE PERFECT.

Fact-ūs ērō, &amp;c.

## IMPERATIVE.

<i>Sing.</i> Fī, or fī-tā, Fī-tā.	<i>Plur.</i> Fī-tē, or fī-tōtē. Fī-untā.
--------------------------------------	---

## INFINITIVE.

*Pres. Fieri*; *Perf. Fact-ūs essē*; *Fut. Fact-ūm iri*.

## PARTICIPLES.

*Perf. Fact-ūs* (ā, ūm); *Fut. Fāciendūs* (ā, ūm).

598. Paradigm of *Irē*, to go.

2d root, *iv*; 3d, *ū*.

## PRESENT.

<i>Indicative.</i>		<i>Subjunctive.</i>
<i>Ed, ia, it</i> ; <i>imūs, itūa, eunt</i>		<i>Eām, eās, etc.</i>

## IMPERFECT.

<i>Ibām, ibās, etc.</i>		<i>Irēm, Irēs, etc.</i>
-------------------------	--	-------------------------

## FUTURE.

*Ibō, ibia, etc.*

## PERFECT.

<i>Iv-i, iv-isti, etc.</i>		<i>Iv-ērīm, ēria, etc.</i>
----------------------------	--	----------------------------

## PLUSPERFECT.

<i>Iv-ērām, ērās, etc.</i>		<i>Iv-issēm, issēs, etc.</i>
----------------------------	--	------------------------------

## FUTURE PERFECT.

*Iv-ērō, ēris, etc.*

## IMPERATIVE.

<i>Sing. I, or itō,</i> <i>itō.</i>		<i>Plur. Itē, or itōtē,</i> <i>Euntō.</i>
--	--	--

## INFINITIVE.

*Pres. Irē*; *Perf. Iv-issē*; *Fut. Itūrūs essē*.

## PARTICIPLES.

*Pres. Iens* (*gen. euntis*); *Fut. Itūrūs*, ā, ūm.

## GERUND.

*Eundī, dō, dūm, dō.*

## SUPINE.

*Itūm, itū.*

599. *Edērē*, to eat.

*Edērē*, to eat, is conjugated regularly as a verb of the third conjugation, but has also certain forms like those of *essē*. These are as follows:

*Regular.*

<i>Pres.</i>	<i>Edō, etc.</i>
<i>Imperat.</i>	<i>Edē, etc.</i>
<i>Subj. Imp.</i>	<i>Edērēm, etc.</i>
<i>Infinit.</i>	<i>Edērē.</i>

*Irregular.*

<i>Ea, est, estis.</i>
<i>Ea, estō, estē, eatōtē.</i>
<i>Easēm, essēs, etc.</i>
<i>Easē.</i>

600. *Periphrastic Conjugations.*

There are two periphrastic conjugations formed respectively from the future participles in *rūs* and *dūs*, combined with the various tenses of the verb *essē*. The first periphrastic conjugation represents the action as *future*, or as one that is about to be done; e. g., *scriptūrūs sūm*, I am about to write: the second expresses *duty* or *necessity*; e. g., *virtūs cōlendā est*, virtue must be cultivated.

601. *Impersonal Verbs.*

1. Impersonal verbs are such as are used only in the third person singular, and never take a personal subject (as *I, thou, he*). The subject in English is generally expressed by the pronoun *it*; e. g.,

*Oportēt, it behooves.*

*Taedēt mē, it disgusts me* (I am disgusted with).

2. Besides the verbs which are strictly impersonal, many others are often used *impersonally*; e. g.,

*Constāt, it is known.*

*Juvāt, it delights.*

3. The second periphrastic conjugation is often used *impersonally*; e. g.,

*Mihī scribendū est, I must or should write.*

*Tibi scribendū est, you must or should write.*

*Illī scribendū est, he must or should write.*

*Nobis scribendū est, we must or should write.*

*Vobis scribendū est, you must or should write.*

*Illis scribendū est, they must or should write.*

4. Those verbs which take no direct object in the active, can only be used *impersonally* in the passive; e. g.,

*Mihī crēditūr, I am believed.*

*Tibi crēditūr, Thou art believed.*

*Illī crēditūr, He is believed.*

*Nobis crēditūr, We are believed.*

*Vobis crēditūr, You are believed.*

*Illis crēditūr, They are believed.*



# SYNTAX.

---

## INTRODUCTION.

602. PARTS of speech (as we have seen, 2), either singly or combined, form propositions; e. g., *Amas, thou lovest*; *puēr ludīt, the boy plays*.

603. Propositions, either singly or combined, form sentences; e. g., *Equūs currīt (one prop.), the horse runs*; *Puēr ludīt ēt ēquūs currīt (two propositions)*.

604. Sentences, in their various forms and combinations, of course, comprise the language.

605. Sentences may be divided into two classes, viz.:

- 1) Simple sentences, or such as contain a single proposition; e. g., *Puēr ludīt*.
- 2) Compound sentences, or such as contain more than one proposition; e. g., *Puēr ludīt ēt ēquūs currīt*.

606. In a compound sentence, the propositions which compose it are either,

- 1) Independent of each other, as in the above example, and are called co-ordinate propositions; or,
- 2) One of them is used to qualify the other, or some part of it, and is called a dependent or subordinate proposition, while that on which it depends is called a leading or principal proposition; e. g., *Servūs vēnīt ūt portas claudāt, the slave has come to shut the gates*. Here, '*servūs vēnīt*' is a principal proposition, and '*ūt portas claudāt*' is a dependent proposition.

## CHAPTER I.

*The Essential Elements of Sentences.—Subject and Predicate.*

## SECTION I.—SUBJECT.

607. EVERY sentence, however simple, consists of two distinct parts, viz. .

- 1) The *Subject*, or that of which it speaks, as, *puër*, in the sentence *puër lūdū*.
- 2) The *Predicate*, or that which is said of the subject, as *lūdū*, in the above sentence.

608. The subject of a sentence must be either,

- 1) A noun; e. g., *puër*, in the sentence *puër lūdū*; or,
- 2) A word or clause used as a noun; e. g., *mentīrī*, in the sentence *turpē est mentīrī*.

609. RULE I. *The Subject*.—The subject of a finite\* verb is put in the nominative; e. g., *Equūs currit*, *the horse runs*.

610. The subject may either be *simple* or *compound*.

- 1) The *simple subject* consists either of a single nominative, or of two or more nominatives representing the same person or thing; e. g., (1) *Lātinūs rēgnābāt*, *Latinus was reigning*; (2) *Lātinūs rex rēgnābāt*, *Latinus the king was reigning*.
- 2) The *compound subject* consists of two or more simple subjects connected by conjunctions, expressed or understood; e. g., *Caesār ēt Balbūs Rōmām vēnērunt*, *Caesar and Balbus came to Rome*.

## SECTION II.—PREDICATE.

611. The predicate of a sentence must be either,

- 1) A verb; e. g., *lūdū*, in the sentence *puër lūdū*; or,
- 2) The verb *essē* (or sometimes a passive verb) with an attributive† noun or adjective; e. g.,

---

\* For the subject of an infinitive see 655.

† By an *attributive* noun is meant one which is used to qualify or describe another noun.

## 1.

Cicēro fuit consūl, *Cicero was consul.*

Christiani est nēminēm violārē, *it is the duty of a Christian to wrong nobody.* Here, *fuit consūl* and *Christiani est* are the predicates.

## 2.

Terrā est rōtundā, *the earth is round.*

Hūmānūm est errārē, *to err is human.* Here, *est rōtundā* and *hūmānūm est* are the predicates.

612. RULE II. *Finite Verb.*—A finite verb must agree with its subject in number and person; e. g., Puēr ludīt, *the boy plays.*

REM.—If the subject is compound, the verb is generally put in the plural.

613. RULE III. *Attributive Noun.*—An attributive noun in the predicate, after the verb *essē* and a few passive verbs, is put,

- 1) In the same case as the subject, when it denotes the same person or thing; e. g., Cicēro fuit consūl, *Cicero was consul.*
- 2) In the genitive, when it denotes a different person or thing; e. g., Christiani est nēminēm violārē, *it is the duty of a Christian to wrong nobody.*

614. RULE IV. *Adjectives.*—Adjectives and participles (whether in the subject or the predicate) agree in *gender, number, and case*, with the nouns which they qualify; e. g., Terrā est rōtundā, *the earth is round.*

615. The predicate, like the subject, may be either *simple* or *compound*.

- 1) The *simple* predicate contains but a single finite verb; e. g., Puēr currīt, *the boy runs.*
- 2) The *compound* predicate consists of two or more simple predicates connected by conjunctions, expressed or understood; e. g., Puēr currīt et ludīt, *the boy runs and plays.*

616. In principal sentences (including simple sentences) the verb of the predicate may be put in any finite mood.

- 1) The *indicative* is used, in positive assertions; e. g., Portas claudīt, *he is shutting the gates.*
- 2) The *subjunctive* is used,



- a) To express an affirmation *doubtfully* or *conditionally*;  
e. g., *Dārēt, he would give it* (i. e., *if he had it, perhaps*).
- b) Sometimes to express a *wish* or *command*; e. g., *Scribāt, he may write, may he write, or let him write*.

- 3) The imperative is used to express a *command*; e. g., *Portas claudē, shut the gates*.

617. RULE V. *Vocative*.—The name of the person or thing addressed is put in the vocative; e. g., *Quid est, Cātīlmā? why is this, Catiline?*

REMARK.—This, of course, forms no part of the subject or predicate.

## CHAPTER II.

### *Subordinate Elements.—Modifiers.*

#### SECTION I.—USE OF MODIFIERS.

618. BOTH subject and predicate may have qualifying words and clauses connected with them, to limit or modify their meaning; e. g.,

- 1) *Lātinūs rex rēgnāvīt, Latinus the king reigned*. Here the subject is modified by *rex* (59).
- 2) *Militēs fortītēr pagnant, the soldiers fight bravely*. Here the predicate is modified by *fortītēr* (77).

619. Any modifier, whether in the subject or the predicate, may be itself modified; e. g., *Lātinūs, bōnūs rex, rēgnāvīt*. Here the modifier, *rex*, is itself modified by *bōnūs*.

620. Nouns, adjectives, verbs, and adverbs, are often found with modifiers.

#### SECTION II.—MODIFIERS OF NOUNS.

621. Nouns, including pronouns, may be modified,

- I. By adjectives and participles.
- II. By nouns and clauses used with the force of adjectives.

622. I. Nouns may be modified by adjectives and participles; e. g.,  
*Bōnūs puēr, a good boy*.

See Rule IV.

623. II. Nouns may be modified by nouns and clauses used with the force of adjectives. These are,

- 1) Limiting nouns.
- 2) Relative clauses.

624. RULE VI. *Limiting Nouns*.—A noun limiting the meaning of another noun is put,

- 1) In the same case as that noun, when it denotes the same person or thing; e. g., *Lātnūs rex*, *Latinus the king*.
- 2) In the genitive, when it denotes a different person or thing; e. g., *Rēgīs filiūs*, *the king's son*: except,
  - a) When it denotes *character* or *quality*; it is then accompanied by an adjective, and is put either in the genitive or ablative; e. g., *Puēr exīmia pulchritūdinis*, or *Puēr exīmia pulchritūdinē*, *a boy of remarkable beauty*.

625. RULE VII. *Relative Clauses*.—The relative pronoun agrees with its antecedent in *gender* and *number*; e. g., *Puēr qui lođit*, *the boy who plays*.

626. The predicate of a relative clause is sometimes in the *indicative* and sometimes in the *subjunctive*. It may be observed, however, that the subjunctive is used,

- 1) To express *purpose* or *result*; e. g., *Lēgātōs miserunt qui dīcērent*, *they sent ambassadors to say* (lit., *who might say*).
- 2) To define an indefinite antecedent; e. g., *Sunt qui pūtent*, *there are (some) who think*.

### SECTION III.—MODIFIERS OF ADJECTIVES.

627. Adjectives may be modified,

I. By adverbs.

II. By words (generally the oblique cases of nouns) used with the force of adverbs.

628. I. Adjectives may be modified by adverbs; e. g., *Haud difficilis*, *not difficult*.

629. RULE VIII. *Adverbs*.—Adverbs modify verbs, adjectives, and other adverbs; e. g., *Haud difficilis*, *not difficult*; *milēs fortitēr pūgnāt*, *the soldier fights bravely*.

REM.—It will be observed that *adverbs* modify verbs and other adverbs as well as adjectives.

630. II. Adjectives may be modified by words (generally the oblique cases of nouns) used with the force of adverbs. These are,

- 1) The genitive.
- 2) The dative.
- 3) The ablative.
- 4) The infinitive.

631. RULE IX. *Genitive*.—Many adjectives signifying *desire, knowledge, skill, participation, recollection, fulness*, and the like, together with their *contraries*, take the genitive; e. g., *Cūpīdūs laudīs, desirous of praise.*

632. RULE X. *Dative*.—Many adjectives are followed by the dative of the object to which the quality is directed, or for which it exists; e. g., *Pax mihī gratissimā ērāt, peace was very acceptable to me.*

633. RULE XI. *Ablative*.—Adjectives may be modified by an ablative denoting *cause, manner, or means*; e. g., *Aegēr āvaritīa, diseased by avarice.*

634. RULE XII. *Ablative*.—The adjectives, *dignūs, indignūs, contentūs, praeditūs, frētūs*, and *libēr*, take the ablative; e. g., *Virtus parvō contentā est, virtue is content with little.*

635. RULE XIII. *Supine in ū as Ablative*.—The supine in *ū* as a verbal noun in the ablative is used after adjectives signifying *good or bad, easy or difficult, agreeable or disagreeable, &c.*; e. g., *Difficilē dictū (difficult in saying), difficult to say.*

636. RULE XIV. *Ablative*.—The comparative degree without *quām* is followed by the ablative; e. g., *Clēmētia diviniūs, more godlike than clemency.*

**Obs.**—If *quām* is expressed, the following noun will be in the same case as that which precedes; e. g., *Eurōpā minōr est quām Asiā, Europe is smaller than Asia.*

637. RULE XV. *Infinitive*.—The infinitive sometimes depends upon adjectives; e. g., *Dignūs amārī, worthy to be loved.*

**Rem.**—Infinitives dependent upon adjectives are generally used as substantives, and as such may be referred to Rule XI. or XII.

#### SECTION IV.—MODIFIERS OF VERBS.

638. Verbs may be modified,

- I. By objects.
- II. By adverbial modifiers.

§ 1. *Objects.*

639. Verbs may be modified by objects. These are,

- 1) The oblique cases of nouns.
- 2) Infinitives or clauses used as nouns.

640. Verbs may take one or more oblique cases of nouns as objects; e. g., (1) Caiūs puellām laudāt, *Caius praises the girl.*  
(2) Balbūs puērō viām monstrāt, *Balbus shows the way to the boy.*

641. RULE XVI.—The *accusative* is used as the *direct object* of an action; e. g., Caiūs puellām laudāt, *Caius praises the girl.*

642. RULE XVII.—The *genitive* is used,

- 1) After verbs of pitying; e. g., Misērēmīni sociōrūm, *pity the allies.*
- 2) After verbs of remembering and forgetting; e. g., Mēmīni vivōrūm, *I remember the living.*
- 3) After rēfert and intērest; e. g., Intērest omniūm, *it is the interest of all.*

REM.—Verbs of remembering and forgetting sometimes take the *accusative*; e. g., Mēmīni Cinnām, *I remember Cinna.*

643. RULE XVIII.—The *dative* is used,

- 1) After *essē* in expressions denoting possession; e. g., Puērō est libēr, *the boy has a book* (lit., *there is a book to the boy*).
- 2) After the compounds of *essē*, except *possē*, to be able; e. g., Mihī profuit, *it profited me.*
- 3) After the compounds of *bēnē*, *sātis*, and *mālē*; e. g., Officiō suō sātisfēcīt, *he has discharged his duty* (lit., *has done enough for*).
- 4) After the compounds of the prepositions, *ād*, *antē*, *cōn*, *in*, *intēr*, *ob*, *post*, *prae*, *sub*, and *supēr*, together with a few others; e. g., Vēni ūt mihī succurrās, *I have come that you may assist* (succor) *me.*
- 5) After verbs signifying to command or obey, please or displease, favor or injure, serve or resist, together with *to indulge*, *spare*, *pardon*, *envy*, *believe*, *persuade*, &c.; e. g., Lēgibūs parēt, *he obeys the laws* (is obedient to the laws).

644. RULE XIX.—The *ablative* is used,

- 1) After the deponent verbs, *ūti*, *f-ūi*, *fungi*, *pōnēre*, *vesci*,

*dignāri*,\* and their compounds; e. g., *Lactē vescuntūr*, they live upon milk.

- 2) After verbs signifying to abound or be destitute of; e. g., *Nēmō aliōrūm opē cārērē pōtest*, no one can be (do) without the assistance of others.

645. RULE XX. *Two Accusatives*.—Verbs of asking, demanding, teaching, and concealing, may take two accusatives, one of the person and one of the thing; e. g., *Caesār frūmentū Aeduōs flagitābāt*, Caesar demanded corn of the Aedui.

646. RULE XXI. *Accusative and Genitive*.—Verbs of accusing, convicting, acquitting, warning, and the like, take the accusative of the person, and the genitive of the crime, charge, &c.; e. g., *Calūm prōditionis accusant*, they accuse Caius of treachery.

REM.—The genitive is perhaps best explained by making it depend upon the ablative *criminis*, understood. See 214, Note.

647. RULE XXII. *Accusative and Genitive*.—The impersonal verbs of feeling, *miserēt*, *poenitēt*, *pudet*, *taedet*, and *piget*, take the accusative of the person, together with the genitive of the object which produces the feeling; e. g., *Taedet mē vitae*, I am weary of life (lit., it wearies me of life).

648. RULE XXIII. *Accusative and Dative*.—Any transitive verb may take the accusative of the direct object and the dative of the indirect object; e. g., *Balbūs puērō viām monstrāt*, Balbus shows the way to the boy.

649. RULE XXIV. *Accusative and two Datives*.—Transitive verbs of giving, sending, imputing (*dārē*, *mitterē*, *vertērē*, &c.), sometimes take a direct object in the accusative, together with two indirect objects in the dative; e. g., *Rēgnū suū Rōmanis donō dedit*, he gave his kingdom to the Romans as a present (for a present).

650. RULE XXV. *Accusative and Ablative*.—Verbs signifying to separate from, or deprive of, take the accusative of the direct object, together with the ablative of that from which it is separated, &c. e. g., *Mē lacē privant*, they deprive me of light.

---

\* *Dignāri* takes a direct object in connection with the ablative; e. g., *Te hōnōrē dignātūr*, he thinks you worthy of honor.

651. RULE XXVI. *Two Datives*.—Intransitive verbs signifying *to be, to come, to go*, and the like, often take two datives, one denoting the object *to which*, and the other the object *for which*; e. g., *Caesārī auxiliō vēnit*, *he went to the assistance of Caesar*.

652. RULE XXVII. *Dative and Ablative*.—*Opūs est* and *usūs est*, as impersonal verbs signifying need, take the dative of the person and the ablative of the object needed; e. g., *Dūcē nobis opūs est*, *we need a leader* (lit., *there is need to us of a leader*).

653. Verbs sometimes take an infinitive or clause as object; e. g.,

1. *Cūpīt pugnārē*, *he desires (what?) to fight*.

2. *Spērō tē essē beatūm*, *I hope (what?) that you are happy*.

3. *Nesciō undē sōl ignēm hābeāt*, *I know not (what?) whence the sun derives its fire*.

654. RULE XXVIII. *Infinitive as Object*.—The infinitive mood, either alone or with other words connected with it, may be used as the object of a verb. (See examples above.)

REM.—The infinitive as object is used chiefly after verbs of *perceiving, declaring, desiring*, and the like.

655. RULE XXIX. *Subject of Infinitive*.—The subject of the infinitive is put in the accusative; e. g., *Spērō tē essē beatūm*, *I hope you are happy*.

REM.—In this example *tē*, which is the subject of *essē*, is put in the accusative according to rule.

656. RULE XXX. *Dependent Question as Object*.—An indirect or dependent question may be used as the object of a verb; e. g., *Nesciō undē sōl ignēm hābeāt*, *I know not whence the sun derives its fire*.

657. The verb in dependent questions is put in the subjunctive, as in the above example.

658. RULE XXXI. *Object after Passive Verbs*.—Verbs in the passive voice are followed by the same cases as in the active, except the direct object, which becomes the subject of the passive; e. g., (*Act.*) *Balbūm furti accūsant*, *they accuse Balbus of theft*; (*Pass.*) *Balbū furti accūsātūr*, *Balbus is accused of theft*.

659. RULE XXXII. *Agent of Passive Verbs*.—After passive verbs, the agent of the action is expressed by the ablative with *a* or *ab*, e. g., *Puēr a Caiō docētūr*, *the boy is taught by Caius*; except,

The second periphrastic conjugation (425), which takes the dative of the agent; e. g., *Mihī scribendū est, I must write.*

660. RULE XXXIII. *Impersonal Passive Verbs.*—Verbs which have no direct object in the active voice, are only used impersonally in the passive; e. g., *Mihī crēditūr, I am believed* (lit., *it is believed to me*).

### ‡ II. *Adverbial Modifiers.*

661. Verbs often take adverbial modifiers: these are,

- 1) Adverbs.
- 2) Adverbial expressions.

662. Verbs may be modified by adverbs; e. g., *Fortitēr pugnāt, he fights bravely.*

See Rule VIII.

REM.—Adverbial modifiers are the same whether the verb is active or passive.

663. Verbs may be modified by adverbial expressions: these are,

- 1) The oblique cases of nouns, with or without prepositions.
- 2) Infinitives, or dependent propositions.

664. The oblique cases of nouns (with or without prepositions) used as adverbial modifiers, may be referred to the following classes, viz.:

- 1) Adverbial expressions of *manner, means, &c.*
- 2) Adverbial expressions of *time.*
- 3) Adverbial expressions of *place.*
- 4) Miscellaneous adverbial expressions.

665. The oblique cases of nouns (and sometimes of adjectives) may be used as adverbial modifiers denoting *manner, means, &c.*

666. RULE XXXIV. *Manner, Means, &c.*—The *manner* or *cause* of an action, and the *means* or *instrument* employed, are expressed by the ablative; e. g., *Dōmīnū glādiō occidit, he killed his master with a sword.*

667. RULE XXXV. *Price.*—Price, when expressed by nouns, is usually put in the ablative, and when expressed by adjectives, usually in the genitive; e. g., (1) *Avarūs pātriām aurō vendēt, the avaricious man will sell his country for gold*; (2) *Avarūs pēcūniām magnī aestimāt, the avaricious man values money highly.*

668. The oblique cases of nouns may be used as adverbial modifiers denoting *time*.

669. RULE XXXVI. *Time*.—Time *when* is expressed by the ablative without a preposition; e. g., *Hiemē ursūs dormīt, the bear sleeps in winter.*

670. RULE XXXVII. *Length of Time*.—Length of time is generally expressed by the accusative; e. g., *Caiūs annūm unūm vixit, Caius lived one year*

671. The oblique cases of nouns (with or without prepositions) may be used as adverbial modifiers denoting *place*.

672. RULE XXXVIII.—The name of a town where any thing is, or is done, if of the first or second declension and singular number, is put in the genitive, otherwise in the ablative; e. g., (1) *Caiūs Cortōnae vixit, Caius lived at Cortona*; (2) *Caiūs Tibūrē vixit, Caius lived at Tibur.*

673. RULE XXXIX.—The name of a place where any thing is, or is done, when not a town, is generally put in the ablative with a preposition; e. g., *Ursūs in antrō dormīt, the bear sleeps in a cave.*

674. RULE XL.—After verbs of motion,

- 1) The place to which the motion is directed, if a town or small island, is expressed by the accusative without a preposition, otherwise by the accusative with one; e. g., (1) *Rōmām vēnirē, to come to Rome*; (2) *In Itāliām vēnirē, to come into Italy.*
- 2) The place from which the motion proceeds, if a town or small island, is expressed by the ablative without a preposition, otherwise by the ablative with one; e. g., (1) *Rōma vēnirē, to come from Rome*; (2) *Ab Itāliā vēnirē, to come from Italy.*

675. RULE XLI.—*Dōmūs* and *rūs*, together with the genitives *bellī*, *hūmī*, and *mīlītiāe*, are used like names of towns; e. g., *Caiūs rurē rēdiit, Caius returned from the country*; *Balbūs ēt dōmī ēt mīlītiāe fuit, Balbus was with me both at home and on service.*

676. RULE XLII.—The supine in *ūm*, as a verbal noun in the accusative, follows verbs of motion to express the purpose or object



of that motion; e. g., *Mittit legatos pacem petītum*, he sends ambassadors to sue for peace.

677. The ablative absolute and the oblique cases of nouns with prepositions are used to express various adverbial relations.

678. **RULE XLIII. Ablative Absolute.**—A noun and a participle standing grammatically independent of the rest of the sentence, are put in the ablative absolute; e. g., *Caesār victis hostibūs*, *Caesar having conquered his enemies* (or, *when he had conquered*; lit., *his enemies being conquered*).

**REM.**—The ablative absolute generally expresses either the adverbial relation of time (as in the above example) or that of cause; sometimes, however, it adds an attendant circumstance.

679. **RULE XLIV. Prepositions with Accusative.**—The following twenty-six prepositions govern the accusative; viz., *Ad*, *adversūs*, *antē*, *apūd*, *circa* or *circū*, *cis* or *citra*, *contra*, *erga*, *extra*, *infra*, *intēr*, *intra*, *juxta*, *ob*, *pēnēs*, *pēr*, *pōnē*, *post*, *praetēr*, *prōpē*, *propētēr*, *sēcundū*, *sūprā*, *trans*, *ultra*, *versūs* (*rare*).

680. **RULE XLV. Prepositions with Ablative.**—The following eleven prepositions govern the ablative; viz., *A* (*ab* or *abs*), *absquē*, *cōrām*, *cū*, *dē*, *ē* or *ex*, *pālām*, *prae*, *prō*, *sinē*, *tēnūs*.

681. **RULE XLVI. Prepositions with Accusative or Ablative.**—The five prepositions, *clām*, *in*, *sūb*, *subtēr*, and *sūpēr*, take sometimes the accusative and sometimes the ablative.

**REM. 1.**—*In* and *sūb* govern the accusative in answer to *whither* (i. e. after verbs of motion), and the ablative in answer to *where* (i. e. after verbs of rest). *Subtēr* generally takes the accusative. *Sūpēr* takes the accusative after verbs of motion, and also when it signifies *upon*, and the ablative when it signifies *on* or *of* (as of a subject spoken or written about).

**REM. 2.**—Prepositions in composition often govern the same cases as when they stand alone.

682. Verbs may be modified by infinitives or by dependent propositions.

683. **RULE XLVII. Infinitive as Modifier of Verb.**—The infinitive mood may be used after verbs denoting *custom*, *ability*, and the like; e. g., *Nōn faciēre possūm*, *I am not able to do*, &c.

684. Dependent propositions, as adverbial modifiers, are gene-

ally introduced by conjunctions, and express a great variety of relations, as *time, place, manner, condition, &c.*

685. Dependent propositions take the verb,

- 1) Sometimes in the indicative; e. g., *Itēr faciēbām, quūm has littērās dābam, I was making a journey when I gave these letters.*
- 2) But more commonly in the subjunctive; e. g., *Si quīd hābeāt, dābit, if he has any thing, he will give it.*

#### SECTION V.—MODIFIERS OF ADVERBS.

686. Adverbs are modified by other adverbs; e. g., *Sātīs bēnē scripsit, he has written sufficiently well.*

687. Prepositions and conjunctions are connectives, and neither modify nor are modified.

688. Interjections are expressions of emotion or mere marks of address, and have no grammatical influence upon the rest of the sentence.

### CHAPTER III.

#### USE OF MODELS, PARTICIPLES, GERUNDS, AND SUPINES.

689. THE indicative is used in positive assertions; e. g., *Puēr ludīt, the boy plays.*

REM.—The indicative is commonly used in principal propositions, but sometimes in dependent ones.

690. The subjunctive is used both in principal and dependent propositions.

691. I. In principal propositions the subjunctive is used,

- 1) To express a wish or a command; e. g., *Scribāt, he may write, may he write, or let him write.*
- 2) To express an affirmation *doubtfully or conditionally*; e. g., *Dārēt, he would give it (i. e. if he had it, perhaps).*

692. II. In dependent propositions.

- 1) With *ut, nē, quō, quān, quōmōdō*, to express *purpose* or

consequence; e. g., *Venit ut scribāt, he has come to write; Cui nihil obstat quominus sit beatus, nothing prevents Caius from being happy (by which he should be less happy).*

- 2) With *quūm* (*cūm*), when it introduces a *cause* or *reason*, or in any way shows the dependence of one event upon another; e. g., *Quae cūm itā sint, since these things are so.*
- 3) With *licet*, although, *quāsi*, *tanquā*, *ac si*, as if, *dūm*, *mōdō*, *dummodō*, provided, if only, *quāvis*, however much, however; e. g., *Improbū itā vivit, quāsi nesciāt, &c., the wicked (man) lives, as if he did not know, &c.; Nēmō, quāvis sit locuplēs, no one, however wealthy he may be.*
- 4) In conditional sentences, to represent the condition either as *simply possible* or as *impossible*; e. g., *Si quid hābeāt, dābit, if he has any thing, he will give it. Si quid hāberēt, dārēt, if he had any thing, he would give it.*
- 5) In *indirect* or *dependent* questions; e. g., *Nesciō undē sol ignē hābeāt, I know not whence the sun derives its fire.*
- 6) In relative clauses, (1) to express *purpose* or *result*, and (2) to define an indefinite antecedent; e. g., (1) *Lēgātōs misērunt quī dicērēt, they sent ambassadors to say; (2) Sunt quī pūtēt, there are (some) who think.*

693. *Subjunctive Tenses in Dependent Propositions.*—The subjunctive, (1) when dependent upon a present tense (*pres.*, *perf. def.*, or *ful.*) is put in the *present* to denote an incomplete action, and in the *perfect* to denote a completed action; and (2) when dependent upon a past tense (*imperf.*, *perf. indef.*, or *pluperf.*), in the *imperfect* to denote an incomplete action, and in the *pluperfect* to denote a completed action; e. g.,

1. *Nesciō quid dicāt, I know not what he is saying.*
2. *Nesciō quid dixērīt, I know not what he said.*
3. *Nescivīt quid dicērēt, I knew not what he said.*
4. *Nescivīt quid dixissēt, I knew not what he had said.*

694. The imperative is used to express a command; e. g., *Portas claudē, shut the gates.*

695. The infinitive, which expresses the simple meaning of the verb without reference to person or number, is used,

- 1) As the subject of another verb; e. g., *Difficilē est iudicārē, it is difficult to judge.*

- 2) As the object of another verb; e. g., CăpiŃ sâpěřě, *I desire to be wise.*
- 3) As the modifier of an adjective or verb; e. g., (1) DignŃs Ńmări, *worthy to be loved*; (2) NŃn făcěřě possŃm, *I am not able to do, &c.*

696. Participles, gerunds, and supines are followed by the various cases of nouns like the other parts of verbs. In regard to their own government, it must be observed,

- 1) That participles, like adjectives, agree with substantives.
- 2) That gerunds are governed like the same cases of substantives.
- 3) That supines, as verbal nouns, are governed like the same cases of other nouns.



## DIFFERENCES OF IDIOM.

---

### ENGLISH IDIOM.

1 To think nothing of

2 To value highly.\*

3 To think little of† }  
To hold cheap. }

4 No stability.

*Some time.*

*Much good.*

*How much pleasure.*

### LATIN IDIOM.

To reckon at nothing (*nihilī ducere*  
or *facere*).

To value at a high price (*magnī*  
*aestimāre*).

To value at a little price (*parvī*  
*aestimāre*).

Nothing of stability (*nihil stabilitatis*).

Something of time (*aliquid temporis*).

Much of good (*multum boni*).

How much of pleasure (*quantum voluptatis*).

REM.—Hence *no*, *some* (when they denote *quantity*, not *number*), *much*, *how much*, are to be translated by *nihil*, *aliquid*, *multum*, *quantum*, followed by the *gen.*

5. He did it *unwillingly*.

6. It is disgraceful to lie.

7. It is the *part*

—— *duty*

—— *business*

—— *mark*

—— *character*

} of a wise  
man.

He *unwilling* did it.

To lie is disgraceful.

It is of a wise man.

8. To condemn a man *to death*.

9. As many as *possible*.

—— *he can or could.*

The greatest *possible*.

—— *he can or could.*

To condemn a man *of the head*.

As the most (*quam plurimī*).

As the greatest (*quam maximus*).

[That is, as many as the most: as  
great as greatest, &c.]

10. On the *top* of the mountain.

In the *middle* of the water.

On the mountain *highest*.

In the water *middle* (in *summo*  
*monte*; in *media aqua*).

---

\* To value *very highly* (*maximī aestimāre*).

† The substantive will follow in the *accusative* notwithstanding the *of* for that has nothing to do with the Latin verb.

## ENGLISH IDIOM.

11. Is going to bed.  
 12. It is hard to say.  
 13. Whilst they were (are, &c.) playing.  
 14. The intention of writing a letter.  
 15. We must cultivate virtue.  
 16. Caius must write.  
 17. We must believe Caius.  
 18. The ways of expressing the purpose are,

He comes to see the games.

19. a) I may go.  
       b) I might have gone.  
 20. a) I ought to go.  
       b) I ought to have gone.

## LATIN IDIOM.

Is going to lie down (*cubitum, sup.*).  
 It is hard in saying (*difficile est dictu; supine*).  
 During playing (*inter ludendum*).  
 The intention of a letter to-be-written (*scribendae epistolae*).  
 Virtue is to-be-cultivated (*colenda est virtus*).  
 It is to-be-written by Caius (*Caius scribendum est*).  
 It is to-be-believed to Caius (*credendum est Caio*).

{ (a) Venit ut ludos spectet.  
   (b) Venit ludos spectatum (*sup.*).  
   (c) Venit ludos spectaturus.  
   (d) Venit ad ludos spectandos.  
       To which add,  
   (e) Venit causa (*for the purpose*) ludorum spectandorum; and  
   (f) Instead of *ut*, the relative may be used:  
       He sent ambassadors, *qui pacem petebant* (*to sue for peace*).  
 Mihi ire licet (*it is permitted to me to go*).  
 Mihi ire licuit (*it was permitted to me to go*).  
 Me ire oportet.  
 Me ire oportuit.

## CAUTIONS.

---

2. *Him, her, them* (or *he, she, they*, when they are to be translated by the *accusative*), must be translated into Latin by the proper case of *ei*, when they and the *nominative of the verb* stand for the *same person*. Also, in the same case, *his, hers, its, theirs*, must be translated by *suus*.
3. In a sentence with *that* dependent on a past tense, the perfect is to be translated into Latin by the *present infinitive*, whenever the notion expressed by it is not to be described as *over before the time* of the principal verb.
- a. *Would, should*, after a past tense are future forms:
 

$$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{He says that he will come.} \\ \text{He said that he would come.} \end{array} \right.$$
- d. *Thing* should be expressed by *res* (fem.), when the adjective alone would leave it doubtful whether *men* or *things* were meant:
 

*Thus, of many things, not multorum, but multarum rerum.*
- e. *Cum* is written *after*, and as *one word with* the ablatives *me, te, &c.*: *mecum, tecum, secum, nobiscum, vobiscum*.
- f. Many English verbs *become* transitive by the addition of a *preposition*; for instance, to *smile at, &c.*
- g. *Such* in English is often used where *size* is meant, rather than *quality*. It should then be translated into Latin by *tantus, quantus*; not *talis, qualis*.
- h. *That* or *those*, when it stands for a substantive which has been expressed in a preceding clause, is not to be translated.
- i. When *that* introduces a *consequence*, *that not* is *ut non*, not *ne*.
 

$$\text{That—not} \left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{for a purpose ..... ne.} \\ \text{for a consequence ... ut non.} \end{array} \right.$$
- j. After verbs of *fearing*, the Eng. *future* and the *participial substantive* are translated into Latin by the *present* or *imperfect* subjunctive, with *ut* or *ne*.
- k. *Who, what, which*, are often *dependent interrogatives*, especially after verbs of *asking, knowing, doubting, &c.*



- l. *May, might*, sometimes mean *can, could*, and must be translated by *possim*.
- m. The *perf. infin.* must be translated into Latin by the *present infin.* after *might, could, ought*, unless the action is to be represented as *over* before the time to which *might, could, &c.* refer.
- n. In English, substantives standing before and spoken of other substantives, are used *adjectively*, and must be translated into Latin by adjectives.
- o. *What* is sometimes used for *how* (*quam*); sometimes for *how great* (*quantus*).
- p. *For* and *as* are to be untranslated, when the noun that follows can be placed in *apposition* to another noun in the sentence.
- q. When *one, two, &c.* mean *one, two, &c. apiece*, or *for each*, they must be translated by the *distributive numerals, singuli, bini, &c.*
- r. *I have* to do it, must be translated by the part. in *dus*.  
(*Eng.*) With whom we *have* to live.  
(*Lat.*) With whom *it is to-be-lived* (*quibuscum vivendum est*).
- s. *It is*, followed by what is in form the *infin. pass.*, generally expresses *necessity, fitness, or something intended*.
- t. But *is to be* sometimes means, not *necessity, fitness, or intention*, but *possibility*; as, 'the passage *is to be found* in the fifth book,' — the passage *may or can* be found in the fifth book.
- u. A *present participle* must be translated into Latin by a *perfect participle* (or its substitute, *quum* with *perf.* or *pluperf. subj.*) when the action expressed by it must be *over*, before that expressed by the verb *begins*.
- v. The English *present part. act.* is generally translated by the Latin *past partic.*, when the verb is *deponent*.
- w. When the action was not done *in*, but only near a town, *at* must be translated by *ad* or *apud*.
- x. *One* often means *some one* (*aliquis*) or *a certain one* (*quidam*).
- y. *Will* and *would, will not* and *would not*, are often principal verbs, to be translated by *velle* and *nolle* respectively.

They are to be so translated when for

*will,*

*would*, we may substitute

*is* (are, &c.) *willing, was* (were, &c.) *willing*.

- z. When an English word is followed by a preposition, consider whether the Latin word to be used is followed by a preposition or by a case and then by what preposition or what case.

## LATIN-ENGLISH VOCABULARY.

### A.

A, āb, abs (*prep. with abl.*), *from, by.*

Abire, i, it, *to go away, depart.*

Absolvere, v, ut, *to acquit.*

Ac, and.

Accedere, cess, cess, *to approach.*

Accipere (iō), cēp, cept, *to receive, accept.*

Accipiter, trīs, *hawk.*

Accusare, āv, āt, *to accuse.*

Acē, acris, acrē, *sharp, severe.*

Achillēs, īs, *Achilles, a Grecian hero.*

Acies, ēi, *line of battle.*

Ad (*prep. with acc.*), *to.*

Adducere (ad and ducere), dux, duct, *to lead to.*

Adēo, so, *in such a manner.*

Adesse (ad and esse), fu, fūt, *to be present.*

Adjumentum, i, *aid, help.*

Adjuvare, jūv, jūt, *to aid, help.*

Admiratio, ōnis, *admiration.*

Admonere, v, it, *to admonish, warn.*

Adulatio, ōnis, *flattery.*

Adulator, ōris, *flatterer.*

Adventus (adventre), ūs, *approach.*

Aedificare, āv, āt, *to build.*

Aedificium, i, *building, edifice.*

Aeneas, ae, *Aeneas, a Trojan prince.*

Aequitas, ātis, *equity, justice.*

Aestas, ātis, *summer.*

Aestimare, āv, āt, *to value, prize; magni aestimare, to prize highly.*

Afferre (ad and ferre), attul, allat, *to bring to.*

Agere, āgri, *field.*

Agere, ēg, act, *to drive, lead, do; gratias agere, to render thanks.*

Agnus, i, *lamb.*

Agrocola, ae, *husbandman.*

Aliquando, *some time.*

Aliquis, quā, quid, *any one, any some; aliquid temporis, some time.*

Alius, ā, ūd (118. R.), *other.*

Alpes, ium, *the Alps.*

Altus, ā, ūm, *high, lofty.*

Amare, āv, āt, *to love.*

Ambitus, ūs, *bribery.*

Ambulare, āv, āt, *to walk.*

Americanus, ā, ūm, *American.*

Amicitia, ae, *friendship.*

Amicus, i, *friend.*

Amittere, mis, *miss, to lose.*

Amphibium, i, *an amphibious animal.*

Amplius (adv.), *more, further.*

Amplus, ā, ūm, *ample, large.*

An, interrog. part., *used in double questions, 482.*

Anchises, ae, *Anchises, the father of Aeneas.*

Anguis, is, m. or f., *snake.*

Angustiae, arum, *a narrow pass, defile.*

Animal, alis, *animal.*

Animus, i, *mind, soul.*

Assentire, nu, nūt, *to assent, to give assent.*

Annus, i, *year.*

Antē (*prep. with acc.*), *before.*

Antea (adv.), *before.*

Antrum, i, *cave.*

Anulus, i, *ring.*

Aprire, eru, ert, *to uncover, to open.*

Appropinquare, āv, āt, *to approach.*

Aqua, ae, *water.*

Aquari, āt, *to bring water.*

Aquila, ae, *eagle.*

Arā, ae, *altar.*

Arare, āv, āt, *to plough.*

Arbor, ōris, f., *tree.*

Argentum, i, *silver.*

Armiger, *I*, armor-bearer  
 Arripere (ið), *ipu*, opt, to snatch,  
 seize.  
 Ars, *artia*, art.  
 Arx, *arcia*, citadel, tower.  
 Ascanius, *I*, Ascanius, son of Aeneas.  
 Asinus, *I*, ass.  
 Aspergere (or adspargere), *era*, *era*,  
 to sprinkle.  
 At, but.  
 Athenae, *arum*, Athens, city of Greece.  
 Atheniensis (Athenae), *ð*, Athenian,  
 pl., the Athenians.  
 Atqui (conj.), but, now (as used in reasoning).  
 Attamen, but, yet.  
 Attingere (ad and tangere), *tig*, tact,  
 to attain, reach.  
 Auctor, *oria*, author.  
 Auctumnus, *I*, autumn.  
 Audax, *acia*, daring, audacious.  
 Audire, *iv*, it, to hear.  
 Augere, *aux*, auct, to increase.  
 Aureus (aurum), *ð*, um, golden.  
 Aurum, *I*, gold.  
 Aut, or; aut—aut, either—or.  
 Autem, but.  
 Auxilium, *I*, aid.  
 Avaricia, *ae*, avarice.  
 Avarus, *ð*, um, avaricious.  
 Avis, *is*, bird.

## B.

Balbus, *I*, Balbus, a man's name.  
 Barba, *ae*, beard.  
 Beatus (beatus), happily.  
 Beatus, *ð*, um, happy.  
 Bellum, *I*, war.  
 Bene, well.  
 Beneficium, *I*, benefit.  
 Benignus, *ð*, um, kind.  
 Bibere, *bib*, bibit, to drink.  
 Biennium, *I*, two years, space of two years.  
 Bonus, *ð*, um, good.  
 Brachium, *I*, arm.  
 Brevis, *ð*, short.  
 Brutus, *I*, Brutus, a Roman consul.

## C.

Cadere, *cēcid*, *cās*, to fall.  
 Caecus, *ð*, um, blind.  
 Caesar, *aria*, Caesar, a distinguished Roman general.  
 Caius, *I*, Caius, a man's name.  
 Calamitas, *atis*, misfortune, calamity.  
 Candidus, *ð*, um, white.  
 Canere, *cēcin*, cant, to sing.  
 Canis, *is*, c., dog.  
 Cantare (canere), *av*, at, to sing.  
 Capere (ið), *cēp*, capt, to take, receive.  
 Captivus, *ð*, um, captive.  
 Caput, *itis*, head; capitis, of the head, to death.  
 Carpere, *carps*, carpt, to gather, to pluck, to card.  
 Carthaginiensis (Carthago), *ð*, Carthaginian.  
 Carthago, *inis*, Carthage, an ancient city in northern Africa.  
 Castigare, *av*, at, to chastise.  
 Castra, *orum*, camp.  
 Catena, *ae*, chain.  
 Cavere, *cāv*, caut, to take care, to be on one's guard against.  
 Celebrare, *bris*, brē, celebrated.  
 Celeriter, quickly.  
 Certamen, *inis*, contest.  
 Certus, *ð*, um, certain.  
 Christianus, *I*, Christian.  
 Cibus, *I*, food.  
 Cicero, *onis*, Cicero, the great Roman orator.  
 Cingere, *nx*, nct, to surround.  
 Circumdare (circum and dare), *dēd*, dāt, to surround.  
 Cis, on this side.  
 Civilis (civis), *ð*, civil.  
 Civis, *is*, citizen.  
 Civitas (civis), *atis*, state.  
 Claudere, *claus*, claus, to shut.  
 Clemens, *entia*, mild, merciful.  
 Clementia, *ae*, mildness, clemency.  
 Clipeus, *I*, shield.  
 Coelum, *I*, heaven, the heavens.  
 Coena, *ae*, supper, feast.  
 Cogitare, *av*, at, to think, to think about.  
 Cognitus, *ð*, um, known.

Cōgnoscerē, nōv, nīt, to ascertain.  
 Cōlērē, cōlu, cult, to till, cultivate,  
     *practise.*  
 Collōquium, i, conference.  
 Cōlōr ōris, colūr.  
 Cōlumbā, ae, dove.  
 Committērē, mīa, miss, to engage;  
     proeliūm committērē, to engage  
     *cattle.*  
 Compārārē, āv, āt, to procure, raise,  
     *levy.*  
 Compellērē, pūl, pula, to compel,  
     *drive.*  
 Compescērē, escu, to restrain, re-  
     *press.*  
 Complērē, ēv, ēt, to fill.  
 Comprēhendērē, nd, na, to arrest.  
 Concertārē, āv, āt, to contend, quarrel.  
 Conciliūm, i, council, meeting.  
 Condērē (con [cūm] and dāre), dīd,  
     dīt, to build, found.  
 Conditūš, ōnis, condition, terms.  
 Confūgērē (iđ), fūg, to flee for re-  
     *fuge.*  
 Conjux, ūgīa, spouse, wife, husband.  
 Conservārē, āv, āt, to preserve.  
 Consiliūm, i, advice, instruction.  
 Conspicērē (iđ), spex, spect, to see,  
     *discover.*  
 Constāt (impers.), it is known, is an  
     *admitted fact.*  
 Constitūērē, u, ūt, to arrange, ap-  
     *point.*  
 Constrūērē, strux, struct, to build,  
     *construct.*  
 Consūl, ūlis, consul, the Roman chief  
     *magistrate.* [advice.  
 Consulērē, sūlu, sult, to consult, ask  
 Contemnērē, ps, pt, to despise.  
 Contentūš, ā, ūm, contented, content.  
 Continērē, u, tent, to restrain, confine.  
 Continuūš, ā, ūm, successive.  
 Contra (prep. with acc.), against.  
 Convēnērē (cōn [cūm] and venire),  
     vēn, vent, to come together.  
 Convertērē, t, a, to turn, convert.  
 Cōpia, ārum, forces.  
 Cōquērē, x, ct, to cook, to bake, to  
     *ripen.*  
 Cōr, cordis, n., heart.  
 Cōrām (prep. with abl.), before, in pre-  
     *sence of; adv., openly, in person.*

Cōrōnā, ae, crown, garland.  
 Corpūs, ōris, body.  
 Corrigērē, rex, rect, to correct.  
 Corrupērē, rūp, rupt, to mislead,  
     *corrupt.*  
 Crābrē, ōnis, wasp.  
 Crēbēr, brā, brūm, frequent.  
 Crēdērē, crēdīd, crēdīt, to believe,  
     *put confidence in.*  
 Crescērē, crēv, crēt, to increase, to  
     *wax (as moon).*  
 Culpā, ae, fault, blame.  
 Cūm (prep. with abl.), with.  
 Cunctūš, ā, ūm, all as a whole.  
 Cūpērē (iđ), iv (i), it, to desire.  
 Cūpiditāa, ātia, desire, passion.  
 Cūpidūš, ā, ūm, desirous of.  
 Cūrārē (cura), āv, āt, to take care  
     *of.*  
 Currērē, cūcurr, cura, to run.  
 Currūs, ūs, chariot.  
 Custōdirē (custos), iv, it, to guard.

## D.

Damnārē, āv, āt, to condemn.  
 Dārē, dēd, dāt, to give.  
 Dē (prep. with abl.), from, about,  
     *concerning.*  
 Dēcēm, ten.  
 Dēcarnērē, crēv, crēt, to decree de-  
     *cide.*  
 Dēcimūš, ā, ūm, tenth.  
 Dēcipērē (iđ), cēp, cept, to deceive.  
 Dēdērē, dēdīd, dēdīt, to surren-  
     *der.*  
 Dēfendērē, d, a, to defend.  
 Dēglūbērē, ups, upt, to skin, flay.  
 Delērē, lēv, lēt, to destroy.  
 Dēmonstrārē, āv, āt, to show, demon-  
     *strate.*  
 Dēprēhendērē, d, a, to seize, catch.  
 Dēterrērē, u, it, to deter, prevent.  
 Dēvincērē, vic, vict, to conquer.  
 Dicērē, dix, dict, to say.  
 Didō, ōnis, Dido, the foundress of  
     *Carthage.*  
 Dies, ei, day.  
 Difficilis, ē, difficult.  
 Dignūš, ā, ūm, worthy.  
 Dilāniārē, āv, āt, to tear in pieces.  
 Diligēns, tia, diligent.

Diligentia (*diligens*), *ae*, diligence.  
 Dimittere, *mis*, *missa*, to dismiss.  
 Discere, *didic*, to learn.  
 Discipulus, *i*, pupil.  
 Disjungere, *x*, *ct*, to separate.  
 Dividere, *via*, *via*, to divide.  
 Divinus, *a*, *um*, divine.  
 Divitiacus, *i*, *Divitiacus*, a man's name.  
 Docere, *u*, *t*, to teach.  
 Dolere, *u*, *it*, to grieve.  
 Dolor, *oris*, pain, grief, sorrow.  
 Dominus, *i*, master as owner.  
 Domus, *us* *et* *i*, *f*, house; domi, *at home*.  
 Donare, *av*, *at*, to give, present.  
 Donum, *i*, gift.  
 Dormire, *iv*, *it*, to sleep.  
 Dubitare, *av*, *at*, to doubt.  
 Ducenti, *ae*, *a*, two hundred.  
 Ducere, *dux*, *duct*, to lead.  
 Dum, *while*.  
 Dummödo, *if*, *but*, provided.  
 Duo, *ae*, *o*, two.  
 Duodecim, *twelve*.  
 Durare, *av*, *at*, to last.  
 Dux, *ducis*, leader, guide.

## E.

Edere, *ed*, *es* (420), to eat.  
 Educere (*e* and *ducere*), *dux*, *duct*, to lead forth.  
 Efficere (*id*), *fec*, *fect*, to effect, accomplish.  
 Ego, *mei*, *etc.*, *i*.  
 Elegantia, *ae*, elegance.  
 Elephas, *antis*, *m*, elephant.  
 Emere, *em*, *empt*, to buy, purchase.  
 Enim, *for*, *indeed*.  
 Enumerare, *av*, *at*, to enumerate.  
 Epistola, *ae*, letter, epistle.  
 Epitome, *es*, abridgment.  
 Eques, *itis*, horseman.  
 Equitatus, *us*, cavalry.  
 Equus, *i*, horse.  
 Erga (*prep.* with *acc.*), towards.  
 Ergo (*conj.*), therefore.  
 Errare, *av*, *at*, to err.  
 Erudire, *iv*, *it*, to instruct.  
 Esse, *fu*, *fut*, to be; *est*, *is*, *it is*.  
 Et and: Et—et, both—and.

Etiam, *also*, *even*; etiam atque etiam, *again and again*.  
 Evertere, *rt*, *rs*, to pull down, to overthrow.  
 Evolare, *av*, *at*, to fly away, to flee from.  
 Ex (*prep.* with *abl.*), from.  
 Excitare, *av*, *at*, to excite, arouse.  
 Exclamare, *av*, *at*, to exclaim, cry out.  
 Excruciare, *av*, *at*, to torture.  
 Exercere, *u*, *it*, to practise, exercise.  
 Exercitus, *us*, army.  
 Exorare, *av*, *at*, to supplicate.  
 Expellere, *pul*, *pula*, to expel, banish.  
 Expondere, *pösu*, *pösit*, to set forth, explain.  
 Expugnare (*ex* and *pugnare*), *av*, *at*, to storm.  
 Expectare, *av*, *at*, to expect.

## F.

Fabuloseus, *a*, *um* (*fabula*), fabulous.  
 Facere (*id*), *fec*, *fact*, to do, make, act.  
 Facies, *ei*, face, appearance.  
 Facilis, *e*, easy.  
 Fallax (*fallere*), *acis*, false, deceptive.  
 Fames, *is*, hunger.  
 Faustulus, *i*, *Faustulus*, an Italian shepherd.  
 Favere, *fav*, *faut*, to favor.  
 Felicitas, *atis*, happiness.  
 Ferre, *tül*, *lat* (414), to bear.  
 Ferrum, *i*, iron.  
 Fidelis, *e*, faithful.  
 Fides, *ei*, faith, fidelity; fidem violare, to break one's word.  
 Fieri, *fact* (416), to become, be made.  
 Figura, *ae*, figure.  
 Filia, *ae* (*D. pl. filiaribus*), daughter.  
 Filius, *i*, son.  
 Finire (*finis*), *iv*, *it*, to finish.  
 Finis, *is* (*m.* and *f.* sing. *m. pl.*), end.  
 Firmus, *a*, *um*, firm.  
 Flagitium, *i*, crime.  
 Flere, *flev*, *flet*, to weep.  
 Florere (*flos*), *u*, to flourish, bloom.  
 Florescere (*florere*), to begin to bloom.

Flūs, ōris, *flower*.  
 Fluere, x, x, *to flow*.  
 Flūmēn, inis, *river, stream*.  
 Foedūs, ēris, *treaty*.  
 Fortis, ē, *brave*.  
 Fortitēr (fortis), *bravely*.  
 Fortunā, ae, *fortune*.  
 Frangere, frēg, fract, *to break*.  
 Frāter, tris, *brother*.  
 Fraudare, āv, āt, *to defraud*.  
 Frētūs, ā, ūm, *relying on*.  
 Frīgūs, ōris, *cold*.  
 Frutex, icis, m., *shrub*.  
 Fūgā, ae, *flight*.  
 Fūgare (fūgā), āv, āt, *to put to flight*.  
 Fūgere (iō), fūg, fūgīt, *to flee*.  
 Fundūs, i, *estate, farm*.  
 Fungī, funct, *to discharge, fulfil*.  
 Furtūm, i, *theft*.  
 Futūrūs, ā, ūm, *future*.

## G.

Gallīcūs (Galliā), ā, ūm, *Gallie*.  
 Gallūs, i, *a Gaul*.  
 Gēnēr, i, *son-in-law*.  
 Gēnūs, ēris, *kind, nature*.  
 Gērere, gess, gest, *to carry on, to wage (as war)*.  
 Germāniā, ae, *Germany*.  
 Glādiūs, i, *sword*.  
 Glōriā, ae, *glory*.  
 Graeci, ōrūm, *the Greeks*.  
 Grānūm, i, *grain*.  
 Grātiā, ae, *gratitude, favor; pl. thanks*.  
 Grāvis, ē, *heavy*.  
 Grex, ēgis, m., *flock, herd*.

## H.

Hābere, u, īt, *to have*.  
 Hābitare (habere), āv, āt, *to inhabit*.  
 Haedūs, i, *kid*.  
 Hannibāl, ālis, *Hannibal*.  
 Hastā, ae, *spear*.  
 Hērōs, ōis, *hero*.  
 Hesternūs, ā, ūm, *of yesterday*.  
 Hic, haec, hoc, *this*.  
 Hiems, emis, *winter*.  
 Histōriā, ae, *history*.

Hōmō, inis, *man*.  
 Hōnōr, ōris, *honor*.  
 Hortūlūs (hortūs), *little garden*.  
 Hortūs, i, *garden*.  
 Hostis, is, *enemy*.  
 Hūmānūs, ā, ūm, *human, natural to man*.  
 Hūmērūs, i, *shoulder*.

## I.

Ibi, *there*.  
 Idēm, eādēm, idem, *same*.  
 Ideō, *therefore*.  
 Igītūr, *therefore*.  
 Ignārūs, ā, ūm, *ignorant*.  
 Ignāvūs, ā, ūm, *indolent, cowardly*.  
 Ignis, is, m., *fire, heat*.  
 Ignōrātiā, ōnis, *ignorance*.  
 Ignoscere, ōv, ōt, *to pardon*.  
 Illē, illā, illūd, *that, he, she, it*.  
 Illustrare, āv, āt, *to illumine, to enlighten*.  
 Immensūs, ā, ūm, *immense*.  
 Immergere, rs, rs, *to plunge into*.  
 Immobilis, ē, *immovable*.  
 Immortalis, ē, *immortal*.  
 Impēdire, iv, it, *to impede, hinder*.  
 Impendere, *to overhang, threaten*.  
 Impērare, āv, āt, *to command; imperatā, ōrūm, commands*.  
 Impērātōr (impērare), ōris, *commander*.  
 Impētūs, ūs, *attack*.  
 Impiūs, ā, ūm, *impious*.  
 Improbūs, ā, ūm, *bad, wicked*.  
 Imprūdēns, entis, *imprudent*.  
 In (prep. with acc. or abl.), *with acc. into, to, against; with abl. in*.  
 Incendere, d, s, *to set on fire, to burn*.  
 Inceptūm, i, *beginning*.  
 Incertūs, ā, ūm, *uncertain*.  
 Incognītūs, ā, ūm, *unknown*.  
 Incōlā (in and colere), ae, *inhabitant*.  
 Incōlūmīs, ē, *safe, uninjured*.  
 Incrēdibilis (in and credere), ē, *incredible*.  
 Indicere, dix, dict, *to declare (as war)*.  
 Indignūs, ā, ūm, *unworthy*.  
 Indoctūs, ā, ūm, *unlearned*.

Indulgere, la, it, to indulge.  
 Industriā, ae, industry.  
 Inferre, intūl, illat (414), to wage.  
 Infrā (prep. with acc.), below.  
 Infligere, flix, flict, to inflict.  
 Ingēniūm, i, talent, ability.  
 Injuriā, ae, injury, wrong done.  
 Innocētia, tis, innocent.  
 Innoxius, ā, ūm, harmless.  
 Instruere, strux, struct, to arrange, array.  
 Intelligere, lex, lect, to understand.  
 Inter (prep. with acc.), between, during.  
 Interdūm, sometimes.  
 Interesse, fu, fūt, to be engaged in.  
 Interficere (iſ), fec, fect, to kill.  
 Interim, in the mean time, meanwhile.  
 Intervallūm, i, distance, space.  
 Intrā (prep. with acc.), within.  
 Inutilis, ē, useless.  
 Invadere (in and vadere), vās, vās, to invade.  
 Invenire, ven, vent, to find.  
 Invidere, vid, vīs, to envy.  
 Invitus, ā, ūm, unwilling.  
 Ipse, ā, ūm, self, he himself.  
 Ira, ae, anger.  
 Ire, iv, it, to go.  
 Irritare, av, at, to irritate.  
 Is, ea, id, he, she, it, that.  
 Istē, ā, ūd, that.  
 Italia, ae, Italy.  
 Itaque, therefore.  
 Iter, itinēris, journey, way.  
 Iterūm, again.

## J.

Jubere, juss, juss, to direct, order.  
 Jucundus, ā, ūm, pleasant, delightful.  
 Jūdex, icis, judge.  
 Judicare, av, at, to judge.  
 Jurare, av, at, to swear.  
 Justus, ā, ūm, just, fair.

## L.

Lābor, ōris, labor.  
 Lāborare, av, at, to labor.  
 Lanā, ae, wool.

Lātīnus, i, Latinus, a king of Latium.  
 Laudare, av, at, to praise.  
 Laus, dis, praise.  
 Lavare, lav, laut, or lavāt, to wash.  
 Lavinia, ae, Lavinia, daughter of Latinus.  
 Legatus, i, ambassador.  
 Legere, leg, lect, to read.  
 Legio, ōnis, legion, body of foot.  
 Lenis, ē, mild, merciful.  
 Leo, ōnis, lion.  
 Lex, legis, law.  
 Liber, libri, book.  
 Liber, ā, ūm, free.  
 Liberi, ōrūm, children.  
 Licet (impers. v.), it is lawful.  
 Licet, although.  
 Liquescere, licu, to melt.  
 Litterae, arūm (pl.), letter, epistle.  
 Locuples, etis, wealthy, rich.  
 Locus, i (pl. loci or loca), place.  
 Loqui, lūcūt, to speak.  
 Lucere, lux, to shine.  
 Luctus, ūs, grief, sorrow.  
 Lūcus, i, grove.  
 Ludere, lūs, lūs, to play.  
 Ludus, i, play, sport.  
 Lūgere, lux, to grieve, mourn, weep for.  
 Lūna, ae, moon.  
 Lūpus, i, wolf.  
 Lusciniā, ae, nightingale.  
 Lux, lucis, light.

## M.

Māculare, av, at, to stain, to blemish.  
 Magister, tri, master as teacher.  
 Magnitudo (magnus), inis, greatness, size.  
 Magnus, ā, ūm, great, large; magni, at a great price, highly; magnūm est, it is a great thing.  
 Major, ūs (comp. of magnus), greater, larger.  
 Malē (malus), badly.  
 Mallē, mālu (410), to prefer.  
 Mālum, i, evil, misfortune.  
 Mālus, ā, ūm, bad.  
 Mānere, na, ne, to remain.

Mānūs, ūs, *f.*, *hand, force.*  
 Mārē, īa, *sea.*  
 Mārīnūs, ā, ūm, *marine, of the sea.*  
 Mātēr, trīs, *mother.*  
 Mātrōnā, ae, *matron.*  
 Maximūs, ā, ūm (*superl. of magnus*), *greatest, very great; maximī, at a very great price.*  
 Mēdicūs, ī, *physician.*  
 Mēdiūs, ā, ūm, *middle, midst of, middle of, 267.*  
 Mēl, mellis, *honey.*  
 Mendaciūm, lie, *falsehood.*  
 Mens, tīs, *mind, the reasoning faculty.*  
 Mensis, īa, *m., month.*  
 Mētūērē, u, *to fear.*  
 Mētūs, ūs, *fear.*  
 Meūs, ā, ūm (*masc. voc. sing., mi*), *my.*  
 Micārē, u, *to glitter, shine.*  
 Milēs, itīs, *soldier.*  
 Militiā, ae, *military service; militiæ (gen. sing.), in war, on service.*  
 Millē, thousand.  
 Minōr, ūs (*comp. of parvus*), *smaller.*  
 Mirābilis, ē, *wonderful.*  
 Misēr, ā, ūm, *miserable, wretched.*  
 Misēreri, ert or ērit, *to pity.*  
 Misēret (impers. verb), *it pities, one pities.*  
 Mittērē, mīs, missa, *to send.*  
 Mōbilis, ē, *movable.*  
 Mōdō, only.  
 Mōnērē, u, it, *to advise, admonish.*  
 Mons, tīs, *m., mountain.*  
 Monstrārē, āv, āt, *to show.*  
 Mordērē, mōmord, mors, *to bite.*  
 Mors, tīs, *death.*  
 Mortālis (mors), ē, *mortal.*  
 Mōvērē, mōv, mōt, *to move.*  
 Muliēr, ēris, *woman.*  
 Multitūdō (multūs), inīs, *multitude.*  
 Multūs, ā, ūm, *much, many; multā (neut. pl.), many things; multūm boni, much good; multūm temporis, much time.*  
 Mūrūs, ī, *wall.*  
 Mutārē, āv, āt, *to change*

## N.

Nām, *for*  
 Namquē, *for.*

Nārē, nāv, *to swim.*  
 Narrārē, āv, āt, *to relate, narrate.*  
 Narrātiō (narrārē), *narration, narrative.*  
 Nascī, nāt, *to be born.*  
 Natiō, ōnis, *nation.*  
 Nē, interrog. particle, 287 and 288.  
 Nē (used with imperat. and subj.), *not.*  
 Nēc, neither; nēc—nēc, *neither—nor.*  
 Negligērē, lex, lect, *to disregard.*  
 Nēmō (inīs, *not in good use*), *nobody, no one.*  
 Nēquidēm, *not even, generally with the emphatic word between the two parts; as, nē pōpūlus quidēm, not even the people.*  
 Nērē, nēv, nēt, *to spin.*  
 Nescirē, īv, īt, *not to know, to be ignorant of.*  
 Nidūs, ī, *nest.*  
 Nihil, *nothing.*  
 Nimiūs, ā, ūm, *too much, excessive.*  
 Nix, nivis, *snow.*  
 Nōcērē, u, it, *to hurt.*  
 Nollē, nōlu (410), *to be unwilling.*  
 Nōmēn, inīs, *name.*  
 Nōn, *not; nōn solum—sed etiam, not only—but also.*  
 Nondūm, *not yet.*  
 Nonnē, interrog. particle; *expects ans. yes. 288, Rem.*  
 Nostēr, trā, trūm, *our.*  
 Nōvembēr, brīs (abl. ī), *November.*  
 Nox, noctis, *night.*  
 Nubēs, īs, *cloud.*  
 Nullūs, ā, ūm (113, R.), *no, no one.*  
 Nūm, interrog. particle; *expects ans. no. 288, Rem. [Roma.]*  
 Nūmā, ae, *Numa, second king of Nunc, now.*  
 Nūmērārē, āv, āt, *to number.*  
 Nūmērūs, ī, *number.*  
 Nunquām, *never.*  
 Nuntiārē (nuntiūs), āv, āt, *to announce, report.*  
 Nuntiūs, ī, *messenger.*

## O.

O (interjection), *O.*  
 O si, *O if, would that.*



Obessē, fu, fūt, to be *prejudicial to*.  
 Oblivisci, oblit, to *forget*.  
 Obsēa, idūs, *hostage*.  
 Obstārē, stit, stāt, to *oppose, prevent*.  
 Obtinērē, inu, ent, to *acquire, obtain*.  
 Occasiō, ōnis, *occasion*.  
 Occidērē (ob and caedēre), cid, cīs, to *kill*.  
 Occidērē (ob and cādēre), cid, cās, to *fall*.  
 Occultārē (occulēre), av, āt, to *conceal, hide*.  
 Octō, eight.  
 Oculūs, ī, *eye*.  
 Odiūm, ī, *hatred*.  
 Officiūm, ī, *duty*.  
 Olīm, once, *formerly*.  
 Omnino, in *all*.  
 Omnis, ē, *all, every*.  
 Oportēt (impera.), it *behoooves, one ought*.  
 Optiō, ōnis, *choice*.  
 Opūs, ēris, *work*.  
 Orātiō, ōnis, *oration*.  
 Orātōr, ōris, *orator*.  
 Ornārē, av, āt, to *adorn*.  
 Ovis, īs, *sheep*.

## P.

Pabūlārī, āt, to *forage*.  
 Palliūm, ī, *cloak*.  
 Pārārē, av, āt, to *prepare*.  
 Pārērē, u, īt, to *obey*.  
 Parcērē, pēperc, parcīt, to *spare*.  
 Pars, tīs, *part*.  
 Parvūs, ā, ūm, *small, little*; parvūm, *little, a little*; parvī, at a *low price*; parvī aestimārē, to *think little of*.  
 Pastōr (pascēre), ōris, *shepherd*.  
 Pātēr, trīs, *father*.  
 Pātriā, ae, *native country*.  
 Paucūs, ā, ūm, *little, few*.  
 Paupēr, ēris, *a poor man*.  
 Pausaniās, ae, *Pausanias, a distinguished Spartan general*.  
 Pāvō, ōnis, *peacock*.  
 Pax, pācis, *peace*.  
 Peccārē, av, āt, to *sin, do wrong*.  
 Pēcūniā, ae, *money*.  
 Penderē, pēpend, to *hang*.

Pēr (prep. with acc.), *through*.  
 Perdērē, did, dīt, to *waste*.  
 Perfidia, ae, *perfidy*.  
 Perfūgiūm, ī, *refuge*.  
 Pēriculōsus (periculūm), ā, ūm, *dangerous*.  
 Pēritūs, ā, ūm, *skilful, skilled in*.  
 Perniciēs, ēi, *destruction*.  
 Perpētuo, *for ever*.  
 Perspicērē (iō), ex, ect, to *perceive, see*.  
 Persuādērē, s, s, to *persuade*.  
 Pertūmescērē, timu, to *fear greatly*.  
 Pervēnirē, vēn, vent, to *arrive at, reach*.  
 Pēs, pēdis, *foot*.  
 Pētērē, iv or i, īt, to *seek*.  
 Philōsophūs, ī, *philosopher*.  
 Piētās, ātis, *piety, faithfulness*.  
 Pigēt (impera.), it *irks, one is grieved at*; mē pigēt, *I am grieved*.  
 Piscis, īs, m., *fish*.  
 Piūs, ā, ūm, *pious*.  
 Plācārē, av, āt, to *appease*.  
 Plācērē, u, īt, to *please*.  
 Planē, *plainly*.  
 Plūrimūs, ā, ūm (superl. of multus), *very much or great*; pl., *very many*.  
 Poēmā, ātis, *poem*.  
 Poenitēt (impera.), it *repents, one repents*.  
 Poētā, ae, *poet*.  
 Pōnērē, pōsu, pōsit, to *place*.  
 Pons, tīs, m., *bridge*.  
 Pōpūlāris (populūs), ē, *popular*.  
 Pōpūlūs, ī, *people*.  
 Portā, ae, *gate*.  
 Poscērē, pōposc, to *demand*.  
 Possē, pōtu (irreg. 407), to *be able*.  
 Possidērē, ēd, ess, to *possess*.  
 Post (prep. with acc.), *after*.  
 Postērā, ūm (mas. not used), *next, following*.  
 Postulārē, av, āt, to *demand*.  
 Pōtiri, īt, to *get possession of*.  
 Prae (prep. with abl.), *before, in comparison with*.  
 Praebērē, u, īt, to *furnish, offer*.  
 Praeceptūm, ī, *precept, instruction*.  
 Praedā, ae, *booty*.  
 Praeditūs, ā, ūm, *endued with*.

Praemitterē, *mīa, mīsa, to send before.*  
 Praepārārē, *āv, āt, to prepare.*  
 Praesens, *tis, present.*  
 Praestans, *tis, excellent.*  
 Praestāt (*impers.*), *it is better.*  
 Praetērītūs, *ā, ūm, past; neut. pl., the past.*  
 Prātūm, *i, meadow.*  
 Prētiosūs, *ā, ūm, valuable.*  
 Primūs, *ā, ūm, first.*  
 Princeps (*prīmūs and cāpēre*), *īpīa, chief, leader.*  
 Privārē, *āv, āt, to deprive.*  
 Privātūs, *ā, ūm, private, personal.*  
 Prō (*prep. with abl.*), *for, before.*  
 Prōbūs, *ā, ūm, honest.*  
 Prōdesse, *prōfū, prōfūt, to profit.*  
 Prōditiō, *ōnis, treachery.*  
 Prōditōr, *ōris, traitor.*  
 Prōducērē, *dux, duct, to lead forward, or out.*  
 Proeliūm, *i, battle.*  
 Prōficisci, *fect, to set out, to march.*  
 Prōmittērē, *mīa, mīsa, to promise.*  
 Prōmōvērē, *mōv, mōt, to move forward, advance.*  
 Prōpensūs, *ā, ūm, inclined to.*  
 Prōpiōr, *ūs (comp.), nearer.*  
 Prōvidūs, *ā, ūm, cautious, prudent.*  
 Prōvinciā (*pro and vincere*), *ae, province.*  
 Proximūs, *ā, ūm, nearest, next.*  
 Prūdēns, *tis, prudent, cautious.*  
 Prūdētiā (*prudens*), *ae, prudence.*  
 Pūdōr, *ōris, shame, modesty.*  
 Puellā, *ae, girl.*  
 Puēr, *i, boy.*  
 Pugnārē (*pugnā*), *āv, āt, to fight.*  
 Pulchēr, *chrā, chrūm, beautiful.*  
 Pūnirē, *iv, it, to punish.*  
 Pūtārē, *āv, āt, to think, regard.*

## Q.

Quaestīō, *ōnis, question.*  
 Quām (*adv.*), *how; quām multī, how many; with superl. intensive, as quām maximūs, as great as possible.*  
 Quām (*conj.*), *than.*  
 Quamvis, *however, however much.*  
 Quantūs, *ā, ūm, how great.*

Quārē, *wherefore.*  
 Quartūs, *ā, ūm, fourth.*  
 Quāsī, *as if.*  
 Quatuōr, *four.*  
 Quē (always appended to another word), *and.*  
 Quī, quae, quōd, *who, which, that.*  
 Quī, quae, quōd (*interrog.*), *who, which, what?*  
 Quīā, *because.*  
 Quiescērē, *ēv ēt, to rest, be quiet.*  
 Quīn (473), *that not, but that.*  
 Quinquē, *five.*  
 Quintūs, *ā, ūm, fifth.*  
 Quis, quae, quid (*interrog. suba.*), *who, which, what?*  
 Quō, *that, in order that.*  
 Quōminūs (472), *that not, from.*  
 Quōquē, *also.*  
 Quūm, *when; quūm—tūm, both—and.*

## R.

Ratiō, *ōnis, reason.*  
 Rēcipērē (*iō*), *cēp, cept, to receive.*  
 Rēcordārī, *āt, to remember, call to mind.*  
 Rēdirē, *i, it, to return.*  
 Rēducērē, *dux, duct, to lead back.*  
 Rēferrē, *tūl, lāt, to relate.*  
 Rēgērē, *rex, rect, to rule, govern.*  
 Rēgīnā, *ae, queen.*  
 Rēgnārē, *āv, āt, to reign.*  
 Rēgnūm, *i, kingdom, government.*  
 Rēliquūs, *ā, ūm, remaining, the rest.*  
 Rēpērīrē, *rēpēr, rēpert, to find.*  
 Rēs, *rēi, thing, affair.*  
 Rēsistērē, *stīt, to resist.*  
 Rēspondērē, *d, s, to answer.*  
 Responsūm, *i, answer, response.*  
 Rēspuērē, *pu, to reject.*  
 Reūs, *i, criminal.*  
 Rēvertērē, *vert, verā, to return, turn back.*  
 Rex, *rēgis, king.*  
 Rhēnūs, *i, Rhine.*  
 Ridērē, *ris, ris, to laugh, laugh at.*  
 Rōbustūs, *ā, ūm, robust, strong.*  
 Rōgārē, *āv, āt, to ask, entreat.*  
 Rōmā, *ae, Rome.*  
 Rōmānūs (*Rōmā*), *ā, ūm, Roman.*

Romŭlŭs, i, *Romulus*.  
 Rŏtundŭs, ā, ūm, *round*.  
 Ruŏrē, ru, rŭt (rult), *to rush*.  
 Rŭmŏr, ōris, *rumor*.  
 Rumpĕrē, rūp, rupt, *to break, violate*.  
 Rŭs, rūris, n, *country*.

## S.

Sācerdŏs, ōtis, *priest, priestess*.  
 Saepē, *often*.  
 Saevirē (saevŭs), iv (i), it, *to rage*.  
 Sāgittā, ae, *arrow*.  
 Saltārē, āv, āt, *to dance*.  
 Sālŭs, ūtis, *safety*.  
 Sānārē, āv, āt, *to cure, reform*.  
 Sancirē, x, ct, *to enact, confirm*.  
 Sanguis, inis, m, *blood*.  
 Sāpĕrē, iv or i, *to be wise*.  
 Sāpiens, entis, *wise*.  
 Sāpientiā, ae, *wisdom*.  
 Sātiārē, āv, āt, *to satisfy*.  
 Sātis, *enough*.  
 Scepŭrŭm, i, *cepter*.  
 Scientiā, ae, *knowledge*.  
 Scipiŭs, ōnis, *Scipio, a distinguished Roman*.  
 Scirē, iv, it, *to know*.  
 Scribĕrē, ps, pt, *to write*.  
 Sēcundŭs, ā, ūm, *second*.  
 Sēd, *but*.  
 Sēmĕn, inis, *seed*.  
 Sempĕr, *always*.  
 Sempiternŭs, ā, ūm, *lasting, eternal*.  
 Sēnātŏr, ōris, *senator*.  
 Sēnātŭs (senex), ūs, *senate*.  
 Sēnectŭs, ūtis, *old age*.  
 Sēnex, sēnis, *an old man*.  
 Sensŭs, ūs, *feeling, perception*.  
 Sententiā, ae, *sentiment*.  
 Sentirē, s, a, *to perceive, to feel (as pain)*.  
 Sēpĕlirē, pĕliv or i, pult, *to bury*.  
 Sermŏ, ōnis, *discourse*.  
 Servārē, āv, āt, *to keep, observe, save*.  
 Servirē, iv, it, *to serve, be slave to*.  
 Serviŭs, i, *Servius, a man's name*.  
 Servŭs, i, *slave*.  
 Seu—seu, *whether—or, either—or*.

Sex, *six*.  
 SI, *if*.  
 Sic, *so*.  
 Sicŭt, *so as, just as*.  
 Simplex, icis, *simple*.  
 Simulatiŭs, ōnis, *assumed appearance, pretence*.  
 Sinē (prep. with abl.), *without*.  
 Siniŭs, ūs, *bosom*.  
 Siren, enis, *siren*.  
 Sitirē, iv, it, *to thirst*.  
 Sivē—sivē, *whether—or*.  
 Sŏcrātēs, is, *Socrates, the celebrated Grecian philosopher*.  
 Sŏl, solis, m, *sun*.  
 Somniŭs, i, *sleep*.  
 Sŏniŭs, i, *sound*.  
 Sŏrŏr, ōris, *sister*.  
 Spargĕrē, rs, rs, *to scatter, sow*.  
 Spĕciŏsŭs (species), ā, ūm, *specious, plausible*.  
 Spectārē (specĕre), āv, āt, *to look at, behold*.  
 Spĕrārē, āv, āt, *to hope for*.  
 Spēs, ei, *hope*.  
 Splendens, tis, *shining*.  
 Spŏliārē, āv, āt, *to rob of, despoil*.  
 Stābilitās, ātis, *firmness, stability*.  
 Stātŭm (stāre), *immediately*.  
 Stellā, ae, *star*.  
 Stŭdĕrē, u, *to study, strive for*.  
 Stŭdiŏsŭs, ā, ūm, *studious*.  
 Stultitiā, ae, *folly*.  
 Suādĕrē, s, a, *to advise*.  
 Subvĕnirē, ven, vent, *to aid*.  
 Succurrĕrē, curr, curs, *to aid, succor*.  
 Suĕrē, su, sūt, *to sew, stitch*.  
 Suŭ, sibi (267), *of himself, herself, &c*.  
 Sullā, ae, *Sulla, a man's name*.  
 Summŭs, ā, ūm, *highest, greatest; sometimes the top of (267); summŭs mons, the top of the mountain*.  
 Sumptŭs, ūs, *expense*.  
 Sŭpĕrārē, āv, āt, *to surpass, conquer, to go over*.  
 Sŭpĕrficiēs, ei, *surface*.  
 Sŭpĕrvacuŭs, ā, ūm, *unnecessary*.  
 Supplicatiŭs, ōnis, *thanksgiving*.

**Sūpra** (*adv. and prep. with acc.*), *above.*

**Sustināre**, *u*, *tant*, to sustain, *endure.*

**Suūa**, *ā, ūm*, *his, her, &c.*

## T.

**Tācere**, *u, it*, to be silent, to pass over in silence.

**Tām**, *so*; **tām—quām**, *so—as.*

**Tāmēn**, *yet.*

**Tangere**, *tētīg*, *tact*, to touch.

**Tanquām**, *as if.*

**Tantūa**, *ā, ūm*, *so great.*

**Tārentūm**, *i*, *Tarentum*, a town in Italy.

**Tardūa**, *ā, ūm*, *slow.*

**Tarquinūa**, *i*, *Tarquin*, one of the kings of Rome.

**Tectūm** (*tegere*), *i*, *roof*, *house.*

**Tēgere**, *tex*, *tect*, to cover.

**Tempūa**, *ōria*, *time.*

**Tēnere**, *u, t*, to hold.

**Tentāre**, *āv, āt*, to try, attempt.

**Terrā**, *ae*, the earth.

**Terrere**, *u, it*, to terrify.

**Tertiūa**, *ā, ūm*, *third.*

**Tibūa**, *ūria*, *Tibur*, a town in Italy.

**Tīmēre**, *u*, to fear.

**Tīmīdūa**, *ā, ūm*, *timid.*

**Tonderē**, *tōtōnd*, *tons*, to shear, *shave.*

**Tōtūa**, *ā, ūm* (118, R.), *the whole, the entire.*

**Tranquillūa**, *ā, ūm*, *calm, tranquil.*

**Transire**, *i, it*, to go over.

**Trēs**, *triā*, *three.*

**Trojānūa** (*Trojā*), *ā, ūm*, *Trojan.*

**Tū**, *tui*, *thou.*

**Tullia**, *ae*, *Tullia*, a queen of Rome.

**Turpūa**, *ē*, *base*, *disgraceful.*

**Turris**, *is* (*acc.*, *ēm* or *īm*; *abl.*, *ē* or *i*), *tower.*

**Tuūa**, *ā, ūm*, *your.*

## U.

**Ullūa**, *ā, ūm* (118, R.), *any.*

**Undē**, *whence.*

**Uaquām**, *over.*

**Unūa**, *ā, ūm* (118, R.), *one, single, single one.*

**Urba**, *is*, *city.*

**Ursūa**, *i*, *bear.*

**Usquē**, *as far as*; **usquē ād**, *even to.*

**Ut** (*conj.*), *that, as.*

**Uti**, *ūa*, *to use.*

**Utilis**, *ē*, *useful.*

**Utilitās** (*ūtilis*), *ātis*, *utility, advantage.*

**Utinām** (*conj.*), *would that.*

**Utrūm** (*interrog. part.*), *whether*; **utrūm—ān**, *whether—or.*

**Uvā**, *ae*, *grape.*

## V.

**Vācare**, *āv, āt*, to have leisure for.

**Vēl** (*conj.*), *or*; **vēl—vēl**, *either—or.*

**Vellē**, *vōlu* (410), *to wish, be willing.*

**Vēlox**, *ōcis*, *swift.*

**Vēnārī**, *āt*, to hunt.

**Vendēre**, *did, dīt*, to sell.

**Vēnīre**, *vēn, vent*, to come.

**Vēr**, *vēris*, *n.*, *spring.*

**Verbūm**, *i*, *word.*

**Vērērī**, *it*, to fear.

**Vērō**, *indeed, truly.*

**Vērūa**, *ā, ūm*, *true, real*; **vērūm**, *truth.*

**Vēruntāmēn**, *but yet.*

**Vestēr**, *trā, trūm*, *your.*

**Vestis**, *is*, *garment.*

**Vētustūa**, *ā, ūm*, *ancient.*

**Viā**, *ae*, *way, road.*

**Victimā**, *ae*, *victim.*

**Victoriā**, *ae*, *Victoria.*

**Viderē**, *vid, vis*, to see; *pass*, **vīdērī**, *to seem.*

**Vigīlārē** (*vigīl*), *āv, āt*, to watch.

**Vigintī**, *twenty.*

**Vincēre**, *vic, vict*, to conquer.

**Vincīre**, *vinx, vinct*, to bind.

**Vincūlūm**, *i*, *chain.*

**Vindicārē**, *āv, āt*, to avenge.

**Viōlārē**, *āv, āt*, to violate, *wrong, break.*

**Vīr**, *vīri*, *man, hero.*

**Virgō**, *inis*, *virgin, maiden.*

<i>Virtūs, ūtis, virtue, manliness.</i>	<i>Vocārē, av, at, to call.</i>
<i>Vīs, vis (acc., vim), pl., virēs, viriūm,</i> <i>acc., force, strength.</i>	<i>Volārē, av, at, to fly.</i>
<i>Vitā, ae, life.</i>	<i>Voluptās, atis, pleasure.</i>
<i>Vitārē, av, at, to shun, avoid.</i>	<i>Vox, vōcis, voice.</i>
<i>Vitūpērārē, av, at, to blame, criticize.</i>	<i>Vulnerārē, av, at, to wound.</i>
<i>Vivērē, vix, vict, to live.</i>	<i>Vulnūs, ūris, wound.</i>
	<i>Vulpēs, is, fox.</i>

## ENGLISH-LATIN VOCABULARY.

### A.

- Ability*, ingēnium, I.  
*About*, dē (with *abl.*).  
*Above*, sup̄ra (*adv. and prep. with acc.*).  
*Abridgment*, ēpitōmē, ēa.  
*Accept*, accipērē (iŏ), cēp, cept (550).  
*Accomplish*, effīcērē (iŏ), fēc, fect.  
*Accuse*, accūsārē, āv, āt.  
*Achilles*, Achillēs, īa.  
*Acquire*, obtīnārē, tīnu, tent.  
*Acquit*, absolvērē, v, ūt.  
*Act*, v., fācērē (iŏ), fēc, fact.  
*Admiration*, admirātiŏ, ōnīs.  
*Admonish*, mōnērē, u, ūt, admōnērē, &c.  
*Adorn*, ornārē, āv, āt.  
*Advance*, prēmōvērē, mōv, mōt.  
*Advantage*, ūtīlītās, ātīa.  
*Advice*, consiliūm, I.  
*Advise*, suādērē, s, s; mōnērē, u, ūt.  
*Aeneas*, Aenēās, ae.  
*Affair*, rēs, rēl.  
*After*, post (with *acc.*).  
*Again*, itērūm.  
*Again and again*, ētīām atquē ētīām.  
*Against*, in (*acc.*); contrā (*acc.*).  
*Aid*, s., adjūmentūm, I; auxiliūm, I.  
*Aid*, v., subvērērē, vērē, vent, adjūvārē, jūr, jūt.  
*All (as a whole)*, cunctūs, ā, ūm.  
*All (every)*, omnia, ē.  
*Alps*, Alpēs, ūm.  
*Also*, ētīām, quōquē.  
*Altar*, arā, ae.  
*Although*, licēt.  
*Always*, semp̄r.  
*Ambassador*, lēgātūs, I.  
*American*, Amēricānūs, ā, ūm.

*Amphibious animal*, amphibitūm, I.

*Ample*, ampliūs, ā, ūm.

*Anchises*, Anchisēs, ae.

*Ancient*, vētustūs, ā, ūm.

*And*, ēt, quē (*enclitic*), &c.

*Anger*, Irā, ae.

*Animal*, ānimāl, aliā.

*Announce*, nuntiārē, āv, āt (540).

*Answer*, s., responsūm, I.

*Answer*, v., respondērē, d, s.

*Any*, ullūs, ā, ūm (113, R.).

*Any one*, āliquis, ā, quid.

*Appearance*, fāciēs, ēl.

*Appease*, plācārē, āv, āt.

*Appoint*, constituērē, u, ūt.

*Approach*, s., adventūs, ūs (521).

*Approach*, v., appropinquārē, āv, āt; accēdērē, cess, cess.

*Arm*, brachiūm, I.

*Armor-bearer*, armigēr, I.

*Army*, exercitūs, ūa.

*Arouse*, excitārē, āv, āt.

*Arrange*, constituērē, u, ūt.

*Arrange, array*, instruērē, ux, uct.

*Arrest*, comprēhendērē, d, s.

*Arrival*, adventūs, ūs (521).

*Arrive at*, pervērērē, vērē, vent.

*Arrow*, sagittā, ae.

*Art*, ars, artīs.

*As*, ūt.

*As far as*, usquē.

*As if*, quāsi, tanquā.

*As possible*, quān with superl. (309).

*Ascanius*, Ascāniūs, I.

*Ascertain*, cōgnoscerē, nōv, nīt.

*Ask*, rogārē, āv, āt.

*Ask advice*, consūlērē, lu, lt.

*Ass*, asinūs, I.

*Assemble*, convērērē, vērē, vent (550).

*Assent*, give assent, annuērē, u, ūt.

*Assumed appearance*, simūlatiŏ, ōnīs.

*At a high price*, magni; *at a very high price*, maximi.  
*At a low price*, parvi.  
*At home*, domi.  
*Athenian*, Atheniensis, ð.  
*Athens*, Athènes, ðrum.  
*Attack*, impétus, ða.  
*Attain*, attingere, tīg, tact.  
*Attempt*, tentare, ðv, ðt.  
*Audacious*, audax, ðcia.  
*Author*, auctor, ðria.  
*Auction*, auctum, ð.  
*Avarice*, ðvaritia, ðe.  
*Avaricious*, ðvarus, ð, ðm.  
*Avenge*, vindicare, ðv, ðt.  
*Avoid*, vitare, ðv, ðt.

## B.

*Bad*, improbus, ð, ðm; *malicious*, ð, ðm.  
*Badly*, male.  
*Bake*, coquere, cox, coct.  
*Balbus*, Balbus, l.  
*Banish*, expellere, pūl, pula.  
*Base*, turpis, ð.  
*Battle*, proelium, l.  
*Be*, esse, fu, fūt.  
*Be able*, posse, pōtu.  
*Be born*, nasci, nāt.  
*Be engaged in*, interessē, fu, fūt.  
*Be ignorant of*, nescire, iv (i), it.  
*Be made*, fieri, fact.  
*Be on one's guard against*, cavere, cav, caut.  
*Be prejudicial to*, ðbessē, fu, fūt.  
*Be present*, ðdessē, fu, fūt.  
*Be quiet*, quiescere, quiesv, quies.  
*Be silent*, tacere, u, it.  
*Be slave to*, servire, iv, it.  
*Be unwilling*, nolle, nōlu.  
*Be willing*, velle, vōlu.  
*Be wise*, sapiere, iv or i.  
*Bear*, a., ursus, l.  
*Bear*, v., ferrē, tūl, lat.  
*Beard*, barba, ðe.  
*Beautiful*, pulcher, chrā, chrūm.  
*Because*, quia.  
*Become*, fieri, fact.  
*Before* (adv.), antea.  
*Before* (prep.), antē, corā, prae, pro.  
*Beg for*, sue for, petere, iv (i), it.  
*Begin to bloom*, florescere (544).

*Beginning*, initium, l.  
*Behold*, spectare, ðv, ðt.  
*Believe*, credere, credid, credidit.  
*Below*, infra (with acc.).  
*Benefit*, beneficium, l.  
*Betwixt*, inter (with acc.).  
*Bind*, vincere, vinx, vinct.  
*Bird*, avis, is, f.  
*Bite*, mordere, mōmord, mora.  
*Blame*, a., culpa, ðe.  
*Blame*, v., vituperare, ðv, ðt.  
*Blind*, caecus, ð, ðm.  
*Blood*, sanguis, inis, m.  
*Bloom*, florere, u.  
*Body*, corpus, ðria.  
*Book*, liber, libri.  
*Booty*, praeda.  
*Bosom*, sinus, ða.  
*Both—and*, et—et; quā—tūm.  
*Boy*, puer, l.  
*Brave*, fortis, ð.  
*Bravely*, fortiter.  
*Break*, frangere, frēg, fract; *rumper*, rump, rupt; *violate*, ðv, ðt: *break one's word*, fidem violare.  
*Bribery*, ambitus, ða.  
*Bridge*, pons, tis, m.  
*Bring*, bring to, afferre, attul, allat.  
*Bring water*, aquari, ðt.  
*Brother*, frater, tria.  
*Brutus*, Brutus, l.  
*Build*, aedificare, ðv, ðt; *construct*, x, ct; *condem*, did, dīt.  
*Building*, aedificium, l.  
*Burn*, incendere, d, a.  
*Bury*, sepelire, iv (i), pult.  
*But*, sed, ðt, autē.  
*But*, now (in reasoning), atquē.  
*But*, but yet, attāmen, veruntāmen.  
*But that*, quā.  
*Buy*, emere, em, empt.  
*By* (with voluntary agent), ð, ðh, abs, in other cases indicated by abl.

## C.

*Caesar*, Caesar, ðria.  
*Caius*, Caius, l.  
*Calamity*, calamitas, ðtia.  
*Call*, vocare, ðv, ðt.  
*Call to mind*, recordari, ðt.  
*Calm*, tranquillus, ð, ðm.

*Camp*, castră, örüm.  
*Captive*, captivus, I.  
*Card*, carpere, ps, pt.  
*Carry*, ferrē, tül, lät.  
*Carry on (as war)*, gērere, gess, gest.  
*Carthage*, Carthāgō, inis.  
*Carthaginian*, Carthāginiensis, ē.  
*Catch*, dēprēhendere, d, a.  
*Cautious*, prudens, tis; providus, ā, ūm.  
*Cavalry*, equitātūs, ūs.  
*Cave*, antrum, I.  
*Celebrated*, cēlēbēr, bris, brē.  
*Censure*, vitūpērare, āv, āt.  
*Certain*, certus, ā, ūm.  
*Chain*, vinculūm, I; cātēnā, ae.  
*Change*, mūtāre, āv, āt.  
*Chariot*, currus, ūs.  
*Chastise*, castigāre, āv, āt.  
*Chief*, princeps, cipis.  
*Children*, libērī, örüm.  
*Choice*, optiō, ōnis.  
*Christian*, Christianus, I.  
*Cicero*, Cicērō, ōnis.  
*Citadel*, arx, arcis.  
*Citizen*, civis, is.  
*City*, urbs, urbis.  
*Civil*, civilis, ē (528).  
*Clemency*, clementiā, ae.  
*Cloak*, palliūm, I.  
*Cloud*, nubes, is.  
*Cold*, frigus, ōris.  
*Collect*, comparare, āv, āt.  
*Color*, cōlor, ōris.  
*Come*, venire, ven, vent.  
*Come together*, convenire, ven, vent.  
*Command*, v., imperare, āv, āt.  
*Commands*, a., imperatā, örüm.  
*Commander*, imperatōr, ōris (521).  
*Compel*, compellere, pül, puls.  
*Conceal*, occultare, āv, āt.  
*Concerning*, de (with abl.).  
*Condemn*, damnare, āv, āt.  
*Condition*, conditiō, ōnis.  
*Conference*, colloquiūm, I.  
*Confine*, continere, tinu, tent.  
*Confirm*, sancire, sanx, sanct.  
*Conquer*, superare, āv, āt; vincere, vic, vict; devincere, vic, vict.  
*Construct*, construere, x, ct.  
*Consul*, consül, ūlis.  
*Consult*, consulerē, lu, lt.

*Contend*, concertare, āv, āt.  
*Contented*, contentus, ā, ūm.  
*Contest*, certamen, inia.  
*Convert*, convertere, t, a.  
*Cook*, coquerē, cox, coct.  
*Correct*, corrigere, rex, rect.  
*Corrupt*, corrumpere, rūp, rupt.  
*Council*, conciliūm, I.  
*Country*, rūs, rūris.  
*Cover*, tegere, tex, tect.  
*Cowardly*, ignavus, ā, ūm.  
*Crime*, flagitiūm, I.  
*Criminal*, reus, I.  
*Criticise*, vitūpērare, āv, āt.  
*Crown*, a., cōronā, ae.  
*Crown, crown with a garland*, cōronā cingere, nx, nct.  
*Cry out*, exclamare, āv, āt.  
*Cultivate*, colere, cōlu, cult.  
*Cure*, sanare, āv, āt.

D.

*Dance*, saltare, āv, āt.  
*Dangerous*, periculōsus, ā, ūm.  
*Daring*, audax, acis.  
*Daughter*, filiā, ae.  
*Day*, dies, ei.  
*Death*, mors, tis.  
*Deceive*, decipere (iō), cēp, cept.  
*Deceptive*, fallax, acis.  
*Decide*, discernere, crēv, crēt.  
*Declare*, indicere, dix, dict; *declare war*, bellum indicere.  
*Decree*, discernere, crēv, crēt.  
*Defend*, defendere, d, a.  
*Defile*, angustiae, arum.  
*Defraud*, fraudare, āv, āt.  
*Delightful*, jucundus, ā, ūm.  
*Demand*, poscere, pōpsc; *postulate*, āv, āt.  
*Demonstrate*, demonstrare, āv, āt.  
*Depart*, abire, i, it.  
*Deprive*, privare, āv, āt.  
*Derive*, have, habere, u, it.  
*Desire*, a., cupiditas, atis.  
*Desire*, v., cupere (iō), iv or i, it.  
*Desirous of*, cupidus, ā, ūm.  
*Despoil*, spoliare, āv, āt.  
*Destroy*, delere, ēv, ēt.  
*Destruction*, perniciēs, ēl.  
*Deter*, deterrere, u, it.



*Dido*, Diā, ōnia.  
*Difficult*, difficilis, ē.  
*Diligence*, diligentia, ae.  
*Diligent*, diligens, tia.  
*Direct, order*, juberē, juss, jussa.  
*Discharge*, fungi, funct.  
*Discourse*, sermō, ōnia.  
*Discover*, conspicere (id), spex, spect.  
*Disgraceful*, turpis, ē.  
*Dismiss*, dimittere, mis, missa.  
*Disregard*, negligere, lex, lect.  
*Distance*, intervallum, I.  
*Divide*, dividere, vis, via.  
*Divine*, divinus, ā, ūm.  
*Divitiacus*, Divitiacus, I.  
*Do, facere* (id), fec, fact.  
*Do good to*, prodessē, profu, profut.  
*Do wrong*, peccare, av, at.  
*Dog*, canis, is.  
*Doubt*, dubitare, av, at.  
*Dove*, columba, ae.  
*Drink*, bibere, bib, bibit.  
*Drive*, agere, eg, act; compellere, pul, puls.  
*During*, inter (with acc.).  
*Duty*, officium, I.  
*Dwell*, habitare, av, at.

## E

*Eagle*, aquila, ae.  
*Earth*, terra, ae.  
*Easy*, facilis, ē.  
*Eat*, edere, ed, es.  
*Edifice*, aedificium, I.  
*Effect*, efficere (id), fec, fact.  
*Eight*, octo.  
*Either—or*, aut—aut.  
*Elegance*, elegantia, ae.  
*Elephant*, elephas, antis.  
*Enact*, sancire, x, ct.  
*End*, finis, is, m. and f.  
*Endued with*, praeditus, ā, ūm.  
*Endure*, sustinere, tinu, tent; ferrē, tūl, lat.  
*Enemy*, hostis, is, c.  
*Engage (as battle)*, committere, mis, miss; engage battle, proelium committere.  
*Enjoy*, frui, fruct (fruit).  
*Enlighten*, illustrare, av, at.  
*Enough*, satis.

*Entire*, totus, ā, ūm (112, R.).  
*Entreat*, rogare, av, at.  
*Enumerate*, enumerare, av, at.  
*Envy*, invidere, vid, vis.  
*Epistle*, epistola, ae; litterae, arum.  
*Equity*, aequitas, atia.  
*Err*, errare, av, at.  
*Estate*, fundus, I.  
*Eternal*, sempiternus, ā, ūm.  
*Even*, etiam.  
*Even to*, usque ad.  
*Ever*, unquam.  
*Every*, omnis, e.  
*Evil*, malum, I.  
*Excellent*, praestans, tia.  
*Excessive*, nimis, ā, ūm.  
*Excite*, excitare, av, at.  
*Exclaim*, exclamare, av, at.  
*Exercise*, exercere, u, it.  
*Expect*, expectare, av, at.  
*Expel*, expellere, pul, puls.  
*Expense*, sumptus, us.  
*Explain*, exponere, posu, posui.  
*Eye*, oculus, I.

## F

*Fabulous*, fabulosus, ā, ūm.  
*Face*, facies, ei.  
*Faith*, fides, ei.  
*Faithful*, fidelis, ē.  
*Faithfulness*, pietas, atia.  
*Fall*, cadere, cecid, cas; occidere, cid, cas.  
*False*, fallax, acis (535).  
*Falsehood*, mendacium, I.  
*Farm*, fundus, I.  
*Father*, pater, patris.  
*Fault*, culpa, ae.  
*Faustulus*, Faustulus, I.  
*Favor*, s, gratia, ae.  
*Favor*, v., favere, fav, faut.  
*Fear*, s, metus, us.  
*Fear*, v., timere, u; metuere, u, ut vereri, it.  
*Fear greatly*, pertimescere, mu.  
*Feast*, coena, ae.  
*Feel (as pain, &c.)*, sentire, s, s.  
*Feeling*, sensus, us.  
*Few*, pauci, ae, ā.  
*Fidelity*, fides, ei.  
*Field*, ager, agri.

*Fifth*, quintūs, ā, ūm.  
*Fight*, pugnārē, āv, āt.  
*Figure*, figurā, ae.  
*Fill*, complerē, ēv, ēt.  
*Find*, invēnirē, vān, vent; rēpērirē, rēpēr, rēpert.  
*Fine, beautiful*, pulchēr, chrā, chrūm.  
*Finish*, finirē, iv, it (540).  
*Fire*, ignia, ia, m.  
*Firm*, firmūs, ā, ūm.  
*Firmness*, stābilitās, atia.  
*First*, primūs, ā, ūm.  
*Fish*, piscis, ia, m.  
*Five*, quinquē.  
*Flatterer*, ādulātōr, ōria.  
*Flattery*, ādulatiō, ōnia.  
*Play*, dēglūbērē, ps, pt.  
*Flee*, fugērē (iō), fug, fugit.  
*Flee for refuge*, confūgērē (iō), fug.  
*Flee from*, evōlārē, āv, āt.  
*Flight*, fugā, ae.  
*Flock*, grex, grēgia, m.  
*Flourish*, florērē, u.  
*Flow*, fluērē, x, x.  
*Flower*, flos, ōria.  
*Fly*, volārē, āv, āt.  
*Fly away*, evōlārē, āv, āt.  
*Following*, postērā, ūm (masc. nom. not used).  
*Folly*, stultitiā, ae.  
*Food*, cibūs, l.  
*Foot*, pēs, pēdia.  
*For (conj.)*, enīm, scām, namquē.  
*For (prep.)*, prō (with abl.).  
*For ever*, perpētūō.  
*Forage*, pābū.ārī, āt.  
*Force*, mānūs, ūs vīs, vīs (pl. virēs).  
*Forces*, cōpiaē, ārūm.  
*Forget*, oblivisci, oblit.  
*Formerly*, olim.  
*Fortune*, fortunā, ae.  
*Found*, condērē, did, dīt (550).  
*Four*, quātuōr.  
*Fourth*, quartūs, ā, ūm.  
*Fox*, vulpēs, ia.  
*Free*, libēr, ā, ūm.  
*Frequent*, crēbēr, brā, brūm.  
*Friend*, amicus, l.  
*Friendship*, amicitia, ae.  
*Frighten*, terrērē, u, it.

*From*, ā, āh, aba, dē, ex, and sometimes before participial nouns, quōminūs.  
*Fulfil*, fungi, funct.  
*Furnish*, praeberē, u, it.  
*Further*, ampliūs.  
*Future*, futūrus, ā, ūm.

G.

*Gallic*, Galliciūs, ā, ūm.  
*Game*, ludūs, l.  
*Garden*, hortūs, l.  
*Garland*, cōrōnā, ae.  
*Garment*, vestia, ia.  
*Gate*, portā, ae.  
*Gather*, carpērē, ps, pt.  
*Gaul, a Gaul*, Gallūs, l.  
*Germany*, Germāniā, ae.  
*Get possession of*, pōtūri, it.  
*Gift*, donūm, l.  
*Girl*, puellā, ae.  
*Give*, dārē, dēd, dāt; dōnārē, āv, āt.  
*Glitter*, micārē, u.  
*Glory*, glōriā, ae.  
*Go*, irē, iv or i, it.  
*Go away*, ābirē, i, it.  
*Go over*, transirē, i, it; supērārē, āv, āt.  
*Gold*, aurūm, l.  
*Golden*, aureūs, ā, ūm.  
*Good*, bonūs, ā, ūm.  
*Govern*, rēgērē, rex, rect.  
*Government*, regnūm, l.  
*Grain*, grānūm, l.  
*Grape*, uvā, ae.  
*Gratitude*, grātiā, ae.  
*Great*, magnūs, ā, ūm; at a great price, magni; it is a great thing, magnūm est.  
*Greater*, majōr, ūs.  
*Greatest, highest*, summūs, ā, ūm.  
*Greatest, very great*, maximūs, ā, ūm; at a very great price, maximī.  
*Greatness*, magnitūdō, inia.  
*Greeks*, Graeci, ōrūm.  
*Grief*, dōlōr, ōris; luctūs, ūs.  
*Grieve*, dōlērē, u, it; lūgērē, lux.  
*Grove*, lūcūs, l.  
*Guard*, custōdirē, iv, it (540).  
*Guide*, dux, dūcia.

## H

*Hand*, mānūs, ūa.  
*Hang*, pendere, pēpend.  
*Hannibal*, Hannibāl, ālia.  
*Happily*, beatē.  
*Happiness*, felicitās, ātia.  
*Happy*, beatūs, ā, ūm.  
*Harmless*, innoxius, ā, ūm.  
*Hatred*, odiūm, ī.  
*Have*, habere, u, it.  
*Hawk*, accipiter, trīs.  
*He himself*, ipse, ā, ūm.  
*He, she, it*, illē, ā, ūd.  
*He, she, or it is*, est.  
*Head*, caput, itia.  
*Hear*, audire, iv, it.  
*Heart*, cor, cordis, n.  
*Heat*, ignis, īa, m.  
*Heaven, the heavens*, coelūm, ī.  
*Heavy*, grāvis, ē.  
*Help*, a, adjumentūm, ī.  
*Help*, v., adiuvare, jūv, jūt.  
*Herd*, grex, grēgis, m.  
*Hero*, vir, viri; hērōs, ōia.  
*Hide*, occultare, āv, āt.  
*High*, altius, ā, ūm.  
*Highest*, summus, ā, ūm.  
*Hinder*, impedire, iv (i), it.  
*His, her, its, &c.*, suus, ā, ūm.  
*History*, histōriā, ae.  
*Hold*, tenere, u, tent.  
*Home*, dōmūs, ūs or ī, f.  
*Honest*, probūs, ā, ūm.  
*Honey*, mēl, mellis.  
*Honor*, hōnōr, ōria.  
*Hope*, a, spēa, ēl.  
*Hope, hope for*, sperare, āv, āt.  
*Horse*, equus, ī.  
*Horseman*, equēs, itia.  
*Hostage*, obsēs, idia.  
*House*, tectūm, ī; dōmūs, ūs or ī, f.  
*How, quā*; *how many*, quā m multi.  
*How great*, quantūs, ā, ūm; *how much*, quantūm (with gen.).  
*However, however much*, quāmvīs.  
*Human*, hūmānūs, ā, ūm.  
*Hunger*, fāmēs, īa.  
*Hunt*, venāri, āt.  
*Hurt*, nocere, u, it.  
*Husband*, conjux, ūgis.  
*Husbandman*, agrīcōlā, ae.

## I

*I*, egō, mei.  
*If*, si, dummōdō.  
*Ignorance*, ignōrātiā, ōia.  
*Ignorant*, ignārius, ā, ūm.  
*Illuminate*, illustrare, āv, āt.  
*Immediately*, statim.  
*Immense*, immensūs, ā, ūm.  
*Immortal*, immortalis, ē.  
*Immovable*, immobīlis, ē.  
*Impede*, impedire, iv (i), it.  
*Impious*, impiūs, ā, ūm.  
*Imprudent*, imprūdēns, tia.  
*In*, in (with abl.).  
*In all*, omninō.  
*In comparison with*, prae.  
*In order that*, quō.  
*In person, in presence of*, corā m.  
*In the mean time*, intērīm.  
*In such a manner*, adeō.  
*Inclined to*, prōpensūs, ā, ūm.  
*Increase*, augere, aux, auct; crescere, crev, crēt.  
*Incredible*, incredibīlis, ē. (535).  
*Indeed*, enī m, verō.  
*Indolent*, ignāvūs, ā, ūm.  
*Indulge*, indulgere, īa, it.  
*Industry*, industriā, ae.  
*Inflict*, infligere, x, ct.  
*Inhabit*, habitare, āv, āt.  
*Inhabitant*, incolā, ae, (530).  
*Injury*, injuriā, ae.  
*Innocent*, innōcēns, tia.  
*Instruct*, erudire, iv, it.  
*Instruction*, consiliūm, ī: praeceptūm, ī.  
*Into*, in (with acc.).  
*Invade*, invadere, vās, vās, (550).  
*Invite*, call, vocare, āv, āt.  
*Iron*, ferrūm, ī.  
*Irritate*, irritare, āv, āt.  
*It behooves*, oportet.  
*It is better*, praestat.  
*It is well known, is an admitted fact*, constat.  
*It is lawful*, licet.  
*It pities, one pities*, miseret.  
*It repents, one repents*, poenitet.  
*Italy*, Italiā, ae.

J.

*Journey*, itēr, itinēria, n.  
*Judge*, a, iudex, icia.  
*Judge*, v., iudicāre, āv, āt.  
*Just*, iustūs, ā, ūm.  
*Just as*, sicut.  
*Justice*, sequitās, ātia.

K.

*Keep*, servāre, āv, āt.  
*Kid*, hādūs, i.  
*Kill*, occidēre, cid, cis; interficēre (iō), fēc, fect.  
*Kind*, sort, a, gēnūs, ěria.  
*Kind*, a, bēnignūs, ā, ūm.  
*King*, rex, rēgia.  
*Kingdom*, rēgūm, i.  
*Know*, scīre, scīv, scīt.  
*Knowledge*, scientiā, ae.  
*Known*, cōgnitūs, ā, ūm.

L.

*Labor*, a, lābōr, ōria.  
*Labor*, v., lābōrāre, āv, āt.  
*Lamb*, āgnūs, i.  
*Large*, magnūs, ā, ūm; ampliūs, ā, ūm.  
*Larger*, maior, ūs.  
*Last*, dūrāre, āv, āt.  
*Lasting*, sempiternūs, ā, ūm.  
*Latinus*, Lātinūs, i.  
*Laugh*, laugh at, ridēre, ris, ris.  
*Lavinia*, Lāvinia, ae.  
*Law*, lex, lēgia.  
*Lead*, dūcēre, dux, duct; āgēre, ēg, act.  
*Lead back*, rēdūcēre, dux, duct.  
*Lead forth*, ēdūcēre, dux, duct.  
*Lead forward or out*, prōdūcēre, dux, duct.  
*Lead to*, addūcēre, dux, duct.  
*Leader*, dux, dūcia.  
*Learn*, discēre, didic.  
*Legion*, lēgiō, ōnia.  
*Letter*, literā, ārum; ēpistolā, ae.  
*Levy*, compārāre, āv, āt.  
*Lie*, a falsehood, mendāciūm, i.  
*Life*, vitā, ae.  
*Light*, lux, lūcia.

*Line of battle*, ācia, āl.  
*Lion*, leō, ōnia.  
*Listen to*, audire, iv, it.  
*Little*, parvūs, ā, ūm; a, little, parvūm; pauciūs, ā, ūm.  
*Little garden*, hortulūs, i. (515).  
*Live*, vivēre, vix, vict.  
*Lofly*, altūs, ā, ūm.  
*Look at*, spectāre, āv, āt.  
*Lose*, āmittēre, mīa, missa.  
*Love*, āmāre, āv, āt.

M.

*Maiden*, virgō, ĩnia.  
*Make*, faciēre (iō), fēc, fact: make a reply, responsū dāre.  
*Man*, hōmō, ĩnis; vir, i.  
*Manliness*, virtūs, ūtia.  
*Many*, multūs, ā, ūm; many things, multā.  
*March*, prōficisci, fect.  
*Marine*, of the sea, mārīnūs, ā, ūm.  
*Master as teacher*, māgīstēr, trī.  
*Master as owner*, dōminūs, i.  
*Matron*, mātṛonā, ae.  
*Meadow*, prātūm, i.  
*Meanwhile*, intērīm.  
*Meeting*, conciliūm, i.  
*Melt*, liquescēre, licu.  
*Merciful*, clēmēns, tia; lēnis, ē.  
*Messenger*, nuntiūs, i.  
*Middle*, midst of, mēdiūm, ā, ūm, (267.)  
*Mild*, lēnis, ē; clēmēns, tia.  
*Mildness*, clēmēntiā, ae.  
*Military service*, militiā, ae.  
*Mind*, animūs, i; mind, the reasoning faculty, mens, tia.  
*Miserable*, misēr, ā, ūm.  
*Misfortune*, cālāmitās, ātis; mālūm, i.  
*Mislead*, corrumpēre, rūp, rupt.  
*Modesty*, pūdōr, ōria.  
*Money*, pēcūniā, ae.  
*Month*, mensis, is, m.  
*Moon*, lūnā, ae.  
*More*, ampliūs, (adv.).  
*Mortal*, mortālis, ē.  
*Mother*, mātēr, trīs.  
*Mountain*, mons, tis, m.  
*Mourn*, wear mourning for, lūgēre, x, ct.

*Movable, mōbīlis, ā.*

*Move, mōvērē, mōv, mōt.*

*Move forward, prōmōvērē, mōv, mōt.*

*Much, multū, ā, ūm; much good, multūm bonū; much time, multūm tempōris.*

*Multitude, multītūdī, īnia.*

*My, meū, ā, ūm.*

## N.

*Name, nōmēn, īnia.*

*Narrate, narrārē, āv, āt.*

*Narration, narratīve, narratīū, ōnī,*  
(521.)

*Narrow pass, angustīa, ārim.*

*Nation, natiō, ōnia.*

*Native country, patriā, ae.*

*Natural to man, hūmānū, ā, ūm.*

*Nature, genū, ēria.*

*Nearer, prōpiōr, ūa.*

*Neither, nec; neither—nor, nec—nec.*

*Nest, nidū, l.*

*Never, nunquā.*

*Next, nearest, proximū, ā, ūm;  
next following, postērā, ūm (masc.  
nem. not used).*

*Night, nox, noctīa.*

*Nightingale, luscīniā, ae.*

*No, no one (adj.), nullū, ā, ūm*  
(113, R.).

*No one, nobody, (sub.), nēmō, (īnis).*

*Not, nōn; with imperat. or subj., nē;  
not only—but also, nōn solum—  
sed etiā.*

*Not even, nequidēm.*

*Not to know, nescīrē, iv, it.*

*Not yet, nondū.*

*Nothing, nihil (indec.).*

*November, Nōvembēr, brīs (abl. l.).*

*Numa, Nūmā, ae.*

*Number, s., nūmērūs, l.*

*Number, v., nūmērārē, āv. āt.*

## O.

*O, O.*

*O if, o si.*

*Obey, pārērē, u, it.*

*Observe, servārē, āv, āt.*

*Obtain, obtīnērē, u, tent.*

*Occasion, occasiō, ōnia.*

*Of himself, sui.*

*Of yesterday, hesternū, ā, ūm.*

*Offend-against, violārē, āv, āt.*

*Offer, prābērē, u, it.*

*Often, saepē.*

*Old age, sēnectūs, ūtia.*

*Old man, sēnex, sēnia.*

*On service, militīa.*

*On this side, cīa.*

*One, single one, ūnū, ā, ūm (113, R.).*

*One is grieved at, pigēt; I am grieved  
at, mē pigēt.*

*One ought, oportēt.*

*Only, mōdō.*

*Open, āpērīrē, u, t.*

*Openly, cōrām.*

*Opportunity, occasiō, ōnia.*

*Oppose, obstārē, stāt, stāt.*

*Or, aut, vėl; either—or, vėl—vėl.*

*Or, in double questions, an.*

*Oration, oratīō, ōnia.*

*Orator, oratōr, ōria.*

*Order, jūbērē, juss, juss.*

*Other, aliū, ā, ūd (113, R.).*

*Our, hostēr, trā, trūm.*

*Overhang, impendērē.*

*Overthrow, ēvertērē, rt, ra.*

## P.

*Pain, dōlōr, ōria.*

*Pardon, ignoscērē, nōv, nōt.*

*Parent, pārens, entīa.*

*Part, pars, tia.*

*Pass over in silence, tacerē, u, it.*

*Passion, cūpīditās, ātia.*

*Past, praetērītūs, ā, ūm; the past,  
praetērītā.*

*Pausanias, Pausāniās, ae.*

*Peace, pax, cīa.*

*Peacock, pāvō, ōnia.*

*People, pōpūlūs, l.*

*Perceive, sentīrē, s. a.; perspicārē  
(iō), spex, spect.*

*Perception, sensūs, ūa.*

*Perfidy, perfidiā, ae.*

*Personal, privātūs, ā, ūm.*

*Persuade, persuādērē, s. a.*

*Philosopher, philōsōphūs, l.*

*Physician, medicūs, l.*

*Piety, piētās, ātia.*

*Pious*, piūs, ā, ūm.  
*Pity*, misērēri, īt.  
*Place*, s., locūs, l. (*pl.* l. or ā.)  
*Place*, v., pōnērē, pūs, pōsit.  
*Plainly*, planē.  
*Plausible*, spēciosūs, ā, ūm.  
*Play*, s., ludūs, l.  
*Play*, v., ludērē, s. s.  
*Pleasant*, iucundūs, ā, ūm.  
*Please*, placērē, u, īt.  
*Pleasure*, vōluptās, ātia.  
*Plough*, ārārē, āv, āt.  
*Pluck*, carpērē, ps, pt.  
*Plunge into*, immergērē, rs, ra.  
*Poem*, poemā, ātia.  
*Poet*, poētā, ae.  
*Poor man*, paupēr, ēria.  
*Popular*, pōpularis, ē (528).  
*Possess*, possidērē, ed, eas.  
*Practise*, cōlērē, u, cult; exercērē, u, īt.  
*Praise*, s., laus, dia.  
*Praise*, v., laudārē, āv, āt.  
*Precept*, praecēptum, l.  
*Prefer*, mallē, mālū.  
*Prepare*, pārārē, āv, āt; praepārārē.  
*Present* (*adj.*), praesens, tia.  
*Present, to make a present*, dōnārē, āv, āt.  
*Preserve*, conservārē, āv, āt.  
*Pretext*, simulātiō, ōnia.  
*Prevent*, dētterrērē, u, īt; obstārē, stīt, stāt.  
*Priest*, priestess, sācerdōs, ōtia.  
*Private*, privātūs, ā, ūm.  
*Prize*, aestimārē, āv, āt; *prize highly*, māgnī aestimārē.  
*Procure*, compārārē, āv, āt.  
*Profit*, prōdessē, prōfu, prōfūt.  
*Promise*, prōmittērē, mīa, mīa.  
*Provided*, dummōdō.  
*Province*, prōvincia, ae.  
*Prudence*, prūdentiā, ae.  
*Prudent*, prūdēns, tis; prōvidūs, ā, ūm.  
*Pull down*, ēvertērē, t, s.  
*Punish*, pūnērē, iv, īt.  
*Pupil*, discipulūs, l.  
*Purchase*, ēmērē, ēm, empt.  
*Put confidence in*, crēdērē, crēdīt, crēdit.  
*Put to flight*, fūgārē, āv, āt, (540).

## Q

*Quarrel*, concertārē, āv, āt.  
*Queen*, rēginā, ae.  
*Question*, quaestiō, ōnia.  
*Quickly*, cēlērītēr.

## R

*Rage*, saevirē, iv, īt.  
*Raise*, compārārē, āv, āt.  
*Reach*, attingērē, tīg, tact; pervēnirē, vēm, vent.  
*Read*, lēgērē, lēg, lect.  
*Real*, vērūs, ā, ūm. •  
*Reason*, rātiō, ōnia.  
*Receive*, accipērē (iō), cēp, cept; rēcipērē (iō); cāpērē (iō), cēp, capt.  
*Reform*, sārārē, āv, āt.  
*Refuge*, perfūgiūm, l.  
*Regard*, pūtārē, āv, āt.  
*Reign*, rēgnārē, āv, āt.  
*Reject*, respuērē, pu.  
*Relate*, narrārē, āv, āt; rēferrē, tūl, lat.  
*Relying on*, frētūs, ā, ūm.  
*Remain*, mārērē, mans, mans.  
*Remaining*, rēliquūs, ā, ūm.  
*Remember*, rēcordārī, āt.  
*Render thanks*, grātiās āgērē.  
*Repent, one repents*, poenitēt (435).  
*Report*, s., rūmōr, ōria.  
*Report*, nuntiārē, āv, āt.  
*Repress*, compescērē, cu.  
*Resist*, rēsistērē, stīt, stīt.  
*Response*, responsūm, l.  
*Rest, the rest*, rēliquūs, ā, ūm.  
*Rest*, quiescērē, quēv, quīet.  
*Restrain*, continērē, u, tent; compescērē, cu.  
*Return*, rēdirē, i, īt; rēvertērē, t, s (551.)  
*Rhine*, Rhēnūs, l.  
*Rich*, lōcuplēs, ētia.  
*Ring*, anulūs, l.  
*Ripen*, cōquērē, cox, coct.  
*River*, flūmēn, inia.  
*Road*, viā, ae.  
*Rob of*, spōliārē, āv, āt.  
*Robust*, rōbustūs, ā, ūm.  
*Roman*, Rōmānūs, ā, ūm.  
*Rome* Rōmā, ae.

*Romulus*, Rōmūlūs, I.  
*Roof*, tectūm, I.  
*Round*, rōtundūs, ā, ūm.  
*Rule*, rēgērē, rex, rect.  
*Rumor*, rūmōr, ōrīs.  
*Run*, currērē, cūcurr, cura.  
*Rush*, ruērē, ru, rūt.

## S.

*Safe*, incōlūmīs, ā.  
*Safety*, sālūs, ūtīs.  
*Same*, idēm, eādēm, idēm.  
*Satisfy*, sātīārē, āv, āt.  
*Save*, servārē, sē, āt.  
*Say*, dicērē, dix, dict.  
*Scatter*, spargērē, spars, sparsa.  
*Sceptre*, sceptrūm, I.  
*Scipio*, Scipīō, ōnīs.  
*Sea*, mārē, īa.  
*Second*, sēcundūs, ā, ūm.  
*See*, vidērē, vid, vis; conspīcērē (iō), spex, spect.  
*Seed*, sēmēn, īnīs.  
*Seek*, pētērē, iv or i, it.  
*Seem*, vidērī, vīs.  
*Seize*, arrīpērē (iō), īpu, ept; dēprēhendērē, hend, hēns.  
*Self*, ipse, ā, ūm.  
*Sell*, vendērē, dīd, dīt.  
*Senate*, sēnātūs, ūs, (517.)  
*Senator*, sēnātōr, ōrīs.  
*Send*, mittērē, mīs, missa.  
*Send before*, praemittērē, mīs, missa.  
*Sentiment*, sententiā, ae.  
*Separate*, disjūgērē, x, ct.  
*Serve*, servīrē, iv (i), it.  
*Servius*, Serviūs, I.  
*Set forth*, expōnērē, pōsu, pōsīt.  
*Set on fire*, incendērē, d, a.  
*Set out*, prōfīcīscī, fect.  
*Severe*, ācēr, ācrīs, ācrē.  
*Sew*, stīch, suērē, su, sūt.  
*Shame*, pūdōr, ōrīs.  
*Sharp*, ācēr, ācrīs, ācrē.  
*Shave*, tondērē, tōtond, tons.  
*Shear*, tondērē, tōtond, tons.  
*Sheep*, ōvīs, īa.  
*Shepherd*, pastōr, ōrīs. (520.)  
*Shield*, clīpetīs, I.  
*Shine*, mīcārē, u; lūcārē, x.  
*Shining*, splēdēns, tīs.

*Short*, brēvīs, ā.  
*Shoulder*, hūmērūs, I.  
*Show*, monstrārē, āv, āt; dēmonstrārē, āv, āt.  
*Shrub*, frūtēx, īcīs, m.  
*Shun*, vitārē, āv, āt.  
*Shut*, claudērē, s, a.  
*Silver*, argentūm, I.  
*Simple*, simplex, īcīs.  
*Sin*, peccārē, āv, āt.  
*Since*, cūm, quūm.  
*Sing*, cānērē, cēcīn, cant; cantārē, āv, āt.  
*Single*, single one, ūnūs, ā, ūm (113, R.).  
*Siren*, sīrēn, ēnīs.  
*Sister*, sōrōr, ōrīs.  
*Six*, sex.  
*Size*, māgnītūdō, īnīs.  
*Skilful*, skilled in, pērtītūs, ā, ūm.  
*Skin*, dēglūbērē, ps, pt.  
*Slave*, servūs, I.  
*Sleep*, s, somnūs, I.  
*Sleep*, dormīrē, iv, it.  
*Slow*, tardūs, ā, ūm.  
*Small*, parvūs, ā, ūm.  
*Smaller*, mīnōr, ūs.  
*Snake*, anguīa, īa, m.  
*Snatch*, arrīpērē (iō), īpu, ept.  
*Snow*, nix, nīvīs.  
*So*, sic, ādēō, tāām; so—as, tāām—quām, sīcūt.  
*So great*, tantūs, ā, ūm.  
*Socrates*, Sōcrātēs, īa.  
*Soldier*, milēs, ītīs.  
*Some*, ālīquīs, quā, quīd (quōd); some time, ālīquīd tempōrīs.  
*Some time*, some time or other, ālīquandō.  
*Sometimes*, intērīm.  
*Son*, filiūs, I.  
*Son-in-law*, gēnēr, I.  
*Sorrow*, dōlōr, ōrīs; luctūs, ūs.  
*Soul*, āīmūs, I.  
*Sound*, sōnūs, I.  
*Sow*, spargērē, rs, rs.  
*Space*, intervallūm, I.  
*Spare*, parcērē, pēperc (pars), parci (pars).  
*Speak*, lōquī, lōcūtūs.  
*Spear*, hastā, ae.  
*Specious*, spēcīōsūs, ā, ūm (530)

*Spin*, nārē, nēv, nēt.  
*Sport*, ludūs, l.  
*Spouse*, conjux, gls.  
*Spring*, vēr, vēris, n.  
*Sprinkle*, aspergērē, ra, ra.  
*Stability*, stābilitās, ātia  
*Stain*, mǎculārē, āv, āt.  
*Star*, stellā, ae.  
*State*, civitās, ātia.  
*Storm*, expūgnārē, āv, āt.  
*Stream*, flūmēq, inia.  
*Strength*, vīa, vis (*pl.*, vīrēs).  
*Strive for*, stūdērē, u.  
*Strong*, rōbustūs, ā, ūm.  
*Studious*, stūdiōsūs, ā, ūm.  
*Study*, stūdērē, u.  
*Successive*, continuūs, ā, ūm.  
*Succor*, succurrērē, rr, ra.  
*Sue for*, pētērē, iv (i), it.  
*Sulla*, Sullā, ae.  
*Summer*, aestās, ātia.  
*Sun*, sōl, sōlis, m.  
*Supper*, coenā, ae.  
*Supplicate*, exōrārē, āv, āt.  
*Surface*, superficiēs, ēl.  
*Surpass*, supērārē, āv, āt.  
*Surrender*, dēdērē, did, dīt.  
*Surround*, circumdārē, dēd, dāt; cin-  
 gērē, x, ct.  
*Sustain*, sustinērē, u, tent.  
*Swear*, jūrārē, āv, āt.  
*Swift*, vēlox, ōcia.  
*Swim*, nārē, āv, āt.  
*Sword*, glādiūs, l.

T.

*Take*, cǎpērē (i), cep, capt.  
*Take care*, cǎvērē, cǎv, caut.  
*Take care of*, cūrārē, āv, āt.  
*Take by storm*, expūgnārē, āv, āt  
 (550).  
*Talent*, ingēniūm, l.  
*Tarentum*, Tārentūm, l.  
*Tarquin*, Tarquiniūs, l.  
*Teach*, docērē, u, doct.  
*Tear in pieces*, dilāniārē, āv, āt.  
*Ten*, decēm.  
*Tenth*, decimūs, ā, ūm.  
*Terms*, corditiū, ōnia.  
*Terrify*, terrērē, u, it.  
*Than*, quām.  
*Thanks*, grātia, arūm.

*Thanksgiving*, supplicatiū, ōnia.  
*That* (*pron.*), illē, ā, ūd; ia, eā, id;  
 istē, ā, ūd.  
*That* (*conj.*), ūt, with *comp.* (469).  
 quō.  
*That not*, quōminūs, quā.  
*The entire*, tōtūs, ā, ūm (112, R.).  
*Theft*, furtūm, l.  
*There*, ibi.  
*Therefore*, ergō, itaque, ideo, igitur.  
*Thing*, rēa, rei.  
*Think*, pūārē, āv, āt; *think about*,  
 cōgitārē, āv, āt; *think little of*  
 parvi aestimārē, āv, āt.  
*Third*, tertius, ā, ūm.  
*Thirst*, sitirē, iv, it.  
*This*, hic, haec, hoc.  
*Thou*, you, tū, tui.  
*Thousand*, millē.  
*Threaten*, impendērē.  
*Three*, trēs, triā.  
*Through*, pēr.  
*Tibur*, Tibūr, ūris.  
*Till*, cōlērē, u, cult.  
*Time*, tempūs, ōria.  
*Timid*, timidūs, ā, ūm.  
*To*, ad, in (*with acc.*).  
*To death*, cāpitia.  
*Too much*, nimius, ā, ūm.  
*Top, the top*, summūs, ā, ūm; *agree-*  
*ing with the noun, as, summūs*  
*mons, the top of the mountain.*  
*Torture*, excruciarē, āv, āt.  
*Touch*, tangērē, tētig, tact.  
*Towards*, ergā (*with acc.*).  
*Tower*, arx, cis; turris, is (*acc.*, ūm  
 or im, abl. ē or i).  
*Traitor*, prōdītōr, ōria.  
*Tranquil*, tranquillūs, ā, ūm.  
*Treachery, treason*, prōditiū, ōnia.  
*Treaty*, foedūs, ōria.  
*Tree*, arbōr, ōria, f.  
*Trojan*, Trojānūs, ā, ūm.  
*True*, vērūs, ā, ūm.  
*Truly*, vērē.  
*Truth*, vērūm, l.  
*Try*, tentārē, āv, āt.  
*Tullia*, Tullia, ae.  
*Turn, convert*, convertērē, t, a.  
*Turn back*, rēvertērē, t, a.  
*Twelve*, duōdecim.  
*Twenty*, viginti.



*Two, duō, duae, duō.*  
*Two hundred, ducenti, ae, ā.*  
*Two years, space of two years, biennium.*

## U.

*Uncertain, incertū, ā, ūm (550).*  
*Uncover, āpērire, ru, rī.*  
*Understand, intelligere, lex, lect.*  
*Uninjured, incolumis, ā.*  
*Unknown, incognitū, ā, ūm.*  
*Unlearned, indoctus, ā, ūm.*  
*Unnecessary, supervacūus, ā, ūm.*  
*Unwilling, invitū, ā, ūm.*  
*Unworthy, indignus, ā, ūm.*  
*Use, v., ūti, ūa.*  
*Useful, ūtilis, ā.*  
*Useless, inūtilis, ā.*  
*Utility, ūtilitas, ātis.*

## V.

*Valuable, pretiosus, ā, ūm.*  
*Value, aestimare, āv, āt.*  
*Very (before a noun or pronoun, sometimes), ipse, ā, ūm.*  
*Very fond, studiosus, a, um.*  
*Very much or great, plurimū, ā, ūm; very many, plurimi.*  
*Victim, victimā, ae.*  
*Victoria, victoriā, ae (prop. name).*  
*Victory, victoriā, ae.*  
*Violate, violare, āv, āt; rumpere, rūp, rupt.*  
*Virgin, virgō, inia.*  
*Virtue, virtus, ūtis.*  
*Voice, vox, vocis.*

## W.

*Wage (as war), gerere, gess, gest; inferre, tūl, lāt.*  
*Walk, ambulare, āv, āt.*  
*Wall, murus, i.*  
*War, bellum, i.*  
*Warn, admonere, u, ūt.*  
*Wash, lavare, lav, laut, and lavāt.*  
*Wasp, crābrō, ōnis.*  
*Waste, perdere, dīd, dīt.*  
*Watch, vigilare, āv, āt.*  
*Water, aqua, ae.*  
*Wax (as moon), crescere, crēv, crēt.*  
*Way, via, ae; iter, itineris, n.*

*Wealthy, locuples, stis.*  
*Weep, flere, ēv, ēt.*  
*Weep for, lugere, lux.*  
*Well, bene.*  
*When, quum.*  
*Whence, unde.*  
*Wherefore, quare.*  
*Whether, utrum; whether—or, in double questions, utrum—ān, in other cases, seu—seu; sive—sive.*  
*While, dum; while walking, interambulandum.*  
*White, candidus, ā, ūm.*  
*Who, which, that (rel.), qui, quae, quod.*  
*Who, which, what? (interrog.), quis, quae, quid! (sub.); qui, quae, quod! (adj.).*  
*Whole, totus, ā, ūm (113, R.).*  
*Wicked, improbus, ā, ūm.*  
*Wife, conjux, gis.*  
*Winter, hiems, is.*  
*Wisdom, sapientia, ae.*  
*Wise, sapiens, tis.*  
*Wish, velle, vōlu.*  
*With, cum.*  
*Within, intra (with acc.).*  
*Without, sine (with abl.).*  
*Witness, spectare, āv, āt (548).*  
*Wolf, lupus, i.*  
*Woman, mulier, is.*  
*Wonderful, mirabilis, ā.*  
*Wool, lana, ae.*  
*Word, verbum, i.*  
*Work, opus, eris.*  
*World, mundus, i; orbis terrarum.*  
*Worthy, dignus, ā, ūm.*  
*Would that, utinam, o si.*  
*Wound, s., vulnus, eris.*  
*Wound, v., vulnerare, āv, āt.*  
*Wretched, miser, ā, ūm.*  
*Write, scribere, ps, pt.*  
*Wrong, v., violare, āv, āt.*

## Y.

*Year, annus, i.*  
*Yesterday, hesternus, di.*  
*Yet, tamen.*  
*You, tu, tui.*  
*Your, thy, tuus, ā, ūm; your, vester, trā, trum.*

## Latin Classical Books.

### Second Latin Book;

COMPRISING AN HISTORICAL LATIN READER, WITH NOTES AND RULES FOR TRANSLATING, AND AN EXERCISE BOOK, DEVELOPING A COMPLETE ANALYTICAL SYNTAX, IN A SERIES OF LESSONS AND EXERCISES, INVOLVING THE CONSTRUCTION ANALYSIS, AND RECONSTRUCTION OF LATIN SENTENCES.

BY ALBERT HARKNESS, A. M.

SENIOR MASTER IN THE PROVIDENCE HIGH SCHOOL.

12mo. 362 pages. Price \$1 00.

This work is designed as a sequel to the author's "First Latin Book." It comprises a complete analytical syntax, exhibiting the essential structure of the Latin language, from its simplest to its most expanded and elaborate form.

The arrangement of the lessons is decidedly philosophical, gradually progressive, and in strict accordance with the law of development of the human mind. Every new principle is stated in simple, clear, and accurate language, and illustrated by examples carefully selected from the reading lessons, which the student is required to translate, analyze, and reconstruct. He is also exercised in forming new Latin sentences on given models. This, while it gives variety and interest to what would otherwise be in the highest degree monotonous, completely fixes in the mind the subject of the lesson, both by analysis and synthesis.

The careful study of this volume, on the plan recommended by the author, will greatly facilitate the pupil's progress in the higher departments of the language. Such is the testimony of the numerous institutions in which Harkness's improved edition of Arnold has been introduced.

*From J. A. SPENCER, D. D., late Professor of Latin in Burlington College, N. J.*

"The present volume appears to me to carry out excellently the system on which the late lamented Arnold based his educational works; and in the Selections for Reading, the Notes and Rules for Translating, the Exercises in Translating into Latin, the Analyses, &c., I think it admirably adapted to advance the diligent student not only rapidly, but soundly, in an acquaintance with the Latin language."

*From PROF. GAMMELL, of Brown University.*

"The book seems to me, as I anticipated it would be, a valuable addition to the works now in use among teachers of Latin in the schools of the United States, and for many of them it will undoubtedly form an advantageous substitute."

*From PROF. LINCOLN, of Brown University.*

"It seems, to me, to carry on most successfully the method pursued in the First Book. Though brief, it is very comprehensive, and combines judicious and skillfully framed exercises with systematic instruction."

*From J. J. OWEN, D. D. Professor of the Latin and Greek Languages and Literature in the Free Academy, New York.*

"This Second Latin Book gives abundant evidence of the author's learning and yet to arrange, simplify, and make accessible to the youthful mind the great and fundamental principles of the Latin language. The book is worthy of a place in every classical school, and I trust will have an extensive sale."

*From PROF. ANDERSON, of Lewisburg University, Pennsylvania.*

"A faithful use of the work would diminish the drudgery of the student's earlier studies, and facilitate his progress in his subsequent course. I wish the work a wide circulation."

# HARKNESS' SECOND LATIN BOOK:

COMPRISING A

**HISTORICAL LATIN READER. WITH NOTES AND RULES FOR TRANSLATING—AND AN EXERCISE BOOK, DEVELOPING A COMPLETE ANALYTICAL SYNTAX, IN A SERIES OF LESSONS AND EXERCISES, INVOLVING THE CONSTRUCTION, ANALYSIS, AND RECONSTRUCTION OF LATIN SENTENCES. BY ALBERT HARKNESS, A. M., PRINCIPAL OF THE CLASSICAL DEPARTMENT IN THE NEW ENGLAND NORMAL INSTITUTE. 362 PAGES. PRICE \$1 00.**

---

Just Published by

D. APPLETON AND COMPANY, NEW-YORK.

---

THIS work is designed as a sequel to the author's "FIRST LATIN BOOK," recently published, and has already acquired a wide reputation. It comprises a complete analytical syntax, exhibiting the sentential structure of the Latin language, from its simplest to its most expanded and modified form.

The arrangement of the lessons is decidedly philosophical, gradually progressive, and we believe in strict accordance with the law of development of the human mind. Every new principle is stated in simple, clear and accurate language, and illustrated by examples carefully selected from the reading lessons which the student is required to translate, analyze and reconstruct—he is also exercised in forming new Latin sentences on given models. This, while it gives variety and interest to what would otherwise be in the highest degree monotonous, completely fixes in the mind the subject of the lesson both by analysis and synthesis.

---

## Opinions of Distinguished and Practical Instructors.

*From W. S. TYLER, Professor of Languages in Amherst College.*

Among the chief merits of Harkness' Second Book are the following:

1. It happily unites the analytic and the synthetic methods, and requires the pupil to turn Latin into English, and also English into Latin, in every lesson. Neither of these methods is complete without the other.

2. It points out, with clearness and correctness, the differences between the two languages as to idiom, construction, &c., and teaches the scholar at once to use *idiomatic English*, and to write *pure Latin*.

3. The Rules for Translating are concise, perspicuous and judicious—well selected and well expressed. The editor teaches by example, also, a neat and free, but not coarse or inexact style of translation.

4. The analysis of the structure of sentences is eminently philosophical and at the same time sufficiently simple and intelligible for beginners. This is one of the most striking excellencies of the book.

5. The notes furnish the right kind of guidance and assistance, showing the student what to do and how to do it, but not doing it for him.

I am so well pleased with the book, that I shall put my own boy into it; and I predict for it unusual success.

*From J. J. OWEN, D. D., Professor of the Latin and Greek Languages and Literature in the Free Academy, New-York.*

I am happy to express to you my high sense of the value of Prof. Harkness' labors in the cause of classical learning, especially in the Elementary Latin books which he has edited for your publishing house. His "Second Latin Book" gives abundant evidence of his learning, and tact to arrange, simplify, and make accessible to the youthful mind the great and fundamental principles of the Latin language. The book is worthy of a place in every classical school, and I trust will have an extensive sale.

*From the Rev. J. A. SPENCER, D. D., late Professor of Latin and Oriental Languages in Burlington College, New Jersey.*

I have given some attention to the "Second Latin Book" of Mr. Harkness, and am happy to find it all that the public had reason to expect from the high reputation acquired by Mr. H.'s previous labors. The present volume appears to me to carry out excellently the system on which the late lamented Arnold based his educational works; and in the Selections for Reading, the Notes and Rules for Translating, the Exercises in Translating into Latin, the Analyses, &c., I think it admirably adapted to advance the diligent student, not only rapidly but soundly, in an acquaintance with the Latin language.

*From DR. CASWELL, Regent of Brown University.*

Accept my very sincere thanks for the copy of "Harkness' Second Latin Book," which you had the kindness to send me. I have looked it over so far as to be satisfied that it will be a very useful book.

*From PROF. GAMMELL, of Brown University.*

The examination has led me to form a most favorable estimate of the plan of the work, and also of the manner in which it has been executed. The book seems to me, as I anticipated it would be, a valuable addition to the works now in use among teachers of Latin in the schools of the United States, and for many of them it will undoubtedly form an advantageous substitute.

*From PROF. LINCOLN, of Brown University.*

I have examined with great satisfaction the copy of Harkness' Second Latin Book. It seems to me to carry on most successfully the method pursued in the First Book. Though brief, it is very comprehensive, and combines judicious and skillfully formed exercises with systematic instruction.

*From S. BELDEN, Principal of the Fruit Hill Classical Institute, R. I.*

The perusal of your Second Latin Book has given me much satisfaction. In my experience as a classical teacher, I have long felt the need of a work of this kind, elucidating more fully than is usually done in Latin Grammar the nature and structure of Latin sentences, especially those that are complex and of more difficult construction. I think that you have been very successful in making plain and easy this most difficult and yet very important part of Latin Syntax. While, therefore, I am pleased with the reading extracts, I am especially so with the syntactical exercises. I shall at once introduce the work into my school.

*From G. E. JACOBSEN, Classical Instructor in the Boarding School, Alexandria, Va.*

If Mr. Harkness' work will not make *swift* Latin students, it will at least make *thorough* ones. It seems better adapted to introduce a student to Cicero than any other work, and might, perhaps, be usefully substituted in the room of Caesar and Nepos.

*From N. B. COOKE, Principal of the High School, Bristol, R. I.*

Harkness' Second Latin Book has completed the work which his First so admirably began,—the development of a lucid and truly philosophical method of introducing the young pupil to the knowledge of the Latin. Such a work has hitherto been a desideratum. With these books, I conceive that the teacher will desire nothing more to cover the same ground.

*From PROF. HAYES, of the University of Michigan.*

I admire in this book the perspicuity and natural order of the rules, its correctness, sufficient fulness, and freedom from redundancy, and, at the same time, its beautiful typography. I am fully convinced that a faithful use of the First and Second Latin Books will place the pupil securely on the right track, and facilitate, more than any other elementary treatises with which I am acquainted, his thorough understanding of the language.

I heartily wish that all students preparing for this college would study both books thoroughly.

*From PROF. ANDERSON, of Lewisburg University, Pa.*

I am happy to be able to express my high gratification, both with the plan and the execution of the work. The simplicity, yet thoroughness, with which each successive grammatical point is treated, peculiarly adapts it for those who are striving to master both the form and the spirit of the language. A faithful use of the work would diminish the drudgery of the student's earlier studies, and facilitate his progress in his subsequent course. I wish the work a wide circulation.

*From A. P. B. STUART, Principal of the Holden High School, N. Danvers, Mass.*

Your Second Latin Book is what I was prepared to expect from the character of your First Book—a lucid development of the structure of the Latin sentence, embracing at once what is sufficient, and yet no more than is necessary to give the pupil a clear and comprehensive view of the structure of the language. I shall recommend its introduction into my school.

*From DAVID TURNER, Principal of the Select Classical and English School, Richmond, Va.*

I have examined your Second Latin Book with care, and beg to say that I regard it as a valuable contribution to the cause of sound classical learning. In the Latin text, and in the Exercises in Grammatical Analysis which it contains, it is an admirable introduction to the study of the classic authors.

*From E. L. HART, Principal of the English & Classical School, Farmington, Conn.*

I have examined the Second Latin Book just published by the Messrs. Appleton, with much care and great pleasure. I like its *plan*,—the union of *Reading Lessons* in Latin with *Exercises* in the analysis and reconstruction of Latin sentences, and in translations from English into Latin. It is the *true* way of teaching Latin. The Exercises are remarkable for their simplicity and clearness, and lead on the scholar step by step from first principles in their simplest forms to their more complicated combinations in a manner most thorough and easily comprehended, till the *perfect* structure of the Latin language is gradually wrought out before him.

*From J. W. FAIRB, Principal of the Classical Institute, Philadelphia.*

In my opinion, Harkness' Second Latin Book is an excellent manual. The epitomes of Roman and Grecian history which constitute the Reader are decidedly superior in Latinity to those which have hitherto been in use. While the style is very concise, it is also clear, and the narrative sufficiently connected to be interesting. The notes are especially worthy of commendation, since they not only furnish translation of difficult words and passages, but also by the frequent references to grammar, direct the attention of the learner to the distinction of the moods and the structure and idioms of the language.

*From J. F. CADY, Principal of the High School, Warren, R. I.*

As no Latin book has yet appeared so suitable for beginners as your First Book, so there is nothing so suitable for a sequel to it as your Second Book. I regard the presentation of the parallel Latin and English idioms in both books as an invaluable feature, conducive alike to a clear and satisfactory understanding of the Latin, and to precision and elegance in translating into English. The First and Second Latin Books are altogether unrivalled; they will bear all reasonable tests, and will be more fully appreciated the more fully they are understood.

*From R. S. HOWARD, Principal of the Girls' High School, Bangor.*

I have examined the work as far as I have been able, and am much pleased with it. I think it admirably adapted to accomplish the purpose for which it is designed. It will, I have no doubt, have a wide circulation.

*From G. CAPRON, Principal of the Worcester High School.*

The exercises which are to be studied in connection with the reading lessons render the Second Latin Book invaluable for the young scholar. The pupil who goes through these exercises, in accordance with the design of the author, must, of necessity, carefully study the text, and, by a constant repetition of the words and sentences, become familiar with the vocabulary, and fix in the mind the construction and idioms of the language. The book seems to me admirably adapted to introduce the scholar to the study of the classic authors.

*From R. S. JAMES, Principal of the High School, Norwalk, Conn.*

In substituting the concise histories of the Roman Empire and of Greece for the ridiculous mythology and trifling anecdotes of former Readers, you have rendered an incalculable service to the minds of the young. But the chief excellence of the work consists in the superior manner in which the principles of the grammar are developed and illustrated. Your series is used in this institution, and we find it a pleasure to teach with such books.

*From V. G. WALKER, Principal of the East Corinth Academy, Maine.*

Harkness' Second Latin Book is just what is needed in our schools. I think it the most thorough and complete work on the construction of Latin sentences I have ever seen. I believe it well calculated to interest the scholar in those parts commonly dry and difficult, and by a series of progressive exercises to give a great amount of knowledge with less than the ordinary amount of study.

*From S. H. TAYLOR, Principal of Phillip's Academy, Andover, Mass.*

The author, who is a very successful teacher, has just views of the manner in which the Latin should be studied, and has clearly and happily embodied these in his book, which in all its parts is well executed, and I regard it as very happily adapted to give the pupil who will faithfully study it critical and comprehensive views of the Latin language.

## Latin Classical Works.

### Select Orations of M. Tullius Cicero

WITH NOTES, FOR THE USE OF SCHOOLS AND COLLEGES.

BY E. A. JOHNSON.

PROFESSOR OF LATIN IN THE UNIVERSITY OF NEW YORK.

12mo. 459 pages. Price \$1.

This edition of Cicero's Select Orations possesses some special advantages for the student which are both new and important. It is the only edition which contains the improved text that has been prepared by a recent careful collation and correct assempthing of the best manuscripts of Cicero's writings. It is the work of the celebrated Orelli, Madvig, and Klotz, and has been done since the appearance of Orelli's complete edition. The Notes, by Professor Johnson, of the New York University, have been mostly selected, with great care, from the best German authors, as well as the English edition of Arnold.

*From THOMAS CHASE, Tutor in Latin in Harvard University.*

"An edition of Cicero like Johnson's has long been wanted; and the excellence of the text, the illustrations of words, particles, and pronouns, and the explanation of various points of construction and interpretation, bear witness to the Editor's familiarity with some of the most important results of modern scholarship, and entitle his work to a large share of public favor."

"It seems to us an improvement upon any edition of these orations that has been published in this country, and will be found a valuable aid in their studies to the lovers of classical literature."—*Troy Daily Whig*,

—♦♦♦—

### Cicero de Officiis,

WITH ENGLISH NOTES, MOSTLY TRANSLATED FROM ZUMPT AND BONNELL,

BY THOMAS A. THACHER,

OF YALE COLLEGE.

12mo. 194 pages. Price 90 Cents.

In this edition, a few historical notes have been introduced in cases where the Dictionary in common use have not been found to contain the desired information; the design of which is to aid the learner in understanding the contents of the treatise, the thoughts and reasoning of the author, to explain grammatical difficulties, and inculcate a knowledge of grammatical principles. The Editor has aimed throughout to guide rather than carry the learner through difficulties; requiring of him more study, in consequence of his help, than he would have devoted to the book without it.

*From M. L. STORVER, Professor of the Latin Language and Literature in Penn. College.*

"I have examined with much pleasure Prof. Thacher's edition of Cicero de Officiis, and am convinced of its excellence. The Notes have been prepared with great care and good judgment. Practical knowledge of the wants of the student has enabled the Editor to furnish just the kind of assistance required; grammatical difficulties are removed, and the obscurities of the treatise are explained, the interest of the learner is elicited, and his industry directed rather than superseded. There can be but one opinion with regard to the merits of the work, and I trust that Professor Thacher will be disposed to continue his labors so carefully commenced, in this department of classical learning."

# Greek Classical Works.

## Greek Ollendorff;

OR, A PROGRESSIVE EXHIBITION OF THE PRINCIPLES OF THE  
GREEK GRAMMAR.

BY ASAHEL C. KENDRICK,

PROFESSOR OF THE GREEK LANGUAGE AND LITERATURE IN THE UNIVERSITY  
OF ROCHESTER.

12mo. 371 pages. Price \$1.

The present work is what its title indicates, strictly an *Ollendorff*, and aims to apply the methods which have proved so successful in the acquisition of the modern languages to the study of Ancient Greek, with such differences as the different genius of the Greek, and the different purposes for which it is studied, suggest. It differs from the modern Ollendorffs in containing exercises for reciprocal translation, in confining them within a smaller compass, and in a more methodical exposition of the principles of the language.

The leading object of the author was to furnish a book which should serve as an *introduction* to the study of Greek, and precede the use of any grammar. It will therefore be found, although not claiming to embrace all the principles of the Grammar, yet complete in itself, and will lead the pupil, by insensible gradations, from the simpler constructions to those which are more complicated and difficult. The exceptions, and the more idiomatic forms, it studiously avoids, aiming only to exhibit the regular and ordinary usages of the language as the proper starting-point for the student's further researches.

In presenting these, the author has aimed to combine the strictest accuracy with the utmost simplicity of statement. His work is therefore adapted to a younger class of pupils than have usually engaged in the study of Greek, and will, it is hoped, win to the acquisition of that noble tongue many in our academies and primary schools who have been repelled by the less simple character of our ordinary text-books.

---

## EXERCISES IN

## Greek Composition.

ADAPTED TO THE FIRST BOOK OF XENOPHON'S ANABASIS

BY JAMES R. BOISE,

PROFESSOR OF GREEK IN THE UNIVERSITY OF MICHIGAN.

12mo. 185 pages. Price 75 Cents.

These Exercises consist of easy sentences, similar to those in the *Anabasis*, having the same words and constructions, and are designed by frequent repetition to make the learner familiar with the language of Xenophon. Accordingly, the chapters and sections in both are made to correspond. No exercises can be more improving than those in this volume; obliging the student as they do, by analysis and synthesis, to master the constructions employed by one of the purest of Greek writers, and imbuing him with the spirit of one of the greatest historians of all antiquity.



## Latin Classical Works.

# Cæsar's Commentaries on the Gallic War.

WITH ENGLISH NOTES, CRITICAL AND EXPLANATORY; A LEXICON  
GEOGRAPHICAL AND HISTORICAL INDEXES, A MAP OF GAUL, &c.

By REV. J. A. SPENCER, D.D.

12mo. 408 pages. Price \$1.

In the preparation of this volume, great care has been taken to adapt it in every respect to the wants of the young student, to make it a means at the same time of advancing him in a thorough knowledge of Latin, and inspiring him with a desire for further acquaintance with the classics of the language. Dr. Spencer has not, like some commentators, given an abundance of help on the easy passages, and allowed the difficult ones to speak for themselves. His notes are on those parts on which the pupil wants them, and explain, not only grammatical difficulties, but allusions of every kind in the text. A well-drawn sketch of Cæsar's life, a map of the region in which his campaigns were carried on, and a Vocabulary, which removes the necessity of using a large dictionary and the waste of time consequent thereon, enhance the value of the volume in no small degree.

---

## Quintus Curtius:

LIFE AND EXPLOITS OF ALEXANDER THE GREAT.

EDITED AND ILLUSTRATED WITH ENGLISH NOTES,

By WM. HENRY CROSBY.

12mo. 335 pages. Price \$1.

Curtius History of Alexander the Great, though little used in the schools of this country, in England and on the Continent holds a high place in the estimation of classical instructors. The interesting character of its subject, the elegance of its style, and the purity of its moral sentiments, ought to place it at least on a par with Cæsar's Commentaries or Sallust's Histories. The present edition, by the late Professor of Latin in Rutgers College, is unexceptionable in typography, convenient in form, scholarly and practical in its notes, and altogether an admirable text-book for classes preparing for college.

*From PROF. OWEN, of the New York Free Academy.*

"It gives me great pleasure to add my testimonial to the many you are receiving in favor of the beautiful and well-edited edition of Quintus Curtius, by Prof. Wm Henry Crosby. It is seldom that a classical book is submitted to me for examination, to which I can give so hearty a recommendation as to this. The external appearance is attractive; the paper, type, and binding being just what a text-book should be, neat, clean, and durable. The notes are brief, pertinent, scholarly (neither too exuberant nor too meagre, but happily exemplifying the golden mean desirable and yet so very difficult of attainment.)"

## Greek Classical Works.

SHORT AND COMPREHENSIVE

# Greek Grammar

By J. T. CHAMPLIN

PROFESSOR OF GREEK AND LATIN IN WATERVILLE COLLEGE

12mo. 208 pages. Price \$1 00.

In compiling this grammar, Prof. Champlin has drawn upon the best critics and grammarians, and with the results of his research has interwoven much original matter suggested during several years' experience in teaching, and editing Greek authors. His design is to exhibit the essential facts and principles of the language in the clearest, briefest, and most practicable form possible. With this view, all theories and complications belonging to general grammar have been avoided, and only their results used. The amplification and illustration of principles have been carried only so far as is necessary to their comprehension. In this way all the real wants of the Greek student are met, while his attention is not distracted by unnecessary and embarrassing details. Materials for oral exercises are supplied, and a sketch of Greek versification is given in an appendix.

*From the REV. MR. ANDERSON, New Orleans.*

"I believe the author has fully accomplished what he proposes in his preface. To those wishing to study Greek, I am satisfied he has presented a book which will much tend to simplify the study to beginners—and at the same time, without being too voluminous, presents as lucid and full an exposition of the principles of the language, as can be contained within so small a compass.

—♦♦♦—

## Kuhner's Greek Grammar,

TRANSLATED BY

PROFESSORS EDWARDS AND TAYLOR.

Large 12mo. 620 pages. Price \$1 75.

Kuhner's is universally acknowledged to be the most accurate, comprehensive, clear, and practical grammar of the Greek language now extant. It is the work of one who devoted his life to Greek philology, and spent years of patient labor in perfecting this work. Too full and learned for the beginner, it is just what is needed for the college curriculum, containing all that a book of reference should contain. The student will never appeal to its pages in vain. In fulness of illustration, closeness of reference, and philosophical analysis of the various forms of language, it is unsurpassed, we might say unequalled.

The present translation is made by two distinguished American scholars, who have revised the whole, verified the references, and appended an original treatise of their own on Greek versification. As now presented to the public, it is believed to be as perfect a grammar of the Greek language as enlightened research and profound scholarship can produce.

## Greek Classical Works.

# Xenophon's Anabasis.

WITH EXPLANATORY NOTES FOR THE USE OF SCHOOLS AND  
COLLEGES IN THE UNITED STATES.

BY JAMES R. BOISE,

PROFESSOR OF GREEK IN THE UNIVERSITY OF MICHIGAN.

12mo. 393 pages. Price \$1 25.

A handsome and convenient edition of this great classic, really adapted to the wants of schools, has long been needed; the want is here met by Professor Boise in a manner that leaves nothing to be desired. Decidedly the best German editions, whether text or commentary be considered, have appeared within the last few years; and of these Mr. Boise has made free use; while, at the same time, he has not lost sight of the fact that the classical schools of this country are behind those of Germany, and that simpler and more elementary explanations are therefore often necessary in a work prepared for American schools. Nothing has been put in the notes for the sake of a mere display of learning,—pedantry is out of place in a school-book; and nothing has been introduced by way of comment except what can be turned to practical use by the reader.

An historical introduction, which will enable the pupil to enter on his task intelligently, is prefixed. An abundance of geographical information, embodying the latest discoveries of travellers, is supplied; and the whole is illustrated with Kiepert's excellent map, showing the entire route of the ten thousand on their retreat.

*From DR. WILLIAM SMITH, London, Author of "History of Greece,"  
"Dictionary of Antiquities," &c. &c.*

"I am very much obliged to you for a copy of your edition of Xenophon's *Anabasis*, which I have carefully inspected, and think to be decidedly the best edition of the work I have hitherto seen, for school and college purposes."



# Xenophon's Memorabilia of Socrates

WITH NOTES AND AN INTRODUCTION.

BY R. D. C. ROBBINS,

PROFESSOR OF LANGUAGES IN MIDDLEBURY COLLEGE, VERMONT.

12mo. 421 pages. Price \$1 25.

This will be found an exceedingly useful book for College classes. The text is large and distinct, the typography accurate, and the notes judicious and scholarly. Instead of referring the student to a variety of books, few of which are within his reach, the editor has wisely supplied whatever is necessary. An admirable treatise on the Life of Socrates introduces the work, and English and Greek Indexes render it easy to refer to the text and notes.

*From PROF. HARRISON, University of Virginia.*

"The Notes contain, in much detail, the grammatical and other explanations, which it would be convenient for the learner to have placed before him, instead of having to refer to various books. I have no doubt that the Notes are very carefully prepared, and in accordance with the best authorities."

## **Greek Classical Works.**

# **Arnold's Greek Course.**

**REVISED, CORRECTED AND IMPROVED.**

**BY THE REV. J. A. SPENCER, D. D.**

**LATE PROFESSOR OF LATIN AND ORIENTAL LANGUAGES IN BURLINGTON COLLEGE, N. Y.**

**FIRST GREEK BOOK, ON THE PLAN OF THE FIRST LATIN BOOK. 12mo. 89 pages. Price 75 cents.**

**PRACTICAL INTRODUCTION TO GREEK PROSE COMPOSITION. 12mo. 287 pages. Price 75 cents.**

**SECOND PART TO THE ABOVE. 12mo. 248 pages. Price 75 cents.**

**GREEK READING BOOK. CONTAINING THE SUBSTANCE OF THE PRACTICAL INTRODUCTION TO GREEK CONSTRUCTING, AND A TREATISE ON THE GREEK PARTICLES; ALSO, COPIOUS SELECTIONS FROM GREEK AUTHORS, WITH CRITICAL AND EXPLANATORY ENGLISH NOTES, AND A LEXICON. 12mo. 618 pages. Price \$1.25.**

A complete, thorough, practical, and easy Greek course is here presented. The beginner commences with the "First Book," in which the elementary principles of the language are unfolded, not in abstract language, difficult both to comprehend and to remember, but as practically applied in sentences. Throughout the whole, the pupil sees just where he stands, and is taught to use and apply what he learns. His progress is, therefore, as rapid as it is intelligent and pleasant. There is no unnecessary verbiage, nor is the pupil's attention diverted from what is really important by a mass of minor details. It is the experience of teachers who use this book, that with it a given amount of Greek Grammar can be imparted to a pupil in a shorter time and with far less trouble than with any other text-book.

The "First Book" may with advantage be followed by the "Introduction to Greek Prose Composition." The object of this work is to enable the student, as soon as he can decline and conjugate with tolerable facility, to translate simple sentences after given examples and with given words; the principles employed being those of imitation and very frequent repetition. It is at once a Syntax, a Vocabulary, and an Exercise book. The "Second Part" carries the subject further, unfolding the most complicated constructions, and the nicest points of Latin Syntax. A Key is provided for the teacher's use.

The "Reader," besides extracts judiciously selected from the Greek classics, contains valuable instructions to guide the learner in translating and constructing, and a complete exposition of the particles, their signification and government. It is a fitting sequel to the earlier parts of the course, everywhere showing the hand of an acute critic, an accomplished scholar, and an experienced teacher.

*From the REV. DR. COLEMAN, Professor of Greek and Latin, Princeton, N. J.*

"I can, from the most satisfactory experience, bear testimony to the excellence of your series of Text-Books for Schools. I am in the daily use of Arnold's Latin and Greek Exercises, and consider them decidedly superior to any other Elementary Works in those Languages."

## **Greek Classical Works.**

### **Selections from Herodotus ;**

**COMPREHENDING MAINLY SUCH PORTIONS AS GIVE A CONNECTED HISTORY OF THE EAST  
TO THE FALL OF BABYLON AND THE DEATH OF CREUS THE GREAT.**

**BY HERMAN M. JOHNSON, D. D.,**

**PROFESSOR OF PHILOSOPHY AND ENGLISH LITERATURE IN DICKINSON COLLEGE.**

**12mo. 185 pages. Price 75 Cents.**

The present selection embraces such parts of Herodotus as give a connected history of Asiatic nations. These portions are not only particularly interesting in themselves, but open to the student a new field, inasmuch as the other Greek and Roman authors commonly put into his hands leave this period of history untouched.

Herodotus is peculiarly adapted to academical reading. It has charms for the student which no other text-book possesses, on account of the simple elegance of the style and the liveliness of the narrative. In preparing his notes, the editor has borne in mind that they are intended for learners in the earlier part of their classical course ; he has therefore made the explanations in the former part of the work quite full, with frequent references to such grammars as are in the hands of most students.

The notes proper are purely explanatory and grammatical. Other remarks, in the way of criticism or investigation, are appended to the several chapters, for the sake of awakening reflection and inciting to further inquiry.

A condensed treatise on the Ionic Dialect and the peculiar forms of declension and conjugation used by Herodotus, removes one of the most serious difficulties that has heretofore embarrassed the student in reading this author. If this chapter is learned in advance, the dialectic forms, otherwise so troublesome, will be recognized without the slightest difficulty.

The text is printed in large, bold type, and accompanied with a Map of the regions described.

—•••—  
**SOPHOCLÉS'**

### **Œdipus Tyrannus.**

**WITH ENGLISH NOTES, FOR THE USE OF STUDENTS IN SCHOOLS  
AND COLLEGES.**

**BY HOWARD CROSBY, A. M.,**

**PROFESSOR OF THE GREEK LANGUAGE AND LITERATURE IN THE  
NEW YORK UNIVERSITY.**

**12mo. 138 pages. Price 75 Cents.**

The object had in view in this publication is to furnish to college-students the masterpiece of the greatest of Greek tragic poets in a convenient form. No learned criticism on the text was needed or has been attempted. The Tauchnitz edition has been chiefly followed, and such aid is rendered, in the way of notes, as may assist, not render needless, the efforts of the student. Too much help begets indolence. Too little, despair: the author has striven to present the happy mean.

The inviting appearance of the text and the merit of the commentary have made this volume a favorite wherever it has been used.

## Latin Classical Works.

### The Works of Horace.

WITH ENGLISH NOTES, FOR THE USE OF SCHOOLS AND COLLEGES  
BY J. L. LINCOLN,

PROFESSOR OF THE LATIN LANGUAGE AND LITERATURE IN BROWN UNIVERSITY

12mo. 575 pages. Price \$1 50.

The text of this edition is mainly that of Orelli, the most important readings of other critics being given in foot-notes. The volume is introduced with a biographical sketch of Horace and a critique on his writings, which enable the student to enter intelligently on his work. Peculiar grammatical constructions, as well as geographical and historical allusions, are explained in notes, which are just full enough to aid the pupil, to excite him to gain a thorough understanding of the author, and awaken in him a taste for philological studies, without taking all labor off his hands. While the chief aim has been to impart a clear idea of Latin Syntax as exhibited in the text, it has also been a cherished object to take advantage of the means so variously and richly furnished by Horace for promoting the poetical taste and literary culture of the student.

*From an article by PROF. BAHR, of the University of Heidelberg, in the Heidelberg Annals of Literature.*

"There are already several American editions of Horace, intended for the use of schools; of one of these, which has passed through many editions, and has also been widely circulated in England, mention has been formerly made in this journal; but that one we may not put upon an equality with the one now before us, inasmuch as this has taken a different stand-point, which may serve as a sign of progress in this department of study. The editor has, it is true, also intended his work for the use of schools, and has sought to adapt it, in all its parts, to such a use; but still, without losing sight of this purpose, he has proceeded throughout with more independence. In the preparation of the Notes, the editor has faithfully observed the principles (laid down in his preface); the explanations of the poet's words commend themselves by a compressed brevity which limits itself to what is most essential, and by a sharp precision of expression; and references to other passages of the poet, and also to grammars, dictionaries, &c., are not wanting.

—♦♦♦—  
SALLUST'S

### Jugurtha and Catiline

WITH NOTES AND A VOCABULARY

BY NOBLE BUTLER AND MINARD STURGIS.

12mo. 397 pages. Price \$1 25.

The editors have spent a vast amount of time and labor in correcting the text, by comparison of the most improved German and English editions. It is believed that this will be found superior to any edition hitherto published in this country. In accordance with their chronological order, the "Jugurtha" precedes the "Catiline." The Notes are copious and tersely expressed; they display not only fine scholarship, but (what is quite as necessary in such a book) a practical knowledge of the difficulties which the student encounters in reading this author, and the aids that he requires. The Vocabulary was prepared by the late WILLIAM H. G. BUTLER. It will be found an able and faithful performance.

## **Latin Classical Works.**

# **Germania and Agricola OF CAIUS CORNELIUS TACITUS, WITH NOTES FOR COLLEGES.**

By W. S. TYLER,

PROFESSOR OF THE GREEK AND LATIN LANGUAGES IN AMHERST COLLEGE.

12mo. 193 pages. Price 90 Cents.

Tacitus's account of Germany and life of Agricola are among the most fascinating and instructive Latin classics. The present edition has been prepared expressly for college classes, by one who knows what they need. In it will be found: 1. A Latin text, approved by all the more recent editors. 2. A copious illustration of the grammatical constructions, as well as of the rhetorical and poetical usages peculiar to Tacitus. In a writer so concise it has been deemed necessary to pay particular regard to the connection of thought, and to the particles as the hinges of that connection. 3. Constant comparisons of the writer with the authors of the Augustan age, for the purpose of indicating the changes which had already been wrought in the language of the Roman people. 4. An embodiment in small compass of the most valuable labors of such recent German critics as Grimm, Günther, Gruber, Kiesling, Dronke, Roth, Ruperti, and Walther.

*From PROF. LINCOLN, of Brown University.*

"I have found the book in daily use with my class of very great service, very practical, and well suited to the wants of students. I am very much pleased with the *Life of Tacitus* and the Introduction, and indeed with the literary character of the book throughout. We shall make the book a part of our Latin course."

---

## **The Histories of Tacitus.**

By W. S. TYLER.

WITH NOTES FOR COLLEGES.

12mo. 453 pages. Price \$1 50.

The text of Tacitus is here presented in a form as correct as a comparison of the best editions can make it. Notes are appended for the student's use, which contain not only the grammatical, but likewise all the geographical, archaeological, and historical illustrations that are necessary to render the author intelligible. It has been the constant aim of the editor to carry students beyond the dry details of grammar and lexicography, and introduce them to a familiar acquaintance and lively sympathy with the author and his times. Indexes to the notes, and to the names of persons and places, render reference easy.

*From PROF. HACKETT, of Newton Theological Seminary.*

"The notes appear to me to be even more neat and elegant than those on the *Germania and Agricola*. They come as near to such notes as I would be glad to write myself on a classic, as almost any thing that I have yet seen."

## Latin Classical Works.

### Lincoln's Livy.

SELECTIONS FROM THE FIRST FIVE BOOKS, TOGETHER WITH THE  
TWENTY-FIRST AND TWENTY-SECOND BOOKS ENTIRE: WITH  
A PLAN OF ROME, A MAP OF THE PASSAGE OF HANNIBAL  
AND ENGLISH NOTES FOR THE USE OF SCHOOLS.

BY J. L. LINCOLN,

PROFESSOR OF THE LATIN LANGUAGE AND LITERATURE IN BROWN UNIVERSITY.

12mo. 329 pages. Price \$1.25.

The publishers believe that in this edition of Livy a want is supplied which has been universally felt; there being previous to this no American edition furnished with the requisite aids for the successful study of this Latin author. The text is chiefly that of Alscheffski, which is now generally received by the best critics. The notes have been prepared with special reference to the grammatical study of the language, and the illustration of its forms, constructions, and idioms, as used by Livy. They will not be found to foster habits of dependence in the student, by supplying indiscriminate translation or unnecessary assistance; but come to his help only in such parts as it is fair to suppose he cannot master by his own exertions. They also embrace all necessary information relating to history, geography, and antiquities.

Lincoln's Livy has been highly commended by critics, and is used in nearly all the colleges in the country.

*From PROF. ANDERSON, of Waterville College.*

"A careful examination of several portions of your work has convinced me that, for the use of students, it is altogether superior to any edition of Livy with which I am acquainted. Among its excellencies you will permit me to name the close attention given to particles, to the subjunctive mood, the constant reference to the grammars, the discrimination of words nearly synonymous, and the care in giving the localities mentioned in the text. The book will be hereafter used in our college."

---

### BEZA'S LATIN VERSION

OF

### The New Testament.

12mo. 291 pages. Price 75 cents.

The now acknowledged propriety of giving students of languages familiar works for translation—thus adopting in the schools the mode by which the child first learns to talk—has induced the publication of this new American edition of Beza's Latin Version of the New Testament. Ever since its first appearance, this work has kept its place in the general esteem; while more recent versions have been so strongly tinged with the peculiar views of the translators as to make them acceptable to particular classes only. The editor has exerted himself to render the present edition worthy of patronage by its superior accuracy and neatness; and the publishers flatter themselves that the pains bestowed will insure for it a preference over other editions.



## Latin Classical Works.

# Arnold's Latin Course.

**FIRST AND SECOND LATIN BOOK AND PRACTICAL GRAMMAR.**  
REVISED AND CAREFULLY CORRECTED, BY J. A. SPENCER, D. D. 12mo.  
359 pages. Price 75 cents.

**PRACTICAL INTRODUCTION TO LATIN PROSE COMPOSITION.**  
REVISED AND CAREFULLY CORRECTED, BY J. A. SPENCER, D. D. 12mo.  
266 pages. Price \$1.

- III **CORNELIUS NEPOS.** WITH QUESTIONS AND ANSWERS, AND AN IMITATIVE EXERCISE ON EACH CHAPTER. WITH NOTES BY E. A. JOHNSON, PROF. OF LATIN IN UNIV. OF NEW YORK. NEW EDITION, ENLARGED, WITH A LEXICON, HISTORICAL AND GEOGRAPHICAL INDEX, &c. 12mo. 350 pages. Price \$1.

Arnold's Classical Series has attained a circulation almost unparalleled, having been introduced into nearly all the leading educational institutions in the United States. The secret of this success is, that the author has hit upon the true system of teaching the ancient languages. He exhibits them not as dead, but as living tongues, and by imitation and repetition, the means which nature herself points out to the child learning his mother tongue, he familiarizes the student with the idioms employed by the elegant writers and speakers of antiquity.

The First and Second Latin Book should be put in the hands of the beginner, who will soon acquire from its pages a better idea of the language than could be gained by months of study according to the old system. The reason of this is, that every thing has a practical bearing, and a principle is no sooner learned than it is applied. The pupil is at once set to work on exercises.

The Prose Composition forms an excellent sequel to the above work, or may be used with any other course. It teaches the art of writing Latin more correctly and thoroughly, more easily and pleasantly, than any other work. In its pages Latin synonyms are carefully illustrated, differences of idiom noted, cautions as to common errors impressed on the mind, and every help afforded towards attaining a pure and flowing Latin style.

*From N. WHEELER, Principal Worcester County High School.*

"In the skill with which he sets forth the *idiomatic peculiarities*, as well as in the directness and simplicity with which he states the facts of the ancient languages, Mr. Arnold has no superior. I know of no books so admirably adapted to awaken an interest in the study of language, or so well fitted to lay the foundation of a correct scholarship and refined taste."

*From A. B. RUSSELL, Oakland High School.*

"The style in which the books are got up is not their only recommendation. With thorough instruction on the part of the teacher using these books as text-books, I am confident a much more ample return for the time and labor bestowed by our youth upon Latin must be secured. The time certainly has come when an advance must be made upon the old methods of instruction. I am glad to have a work that promises so many advantages as Arnold's First and Second Latin Book to begin."

*From C. M. BLAKE, Classical Teacher, Philadelphia.*

"I am much pleased with Arnold's Latin Books. A class of my older boys have not finished the First and Second Book. They had studied Latin for a long time, but never understood it, they say, as they do now."

## **Spanish Grammars.**

---

### **Ollendorff's Spanish Grammar:**

**A NEW METHOD OF LEARNING TO READ, WRITE, AND SPEAK THE SPANISH LANGUAGE; WITH PRACTICAL RULES FOR SPANISH PRONUNCIATION, AND MODELS OF SOCIAL AND COMMERCIAL CORRESPONDENCE.**

**BY M. VELAZQUEZ AND T. T. SIMONNÉ.**

**12mo. 560 pages. Price \$1.—KEY to the Same. Separate vol. Price 75c.**

The admirable system introduced by Ollendorff is applied in this volume to the Spanish language. Having received, from the two distinguished editors to whom its supervision was intrusted, corrections, emendations, and additions, which specially adapt it to the youth of this country, it is believed to embrace every possible advantage for imparting a thorough and practical knowledge of Spanish. A course of systematic grammar underlies the whole; but its development is so gradual and inductive as not to weary the learner. Numerous examples of regular and irregular verbs are presented: and nothing that can expedite the pupil's progress, in the way of explanation and illustration, is omitted.

### **Grammar of the Spanish Language;**

**WITH A HISTORY OF THE LANGUAGE AND PRACTICAL EXERCISES.**

**BY M. SCHELE DE VERE.**

**12mo. 273 pages. Price \$1.**

In this volume are embodied the results of many years experience on the part of the author, as Professor of Spanish in the University of Virginia. It aims to impart a critical knowledge of the language by a systematic course of grammar, illustrated with appropriate exercises. The author has availed himself of the labors of recent grammarians and critics; and by condensing his rules and principles and rejecting a burdensome superfluity of detail, he has brought the whole within comparatively small compass. By pursuing this simple course, the language may be easily and quickly mastered, not only for conversational purposes, but for reading it fluently and writing it with elegance.

## **Spanish Dictionary.**

---

**SEOANE, NEUMAN, AND BARETTI'S**

### **SPANISH AND ENGLISH, AND ENGLISH AND SPANISH Pronouncing Dictionary.**

**BY MARIANO VELAZQUEZ DE LA CADENA,**

PROF. OF THE SPANISH LANGUAGE AND LITERATURE IN COLUMBIA COLLEGE, N. Y., AND  
CORRESPONDING MEMBER OF THE NATIONAL INSTITUTE, WASHINGTON.

**Large 8vo. 1300 pages. Neat type, fine paper, and strong binding. Price \$5.**

The pronunciation of the Castilian language is so clearly set forth in this Dictionary, as to render it well-nigh impossible for any person who can read English readily, to fail of obtaining the true sounds of the Spanish words at sight.

In the revision of the work, more than eight thousand words, idioms, and familiar phrases have been added.

It gives in both languages the exact equivalents of the words in general use, both in their literal and metaphorical acceptations.

Also, the technical terms most frequently used in the arts, in chemistry, botany, medicine, and natural history, as well as nautical and mercantile terms and phrases—most of which are not found in other Dictionaries.

Also many Spanish words used only in American countries which were formerly dependencies of Spain.

The names of many important articles of commerce, gleaned from the price-currents of Spanish and South American cities, are inserted for the benefit of the merchant, who will here find all that he needs for carrying on a business correspondence.

The parts of the irregular verbs in Spanish and English are here, for the first time, given in full, in their alphabetical order.

The work likewise contains a grammatical synopsis of both languages, arranged for ready and convenient reference.

The new and improved orthography sanctioned by the latest edition of the Dictionary of the Academy—now universally adopted by the press—is here given for the first time in a Spanish and English Dictionary.

AN ABRIDGMENT OF VELAZQUEZ'S LARGE DICTIONARY, INTENDED FOR SCHOOLS,  
COLLEGES, AND TRAVELLERS.

**In Two Parts: I. Spanish-English; II. English-Spanish.**

**BY MARIANO VELAZQUEZ DE LA CADENA.**

**12mo. 888 pages. Price \$1 50.**

## German Text-Books.

---

### Ollendorff's New Method

OF LEARNING TO READ, WRITE, AND SPEAK THE GERMAN LANGUAGE.

BY GEORGE J. ADLER, A. M.

12mo. 510 pages. Price \$1 25.

KEY TO EXERCISES. Separate volume. Price 75 cents.

The German Grammar has undergone careful revision at the hands of a ripe scholar, whose position has made him acquainted with the wants of pupils in this country. He has adapted the whole to their necessities, and added what seemed necessary to a complete development of the subject.

### Practical German Grammar.

BY CHARLES EICHORN.

12mo. 287 pages. Price \$1 25.

Those who have used Eichhorn's Grammar commend it in the highest terms for the excellence of its arrangement, the simplicity of its rules, and the tact with which abstruse points of grammar are illustrated by means of written exercises. It is the work of a practical teacher, who has learned by experience what the difficulties of the pupil are and how to remove them.

### Elementary German Reader.

BY REV. L. W. HEYDENREICH,

PROFESSOR OF LANGUAGES AT BETHLEHEM, PA.

Price 75 cts.

This is an excellent volume for beginners, combining the advantages of Grammar and Reader. It has received strong and cordial commendations from the best German scholars in the country: among whom are Prof. Schmidt, of Columbia College, N. Y.; William M. Reynolds, late Pres. of Capitol Univ., Columbus, Ohio; Edward H. Reichel, Principal of Nazareth Hall; W. D. Whitney, Prof. of Sanscrit and German in Yale College, &c., &c.

## German Text-Books.

---

### GERMAN AND ENGLISH, AND ENGLISH AND GERMAN Pronouncing Dictionary.

BY G. J. ADLER, A. M.,

PROF. OF THE GERMAN LANGUAGE AND LITERATURE IN THE UNIVERSITY OF NEW YORK.

One elegant large 8vo. vol. 1400 pages. Price \$5 00.

The aim of the distinguished author of this work has been to embody all the valuable results of the most recent investigations in a German Lexicon, which might become not only a reliable guide for the practical acquisition of the language, but one which would not forsake the student in the higher walks of his pursuits, to which its treasures would invite him.

In the preparation of the German and English Part, the basis adopted has been the work of Flügel, compiled in reality by Heilmann, Feiling, and Oxenford. This was the most complete and judiciously prepared manual of the kind in England.

The present work contains the accentuation of every German word, several hundred synonymes, together with a classification and alphabetical list of the irregular verbs, and a Dictionary of German abbreviations.

The foreign words, likewise, which have not been completely Germanized, and which often differ in pronunciation and inflection from such as are purely native, have been designated by particular marks.

The vocabulary of foreign words, which now act so important a part, not only in scientific works, but in the best classics, reviews, journals, newspapers, and even in conversation, has been copiously supplied from the most complete and correct sources. It is believed that in the terminology of chemistry, mineralogy, the practical arts, commerce, navigation, rhetoric, grammar, mythology, philosophy, &c., scarcely a word will be found to be wanting.

The Second or German-English Part of this volume has been chiefly reprinted from the work of Flügel. (The attention which has been paid in Germany to the preparation of English dictionaries for the German student has been such as to render these works very complete. The student, therefore, will scarcely find anything deficient in this Second Part.)

### An Abridgment of the Above.

12mo. 844 pages. Price \$2 00.

## Standard Works.

---

### Gesenius' Hebrew Grammar.

SEVENTEENTH EDITION, WITH CORRECTIONS AND ADDITIONS BY DR. E. RÖDIGER.

TRANSLATED BY T. J. CONANT,

PROFESSOR OF HEBREW IN ROCHESTER THEOLOGICAL SEMINARY, NEW YORK.

8vo. 361 pages. Price \$3 00.

The present edition of Gesenius' standard Hebrew Grammar has been carefully translated from the seventeenth German edition, recently published, after a careful revision by the learned Rödiger. In its present improved state, it embodies all that is known of Hebrew philology.

A course of grammatical exercises, to aid the learner in acquiring and applying a knowledge of the elementary principles of reading and inflection, and in the analysis of forms, has been appended by Professor Conant. To these is added a Crestomathy, consisting of grammatical and exegetical notes on numerous reading-lessons selected from Scripture, suited to the wants of the student. Great pains have been taken to insure correctness in the text; and, throughout the whole volume, nothing calculated to facilitate the learner's progress has been overlooked or omitted.

### Uhlemann's Syriac Grammar.

TRANSLATED FROM THE GERMAN,

BY ENOCH HUTCHINSON.

WITH A COURSE OF EXERCISES IN SYRIAC GRAMMAR, AND A CHERESTOMATHY AND BRIEF LEXICON PREPARED BY THE TRANSLATOR.

8vo. 367 pages. Price \$4 00.

Uhlemann's Grammar holds the same rank in relation to the Syriac language that Gesenius' does to Hebrew. It is not only the most accurate and comprehensive Syriac Grammar yet compiled, but the clearest in its arrangement and explanations, and the best adapted to the student's wants. The translator has enhanced its value by the addition of copious exercises and an admirable Chrestomathy.

## Italian Text-Books.

---

### Ollendorff's Italian Grammars.

**PRIMARY LESSONS IN LEARNING TO READ, WRITE, AND SPEAK THE ITALIAN LANGUAGE. INTRODUCTORY TO THE LARGER GRAMMAR. BY G. W. GREENE.**

18mo. 238 pages. Price 63 cents.

**OLLENDORFF'S NEW METHOD OF LEARNING TO READ, WRITE, AND SPEAK THE ITALIAN LANGUAGE. WITH ADDITIONS AND CORRECTIONS. BY E. FELIX FORESTI, LL.D.**

12mo. 533 pages. Price \$1 50. KEY—Price 75 cents. Separate vol.

In Ollendorff's grammars is for the first time presented a system by which the student can acquire a conversational knowledge of Italian. This will recommend them to practical students; while at the same time there is no lack of rules and principles for those who would pursue a systematic grammatical course with the view of translating and writing the language.

Prof. Greene's Introduction should be taken up by youthful classes, for whom it is specially designed, the more difficult parts of the course being left for the larger volume.

The advanced work has been carefully revised by Prof. Foresti, who has made such emendations and additions as the wants of the country required. In many sections the services of an Italian teacher cannot be obtained; the Ollendorff Course and Key will there supply the want of a master in the most satisfactory manner.

### Italian Reader.

A COLLECTION OF PIECES IN ITALIAN PROSE, DESIGNED AS A READING-BOOK FOR STUDENTS OF THE ITALIAN LANGUAGE.

BY E. FELIX FORESTI, LL.D.

12mo. 298 pages. Price \$1 25.

In making selections for this volume, Prof. Foresti has had recourse to the modern writers of Italy rather than to the old school of novelists, historians, and poets; his object being to present a picture of the Italian language as it is written and spoken at the present day. The literary taste of the compiler, and his judgment as an instructor, have been brought to bear with the happiest results in this valuable Reader.

577

4

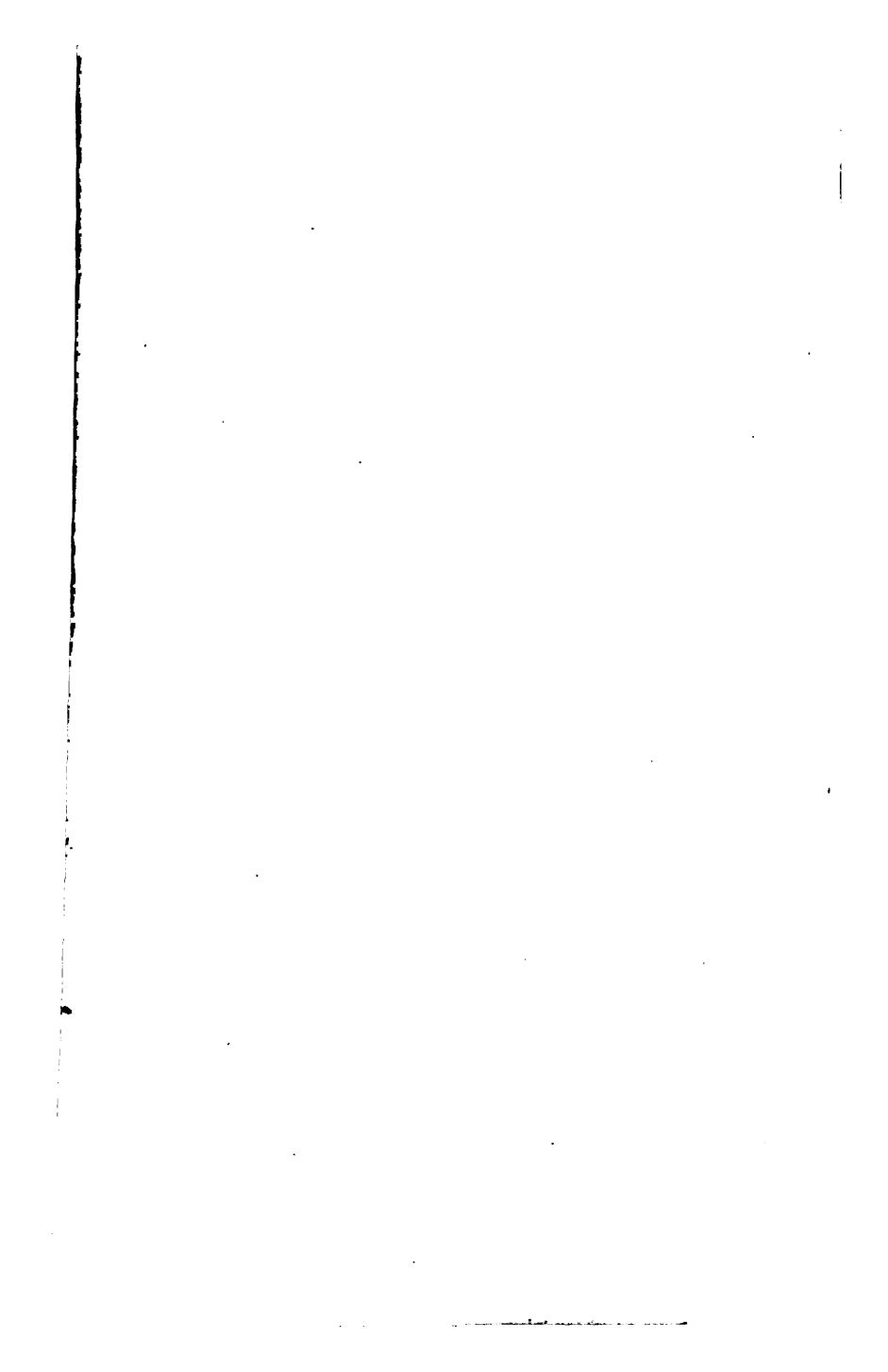
8

1

1  
2  
3  
4  
5  
6  
7  
8  
9  
10  
11  
12  
13  
14  
15  
16  
17  
18  
19  
20  
21  
22  
23  
24  
25  
26  
27  
28  
29  
30  
31  
32  
33  
34  
35  
36  
37  
38  
39  
40  
41  
42  
43  
44  
45  
46  
47  
48  
49  
50  
51  
52  
53  
54  
55  
56  
57  
58  
59  
60  
61  
62  
63  
64  
65  
66  
67  
68  
69  
70  
71  
72  
73  
74  
75  
76  
77  
78  
79  
80  
81  
82  
83  
84  
85  
86  
87  
88  
89  
90  
91  
92  
93  
94  
95  
96  
97  
98  
99  
100









This book should be returned to the Library on or before the last date stamped below.

A fine of five cents a day is incurred by retaining it beyond the specified time.

Please return promptly.